

John Lydgate

Troy Book: Selections

Troy Book

Introduction

Troy Book is one of the most ambitious attempts in medieval vernacular poetry to recount the story of the Trojan war. John Lydgate, monk of the great Benedictine abbey of Bury St. Edmunds in Suffolk, began composing the poem in October 1412 on commission from Henry, Prince of Wales, later King Henry V, and he completed it in 1420. Lydgate's poem is a translation and expansion of Guido delle Colonne's *Historia destructionis Troiae*, a Latin prose account written in 1287 but based, without acknowledgement, on Benoit de Sainte-Maure's Old French *Roman de Troie* (c. 1160). *Troy Book* presents the full narrative and mythographic sweep that the Middle Ages expected for the story of Troy's tragic downfall. Though Lydgate wrote the poem some three decades after Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde*, it furnishes the essential background that educated medieval readers would have brought to Chaucer's poem and to Chaucer's source, Boccaccio's *Filostrato*. It is background as well for the myths of origins adopted by medieval nations and regions, which claimed descent from the heroes driven to new lands by Troy's fall.

Lydgate's poem is one of several translations of Guido's *Historia* into Middle English. The Laud *Troy Book* and the alliterative *Destruction of Troy* are near contemporaries. All three poems follow the arc of Guido's narrative as it moves from the remote origins of the war in Jason's quest for the Golden Fleece to the heroic battles and downfall of Priam's Troy and finally to the catastrophes awaiting the Greek victors on their homecoming. Lydgate gives, however, a defining shape to Guido's account where the other translations are content to reproduce its sequence of action. In a gesture of acknowledgement and homage to Chaucer's "litel tragedye," Lydgate brings a five-book structure to Guido's thirty-five shorter books. He thereby balances the opening and closing movements and makes Hector's death in Book 3 the narrative center and turning point of the story. *Troy Book* also differs from its contemporaries by making significant additions to the outlines of Guido's story. Lydgate adds materials from Ovid, Christine de Pisan (for Hector's death), and authorities like Fulgentius (for mythology), Isidore of Seville (for mythography), Jacobus de Cessolis (for the invention of chess), and John Trevisa (for the labors of Hercules). The result is a poem longer, more diffuse in focus, and more consciously learned than its predecessors or contemporaries. As Derek Pearsall

Troy Book

remarks, "The *Troy Book* is a homily first, an encyclopedia second, and an epic nowhere" (1970, p. 129).

In the late Middle Ages and Renaissance, *Troy Book* enjoyed considerable reputation and influence. Not long after it was composed, it served as the source for a prose *Sege of Troy*, which retold the story through the fall of the city at the end of Lydgate's Book 4. In *The Recuyell of the Histories of Troye* (STC 15375), the first book printed in English (c. 1475), William Caxton professes that there is no need for him to translate the portion of his French source, Raoul Lefèvre's *Recueil des Histoires de Troie*, dealing with the fall of Troy: "And as for the thirde book whiche treteth of the generall and last destruccioun of Troye Hit nedeth not to translate hit into englyssh ffor as moche as that worshifull and religyous man dan John Lydgate monke of Burye did translate hit but late / after whos werke I fere to take upon me that am not worthy to bere his penner and ymke horne after hym, to medle me in that werke" (Epilogue to Book 2). *Troy Book*'s classical topic, narrative scope, and moral purpose probably had something to do with William Dunbar's inclusion of Lydgate with Chaucer and John Gower as a triad of originary English poets in his early-sixteenth-century "Lament for the Makaris": "The noble Chaucer, of makaris flour, / The Monk of Bery, and Gower, all thre" (lines 50–51). Richard Pynson printed the first edition of *Troy Book* in 1513, under the title *The historye / sege and dystruccion of Troye* (STC 5579). As A. S. G. Edwards and Carol M. Meale note, Pynson's edition was printed at the command of Henry VIII to manipulate public opinion in his first French campaign (p. 99). Thomas Marshe printed a second edition in 1555, with a prefatory epistle by Robert Braham (STC 5580). The continuing influence of *Troy Book* can be detected in Thomas Heywood's modernization, printed in 1614 as *The Life and Death of Hector* (STC 13346a), and in the works of Robert Henryson, Thomas Kyd, Christopher Marlowe, and William Shakespeare. The sense of Trojan history and particularly of Cressida's character in Shakespeare's *Troilus and Cressida* bear the imprint of Lydgate's poem.

Troy Book incorporates a distinctly medieval approach to its subject matter. As Chaucer shows in the *House of Fame* and *Troilus and Criseyde*, medieval writers knew Homer only as a name. Moreover, they discounted the poetic tradition associated with him, even as they recognized its cultural authority and struggled ambivalently to appropriate it to their own ends. For them, the claims of the Troy story lie not in the fables of the poets but in the truth of what they took to be historical witness. Such witness was provided by Dares and Dictys, who were supposedly contemporary observers of the war. A fragment of a Greek text of Dictys survives, but the chief sources are Dares's *De excidio Troise historia* and Dictys's *Ephemeridos bellum Troiane*, two late Latin texts purporting to translate Greek originals. However spare their accounts of heroes and battles may be, these accounts established the idea for the Middle Ages that the Trojan War could be approached as history with the same factual basis as found in chronicles. Joseph of Exeter's *Frigii Daretis*

Introduction

Ylias (dated 1188–90) is one example of the continuing claim to historicity that surrounded such chronicle writing. Benoit drew on Dares and Dictys to compose his *Roman de Troie*. He goes beyond the accounts in his sources, however, to introduce an exotic and chivalric locale that figures prominently in subsequent medieval versions of the story. Geoffrey of Monmouth's *Historia Regum Britanniae* (dated 1135) claimed a Trojan origin for the British monarchy and people. The poet of *Sir Gawain and the Green Knight* deliberately frames his Arthurian romance with references to the fall of Troy. In addition to its narrative, the Troy story offered an example to be studied for its lessons in statecraft and moral conduct. Greeks and Trojans participate in the same chivalric culture, and their actions serve as examples of how to govern both a kingdom and its aristocratic subjects.

The medieval approach to the Troy story also implies a particular sense of authorship. Lois Ebin argues that Lydgate regards his literary role as that of "an orderer and civilizer of men" (1985, p. 39) who transmits the lessons of the past. Lydgate makes it clear that he sees his poetic task as "making" (the technical composition of verse) rather than original creation. Like Chaucer, he does not call himself a poet. His translation follows medieval literary conventions by rendering the sense of Guido's text rather than striving for word-for-word equivalences (2.180). Just as Guido supposedly follows Dares and Dictys so that "in effecte the substaunce is the same" (Pro. 359) in both source and translation, so Lydgate hopes that, despite any flaws in meter, his readers will find "[t]he story pleyn, chefly in substaunce" (5.3543). Lydgate ascribes to Guido a rhetorical skill (Pro. 360–69) that other readers might well dispute, but he understood Guido's intentions accurately. As Guido explains at the end of the *Historia* (Book 35), his work presents a truthful historical account ("veram noticiam") embellished by rhetorical colors and figures. Lydgate regards his source and, by extension, himself as part of a tradition of chroniclers for whom language is superficial and external to actual meaning. "Ye may beholde in her wrytyng wel," he says confidently, "The stryfe, the werre, the sege and everydel, / Ryghte as it was, so many yeres passyd" (Pro. 247–49).

The truth of such historical writing ostensibly sets it apart from poetry. Lydgate's way of expressing this difference is to contrast the transparency of history and the opacity of poetry. The chronicle story of Troy is open and plain; we can grasp its "substaunce" apart from any rhetorical effects. The poets use "veyn fables" in order to "hyde trouthe falsely under cloude, / And the sothe of malys for to schroude" (Pro. 265–66). Homer's honey-sweet words only disguise the gall inside. Ovid and Vergil fall under the same suspicion:

Ovide also poetycally hath closyd
Falshede with trouthe, that maketh men enosed
To whiche parte that thei schal hem holde;
His mysty specie so hard is to unfolde

clothed
confused

Troy Book

That it estriketh redaris that it se.
Virgile also for love of Enée
In Eneydos rehersyth moche thyng
And was in party trewe of his writyng,
Exepte only that hym lyt som whyle
The tracys folwe of Omeris stile.
(Pro. 299-308)

ennares

Aeneas

Aeneid

traces (ideas)

Here and elsewhere, Lydgate uses the same images for poets that he applies in the narrative to characters who employ deceitful language to mislead others and subvert just deliberation.

Besides historical truth, the Troy story carries exemplary meaning for medieval and Renaissance culture. Walter Schirmer observes that the tales connected with Troy were regarded "as a historical work containing all the moral and political lessons which history was expected to teach" (p. 44). An important feature of Lydgate's moralizing is its rather precise focus. The lessons of *Troy Book* apply on one level to kingship and statecraft and on another to the individual within an aristocratic, chivalric world. The capacity to foresee consequences or control anger, for example, serves a king in his political role as a governor and a hero in his public office as an adviser, advocate, or warrior. Conspicuous by its absence is a larger social vision. *Troy Book* concedes the need in several places to account for popular opinion. Priam's rebuilding of Troy in Book 2, for example, incorporates the gesture of vesting its builders with citizenship so that the founding of a new city is simultaneously the creation of a new state. But Lydgate offers nothing really comparable to John Gower's appeal in his *Confessio Amantis* to the commons as a source for political legitimacy or to the estates as a basis of stable government and institutions. Lydgate's moralization of Troy's history offers an aristocratic perspective rather than a social vision. It is a mirror for kings and nobles.

The principal lesson that Lydgate's Troy story offers its royal, aristocratic, and noble readers is the virtue of prudence. In Book 6 of the *Nicomachean Ethics*, Aristotle defines prudence as an intellectual virtue by which one can deliberate about particular goods and the practical steps toward attaining them. Prudence considers means rather than ends, and it addresses things that are variable rather than true and unchanging. Thomas Aquinas's phrase "recta ratio agibilium" — right reason directed toward what can be done — captures the spirit of Aristotle's idea and shows its application to politics and statecraft. Prudence is commonly described as an "imperative" virtue, governing all the others. The importance of prudence for rulers is a standard precept from medieval political theorists like John of Salisbury and Marsilius of Padua to Lydgate's English contemporaries, Thomas Hoccleve and Thomas Usk. Chaucer signals its importance in *The Tale of Melibee* and makes it the virtue Criseyde lacks (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.744). In the imitation of the pseudo-Aristotelian *Secreta secretorum* that he undertook at the

Introduction

very end of his life, Lydgate has prudence rule over the other virtues needed by a king.

At the end of *Troy Book* (Env. 36–42), Lydgate presents Solomon as the Biblical model of prudence. But the character who best embodies prudence in Lydgate's poem is Hector, the figurative root of all chivalry (2.244). Hector's prudence extends from practical wisdom in infantry tactics to political governance, moral example, skill in debate and deliberation, self-containment, and foresight. As Lydgate describes him, he is an ideal because of his traits of character and judgment: "He had in hym soveraine excellence, / And governaunce medlid with prudence, / That nought asterte him, he was so wis and war" (3.489–91). Significantly, it is Hector who urges restraint when Priam seeks support from the Trojan council to avenge Hesione's abduction by Telamon after the fall of Lamedon's Troy:

But first I rede, wysely in your mynde	advise
To cast aften and leve nat behynde,	
Or ye begynne, discretly to adverse	reflect
And prudently consyderen in your herte	
Al, only nat the gynnyng but the ende	not only
And the myddes, what weie thei wil wende,	
And to what syn Fortune wil hem lede:	end
'Yif ye thus don, amys ye may nat spedē.	
(2.2229–36)	

His death "thorugh negligence only of his shelde" (3.5399) is surely the most interesting contradiction of Lydgate's poem. Hector's fatal lapse, which Lydgate adds to Guido's narrative, does not compromise Hector's heroic stature so much as challenge the primacy of prudence as a virtue that can be applied to so many facets of human experience.

Lydgate's depiction of prudence also reveals the way in which he expects his moralizations and the exemplarity of the Troy story to be understood. C. David Benson points out that Lydgate's moralizing is practical rather than spiritual (1980, pp. 116–24). In particular, prudence seems to offer a remedy to Fortune and the transitory world. Lydgate's panorama of pagan history from Jason's quest outward through Ulysses's return home sketches a world of unknown and hidden consequences. Remote, even trivial causes set tragic events in motion: "of sparkys that ben of syghte smale / Is fire engendered that devoureth al" (1.785–86). Thus Lamedon's discourtesy in denying Jason temporary respite in his land initiates a cycle of vengeance that destroys Troy twice. The governing mechanism of history is Boethian Fortune, a compound of sheer accident and of consequences proceeding from hidden and only partially understood choices. Boethius's remedy is to see past the mutability of the world and finally reject the secular for the transcendent. But for pagans trapped in their history and for Christian chivalry and rulers who cannot abandon the duties of worldly governance, prudence offers the only means

Troy Book

for navigating the reversals of Fortune. Still, if prudence is the chief virtue of *Troy Book*, it also generates the profound moral contradiction that inhabits the center of Lydgate's poem. In the Troy story, prudence means right reason, foresight, cleverness, eloquence, and practical wisdom, but it also comes to mean cunning, deceit, and false language. While Lydgate extols the value of prudence throughout the story, he ends Book 5 of *Troy Book* by asserting the fragility of human institutions before Fortune and giving a final definition to prudence. "For oure lyf here is but a pilgrymage," he says, citing a medieval commonplace. If men would "to fern prudently adverte" (5.3573), they would put little trust in worldly things. Through the example of Troy, princes, lords, and kings can see that in this life none of them "may have ful sureté" (5.3578).

To judge from the reception of *Troy Book* and the marginal commentary recorded in the manuscripts, medieval and early Renaissance readers understood Lydgate's moralizations on the level he intended them and not necessarily in their fuller, tragic implications. On the fly leaf at the end of one *Troy Book* manuscript (Rawlinson poet. 144), an anonymous sixteenth-century reader takes to heart Lydgate's protest that he writes true meaning but with little craft. Ancient English books, says this reader, show little art; ignorance darkened understanding in those earlier times, "but mark the substance of this book / In wiche this mownk such paynes hath vndertook" (Bergen 4:52). He then goes on, without any sense of contradiction, to connect Lydgate with precisely the poetic fabrication from which he strives to distinguish *Troy Book* in his Prologue:

A, story tys sone writt, thatis nothing true,
And poete haue it dece, with vading bewe.
So lydgat hath a poete licence tooke
By vayne discowrse, with lies to faree this book,
Yet dothe his paynes, Joynd with Obedience,
Deserve dew prayse, & worthy recompence.

Various manuscripts preserve marginal responses to Lydgate's sententious passages in *Troy Book*. In Pierpont Morgan Library, MS M.876, Agamemnon's speech to Menelaus, counseling him to disguise his grief at Helen's loss (2.4337–4429), carries the marginal reminder, "note thes | and follow." In Rawlinson C.446, a sixteenth-century reader has added verses on the dishonorable deaths of Hector and Troilus at the hands of Achilles. In the Pierpont Morgan manuscript and in slightly later manuscripts (dating from the mid-fifteenth century onwards), pointing hands mark various passages in the text, especially those dealing with the supposed perfidy of women.

Manuscript illustrations provide another means of grasping how Lydgate's contemporaries might have read his poem. Eight manuscripts, including the four oldest witnesses, have miniatures, and at least six others have decorated borders or initials. The textual and visual layout of the manuscripts show that *Troy Book* was a prestige item, appearing as

Introduction

the sole text in the earliest witnesses and with the *Siege of Thebes* and the romance *Generydes* in several later manuscripts. One manuscript, which cannot be identified from among extant witnesses and may not have survived, was, of course, a presentation copy for Lydgate's patron, Henry V. Coats of arms indicate that *Troy Book* manuscripts were owned by fifteenth-century gentry and, in at least one instance, by aristocracy. In the later case (Royal 18.D.ii), the conventional portrait of Lydgate presenting the poem to the king is displaced by a scene that shows the owner, Sir William Herbert, First Earl of Pembroke and his second wife, Anne Devereux, in postures of homage to the king.

Kathleen L. Scott proposes that the manuscript was intended as a presentation gift to Henry VI or Edward IV and that it may register Herbert's shift of allegiance from the Lancastrian to the Yorkist cause (1996, 2:282–84). Lesley Lawton observes that there is a uniform sequence of miniatures in the manuscripts which reflects Lydgate's structural reordering of Guido's narrative into five books. Miniatures introduce the Prologue and the first major incident of each of the five books; they are visual markers of the formal divisions of the text. The opening of Book 2, where Lydgate complains about Fortune, occasions some divergence among the illustrations. Four manuscripts have a miniature of the goddess Fortuna, while the other four represent Priam's siege (2.203), the first event in the narrative. For Books 3 and 4, Royal 18.D.ii adds illustrations to highlight Troilus. Even when the number of miniatures is increased in manuscripts from the later fifteenth century, the basic program remains intact. In addition, a "decorative hierarchy" governs the use of initials in the text, emphasizing such features as seasonal descriptions and other examples of Lydgate's amplification. Royal 18.D.ii contains extensive rubrics to guide the reader. The overall effect of the miniatures, initials, and rubrics in *Troy Book* manuscripts is to delineate the formal order of Lydgate's poem rather than provide a visual representation parallel to the written text. Pynson's edition retains these manuscript features, while dividing the text into both Lydgate's five books and a reminiscence of Guido's original thirty-five books plus Lydgate's Prologue and final materials. Marshe's 1555 edition eliminates the woodcuts but uses rubrics and blank spaces to mark structural divisions.

For a full understanding of *Troy Book*, Lydgate's historical and literary contexts prove as important as the narrative scope and thematic complexity of the poem. Ebin describes *Troy Book* and the *Siege of Thebes*, the poem composed directly after it and finished in 1422, as "public poems" (p. 39). Pearsall calls *Troy Book* "an instrument of national prestige" as well as a chivalric and moral exemplar (1970, p. 69). Schirmer proposes that Henry's commission involved a poetic rivalry with Benoit's *Roman de Troie* and Guido's *Historia* (pp. 42–43). Certainly, Lydgate's description of Henry's motives bears out some of this claim. Henry seeks to preserve the worthiness of true knighthood and "the prowesse of olde chivalrie" so that his contemporaries can find examples for pursuing virtue and rejecting sloth and idleness. He commissions Lydgate to make the exemplary

Troy Book

force of the story available to all by creating an English equivalent to the French and Latin histories:

By cause he wolded that to byghe and lowe
The noble story openly wer knowne
In cure tonge, aboue in every age,
And ywritten as wel in cure langage
As in Latyn and in Frenche it is,
That of the story the trouthe we nat mys
No more than doth eche other nacion:
This was the fyn of his entencoun.
goaf
(Pro. 111-18)

That Henry should choose Lydgate, a monk of Bury St. Edmunds, to carry out such a weighty task reflects political allegiances and an intricate network of personal connections. Bury St. Edmunds had a long association with the English crown, and it actively supported royal interests during the late fourteenth and early fifteenth centuries. Far from retreating from the world, the great monasteries of the day cultivated economic and political ties with secular institutions. Lydgate's profession as a monk makes him in some measure an agent of ecclesiastical public policy. Though he entered the monastery at about age fifteen, he spent much of his life outside and even overseas, until his retirement to St. Edmunds in the early 1440s. From the commission to write *Troy Book* in 1412, he served in effect as a court poet, and the record of later commissions, such as the *Fall of Princes* for Duke Humphrey, shows his popularity and adaptability to occasions. Some recent scholars have proposed that one of the underlying objectives of Lydgate's work is to affirm Lancastrian legitimacy. Lydgate's address to Henry in the Envoy of *Troy Book* subtly raises these issues. The poet addresses his sovereign not only as the source of knighthood but as one "born also by discent of lyne / As rightful eyr by title to atteyne, / To bere a crowne of worthi rewmys tweyne" (Env. 5-7). Though the immediate reference is to English claims to the French crown, the effect is tacitly to affirm Henry IV's usurpation of the English throne and Henry V's legitimate succession of his father.

The link with Henry also has some enticing biographical dimensions. Lydgate spent time at Oxford in Gloucester College, which the Benedictines maintained for monks engaged in university study. Henry had studied at Queen's College in 1394, and sometime between 1406 and 1408 wrote Lydgate's abbot asking for permission for Lydgate to continue his studies, either in divinity or canon law. Henry's letter mentions that he has heard good reports about Lydgate; it does not indicate necessarily that the Prince of Wales and the monk had a personal acquaintance. John Norton-Smith proposes, however, that Lydgate resided in Oxford from approximately 1397 to 1408 and that he met Henry

Introduction

(p. 195n). The rubrics of Lydgate manuscripts owned by the fifteenth-century antiquarian John Shirley suggest that Lydgate and Henry shared interests in the liturgy, but these are textual sources that postdate *Troy Book*. Henry's religious fervor matched his enthusiasm for tales of chivalry. Schirmer argues that Lydgate's attitude differs from his patron's endorsement of military adventure. He contends, for example, that Lydgate initially invokes Mars (Pro. 1-37) but reproves him (4.4440-4536) after Henry becomes king. In his view, the line "[a]lmost for nought was this strif begonne" (2.7855) refers not just to the Trojan War but also to the pointlessness of the French war. Lydgate's peace sentiments seem, however, more the expression of commonplace counsel than a rejection of Henry's policies. To be sure, there are profound tensions and contradictions in *Troy Book*, but they grow out of the narrative that Lydgate recounts and embellishes and not from a kind of authorial resistance. In its immediate historical context, the poem aims to affirm chivalric virtues, offer examples and moral precepts, and celebrate the national myth of Trojan origins.

The literary rather than the historical context of *Troy Book* is a more likely source of ambivalence. Lydgate situates himself conspicuously within literary tradition, even if he knows many of the authors who comprise that tradition only at second hand. Guido is the author whose achievement he serves, Chaucer is his acknowledged master, and the treasures of encyclopedic learning and anthology literature lie about as sources for embellishing the Troy narrative with scientific, mythographic, and historical commentary. E. B. Atwood proposes that, for Lydgate, Guido has completely superseded Benoit, the poet who initially gave the medieval Troy story its admixture of classical and chivalric elements. All the details on which Lydgate and Benoit agree, says Atwood, are also contained in Guido, and so there is no direct influence on Lydgate from the original French source of his story. Of the classical *auctores*, Lydgate knew only Ovid well. He goes to the Ovidian sources to add more when Guido cites them and uses Ovid elsewhere as a supplement to Guido. Lydgate's acquaintance with Vergil is by all accounts scant or indirect. His references to the *Aeneid* show, for instance, that he depended on the story of Dido contained in Chaucer's *The Legend of Good Women*. Other classical authors he knew largely through anthologies and grammars. The library at Bury St. Edmunds gives some sense of the practical form literary culture might have taken for Lydgate. It contained over 2,000 volumes in Lydgate's day, and it was notable for its holdings among Patristic writers, later commentators on the Bible, classical authors, theologians, and encyclopedic writers. It contained two manuscripts of Guido and possibly a copy of Gower's *Confessio Amantis*. All the materials for embellishing an authoritative historical text with the apparatus of learned comments, excursus, and interpolations lay readily to hand. The one manuscript positively associated with Lydgate (Bodleian Library MS Laud 233) has two works by Isidore, sermons by Hilbert of Le Mans, and brief quotations from Vergil and Horace.

Troy Book

The bookishness of this literary context shows itself perhaps most apparently in Lydgate's rhetorical amplifications. Pearsall observes, "Lydgate's expansiveness clearly forms part of a deliberate poetic style" (1970, p. 7), but for *Troy Book* it may be still nearer the case to speak of a poetics of amplification. The conceptual and thematic counterpart to the poet's task of "making" is the addition of new materials suitable to the passage that Lydgate is translating at any given point. Lydgate finds the warrant for such practice in Guido himself. Guido adds rhetorical colors to "[t]his noble story" and "many riche flour / Of eloquence to make it sownde bet / He in the story hath ymped in and set" (Pro. 361-66). Lydgate's amplifications take the form of learned digressions on mythography and science, additional speeches, set-piece descriptions, formal laments, and seasonal descriptions. The aim of such amplification is not, however, merely dilation. Ebin contends that the additions are part of a program directed toward securing a place within literary culture: "Lydgate's changes in the *Troy Book* reveal his concern with elevating the narrative and creating a monumental version of the story in English, loftier and more impressive than any before him" (1985, p. 51). Moreover, the additions afford Lydgate the opportunity to develop his own thematic interests. His reproof of Guido's antifeminism, though by no means unproblematic (see note to 3.4343-4448), is one example. Benson argues that Lydgate uses Christine de Pisan's *Epistre Othea* to introduce a new view of Hector and the value of prudence (1980, pp. 124-29). Schirmer finds three major themes in Lydgate's formal digressions: transitoriness, war and discord, and encyclopedic learning (p. 47).

The other defining feature of Lydgate's literary context is the influence of Chaucer as both inspiration and rival. *Troy Book* contains laudatory passages that not only offer praise for Chaucer but also shape literary history by establishing him as the father of English poetry. Robert O. Payne observes that Chaucer offered Lydgate a double model of poetic originator and craftsman (p. 255). Chaucer is "Noble Galfride, poete of Breteyne" (2.4697). His great achievement is to have exploited the rhetorical possibilities of English and thereby to have established it as a literary idiom comparable to classical languages and other European vernaculars. He was the firste "to reyne / The gold dewedropis of rethorik so fyne, / Oure rude langage only t'enlwmyn" (2.4698-4700). He is the "chefe poete" (3.4256), the English counterpart of Petrarch as poet laureate.

For he owe Englishe gite with his sawes,	gilded; tales
Rude and boistous firste be olde dawes,	Unpolished; rough; days
That was ful fer from al perfeccoun	
And but of litel reputacion,	
Til that he cam and thorough his poetric	
Gas oure tonge firste to magnifie	make greater in importance
And adourne it with his eloquence . . .	
(3.4237-41)	

Introduction

Elsewhere Lydgate says that the death of "[t]he noble rhetor" (3.553) leaves him without counsel or correction, and so he goes "[c]olourles" — without rhetorical figures — to his composition. When he later submits the finished work for correction to his readers, he invokes the image of Chaucer as a gentle and beneficent master who genially overlooks defects in the works offered to him: "Hym liste nat pinche nor gruche at every blot" (5.3522).

It is unlikely that Lydgate actually knew or ever met Chaucer. He did have connections with Thomas Chaucer and Thomas's daughter, Alice, the Duchess of Suffolk. Some recent criticism wants to see in these connections a link between establishing the Chaucer canon and furthering Lancastrian politics. The important point, however, is that Lydgate constructs the paternal figure of Chaucer and, through that figure, his own literary pose of discipleship and "dullness" — the persona of a belated, deferential, and supposedly inadequate latter-day follower. Chaucer had, of course, already perfected the role of the humble literary artisan, its commonplaces of modesty and inability, and its characteristic phrasing. Lydgate's innovation is to position himself with respect to Chaucer just as Chaucer had positioned himself with respect to the classical *auctores*. Later writers show that the process can go a step further. Lydgate's discipleship can be transmitted to his successors. Caxton says that Lydgate's version of Troy's fall is too strong to emulate. In his *Pastime of Pleasure* (1509), Stephen Hawes claims to write without rhetoric or "colour crafty": "Nothynge I am/ experte in poetry / As the monke of Bury/ floore of eloquence / Whiche was in tyme/ of grete excellency" (lines 26–28).

Lydgate's echoes and allusions make it clear that he had access to Chaucer's work, though monastic libraries possessed few vernacular manuscripts, still fewer in English. Lydgate obviously knew *The Book of the Duchess*, *The House of Fame*, *The Legend of Good Women*, and a number of the pieces comprising the *Canterbury Tales*. In his description of the Greeks' landing to destroy Lamedon's Troy (1.3907–43), Lydgate goes so far as to hazard an imitation of the opening of the General Prologue to the *Canterbury Tales*, with disastrous results. The Notes to the present edition give examples of the wide range of allusion to Chaucer that runs throughout *Troy Book*. Atwood divides the borrowings into classical material for which Chaucer served as an intermediary and "miscellaneous fine phrases and descriptive passages" (pp. 35–36). At those points where he strives most to represent himself within the poem, Lydgate recalls Chaucer's narrative persona, even if the occasional efforts at comic deflation fail, as in the uneven, shifting tone of his reproof of Guido's misogyny.

Troilus and Criseyde is, of course, the poem that bears most immediately on *Troy Book* and Lydgate's relation to Chaucer. Chaucer's poem is Lydgate's subtext, even though Lydgate's subject matter furnishes the background for Chaucer's poem. More important, *Troilus and Criseyde* is the literary work that fully embodies Chaucer for Lydgate, as it did for readers in the Renaissance. Lydgate concedes there is no need for him to retell the

Troy Book

lovers' story after Chaucer, but he goes on to summarize it and echo the style and content of its conclusion (3.4196–4230). He even works mention of Chaucer's description of Criseyde (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.803–26) into his own adaptation of Chaucer's inability *topos* (2.4676–93). Benson would find in *Troy Book* the beginnings of a distinct historical sense, derived from *Troilus and Criseyde*, that views pagan antiquity as a remote and radically different cultural world to be investigated almost ethnographically for its rites and beliefs, false though they be. At the same time that it proclaims discipleship, however, *Troy Book* competes with Chaucer's poem in the scope of its ambition. Chaucer's genius, following from Boccaccio's *Filosofato*, is to portray the intimate, private sphere of antiquity and the epic. Lydgate gives the larger, encompassing story. As Anna Torti rightly points out, the love story of Troilus and Criseyde is one of many love stories counterpointing the war in Guido and Lydgate (p. 180). Following perhaps the narrator's suggestion in *Troilus and Criseyde* (1.144–45) that "the Trojan gestes" can be found "[i]n Omer, or in Dares, or in Dite" for whoever can read them, Lydgate seeks to go beyond his master.

Chaucer's influence shows in the style of *Troy Book* as well as in the narrative and thematic elements. The pentameter couplets are modeled on Chaucer's later work in the *Canterbury Tales*, while the rhyme royal stanzas of the Envoy recall the *Parliament of Fowls*, *Troilus*, and works probably composed earlier and then added to the *Canterbury Tales*. Lydgate's ambition is to write in an elevated style appropriate to his subject matter. This leads to an English verse approximation of what he claims to recognize as the high style of Guido's prose. The most common effect is to distort the natural order of syntax, abandoning the "conversational tone" that characterizes Chaucer's most mature writing. Lydgate seeks instead to emulate Latin models by using devices of accretion, parallelism, and subordination. Constructions such as the ablative absolute, syntactic inversion, and anacoluthon (lack of sequence in a sentence) are common. Pearsall remarks that one of Lydgate's major traits is the use of "unrelated participles instead of finite verbs" (1970, p. 58). Few run-on lines disrupt the patterning of phrases and clauses within Lydgate's couplets. At times, when he reaches for his most complex effects, the syntax can fail altogether; at others, as in the laments and passages expressing his authorial response, he achieves a fluid, more direct elegiac verse.

The designation often given to Lydgate's verse is aureate style or diction. "Aureate," meaning both "golden" and "eloquent," refers generally to the effort to reproduce the elevated effects of Latin in English. Lydgate originated the term and the concept, and it exerted a strong influence on both the Scottish Chaucerians and English Renaissance poets. The style depends essentially on the importation of Latin vocabulary, though the number of words Lydgate introduced into Middle English is now reckoned fewer than once thought. Norton-Smith contends that Lydgate always uses the term with strong metaphoric associations, and he notes that these associations are with rhetorical skill,

Introduction

eloquent language, and inspiration (pp. 192–95). The style produces a poetry based on exuberant elaboration rather than master images or controlling symbols. Scholars would limit most applications of “aureate” to Lydgate’s religious poetry and would distinguish his borrowing of Latin vocabulary for purely artistic effect from borrowings of Latin technical and scientific terms. In a broad sense, however, what matters most to Lydgate’s style is the combination of Latinate vocabulary with intricate syntactic structures.

Lydgate’s meter, like his style, has been the topic of much aesthetic debate. Alain Renoir traces most dismissals of Lydgate’s metrical skill to the early nineteenth century, which reversed centuries of opinion that ranked Lydgate with or above Chaucer in prosodic skill as well as rhetorical eloquence. Lydgate’s assertion that “moche thing is wrong, / Falsly metred, bothe of short and long” (5.3483–84) is, as Schirmer observed (p. 71), a modesty formula rather than a description of his actual composition or poetic ambitions. The basic model of prosody in *Troy Book* is Chaucer’s iambic pentameter line, which regularly placed a caesura after the fourth or sixth syllable and permitted the addition of an unaccented syllable at the end of the line. Lydgate also follows Chaucerian practice in sounding final -e as needed for meter, even though the spoken language dropped this feature of the grammatical case system in the second half of the fourteenth century. Josef Schick distinguished five kinds of lines in Lydgate’s poetry. Iambic pentameter (Type A) is the most common line. Trochaic feet sometimes appear before the caesura (Type B) and in the first foot (Type E) of a line. More characteristic are a headless line (Type D), with the first syllable missing, and the so-called “Lydgate line” or “broken-backed line,” in which the unaccented syllable is missing after the caesura so that two accented syllables stand next to each other (Type C). In the following example, the manuscripts preserve a Lydgate line with stressed syllables on both sides of the caesura: “That his entent [] can no man bewreye” (1.224). In Chaucer manuscripts, which are also fifteenth-century witnesses, the Lydgate line is commonly treated as a scribal error rather than an intentional form; most editors emend the line, frequently without notice. The pattern is intentional with Lydgate, however. In general, the metrical features that Chaucer used occasionally and even then with a rhythmic purpose in mind become frequent and systematic. Chaucer’s metrical variants are the recurring elements of Lydgate’s metrical program.

The present edition of *Troy Book* offers a selection of Lydgate’s text from the vast and encyclopedic narrative that Lydgate composed. Its aim is to present key episodes, while preserving the overall shape of a narrative running to 30,117 lines. Prose summaries recount the material left out between the passages. The Prologue and Epilogue as well as the openings of each book are printed as markers of the poem’s formal divisions and stylistic examples that differ significantly from Lydgate’s narration. The selections for Book 1 seek to balance the Jason and Medea story with the events that precipitate the war. The passages from Book 2 alternate between narrative elements and set pieces, such

Troy Book

as Priam's rebuilding of Troy, Lydgate's apostrophe to Priam on kingship, and the speeches made by Hector and Agamemnon. The episodes chosen from Book 3 sketch the evolving catastrophe of the war: the death of Patroclus, Hector's blunder in not pursuing his tactical advantage in battle, Achilles's plot to murder Hector, the exchange of Thoas for Antenor that prepares for the betrayal of Troy, and the sequence that begins with Andromache's prophetic dream and moves through Hector's death and enshrinement. The last of these is a fascinating reminiscence of the exotic element that Benoit introduced to the medieval Troy story. The episodes taken from Book 4 reflect the final stages of Troy's downfall. Achilles succeeds in killing Troilus, the second Hector, but falls in love with Polynena and subsequently dies in a murder plot. Though the Amazons give Troy some respite by entering the war, the conspiracy to betray the city succeeds, and after Troy's destruction, Achilles's son Pyrrhus exacts a brutal and unjust vengeance on Polynena. The selections from Book 5, which recounts the return of the Greek heroes, focus on the story of Ulysses. The resolution reached by his sons, Telemachus and Telegonus, mirrors a larger pattern of peacemaking between Trojans and Greeks that Lydgate sees as an example for the current strife between England and France. Throughout these selections, passages and episodes of particular literary interest have been included, such as Lydgate's remarks on translation (2.134-202) and the many references to Chaucer and to *Troilus and Criseyde* (2.4677-4762, 2.4861-95, 3.550-57, 3.4077-4448, 3.4820-4869, and 4.2029-2177). From the text and intervening summaries, the reader can follow the main line of Lydgate's story and examine its major rhetorical and narrative elements.

The text of *Troy Book* survives in twenty-three manuscripts and fragments. Pynson's first edition seems to have relied on another early manuscript with a good text. Despite the claims to sober editorial judgment made in Braham's prefatory epistle, the 1555 edition printed by Marshe reproduces Pynson's text and emends it freely with no manuscript authority. An extract from Lydgate's reproof of Priam (2.1849-56) appears in one manuscript of the *Canterbury Tales* (Royal 18.C.ii). In two late manuscripts (Douce 148 and Cambridge Kk.V.30), fragments of a fifteenth-century Scots translation of Guido are inserted. Douce 148 was "mendit" by John Asloan, and both manuscripts descend from the same exemplar that was the ancestor of Arundel 99. A portrait of Lydgate presenting *Troy Book* to Henry appears in Cotton Augustus A.iv, Digby 232, Rawlinson C.446, Rylands English 1, and Trinity College, MS 0.5.2. The same themes and details of the portrait reappear in a woodcut from Pynson's edition; Pynson also introduces Lydgate's complaint on Hector's death with a portrait of the poet writing at a desk. The earliest manuscripts, it has been suggested, might have been written and illustrated at Bury St. Edmunds for the monastery's great poet, but the London booktrade now seems a more likely source.

As A. S. G. Edwards points out, manuscript study over the past two decades has added

Introduction

much important detail about the material production of *Troy Book* (1981, pp. 16–19). The illuminations of Rawlinson C.446 have been connected to the atelier of a follower of John Siferwas, a master miniaturist (Spriggs, p. 200 n. 2). Rylands English 1 was illuminated by an artist close stylistically to William Abell, the mid-fifteenth English illuminator who reacted against developments in Netherlandish and Italian Renaissance painting (Alexander, pp. 169–70). Decorations in a fragment of *Troy Book* attached to the front of a manuscript of the *Canterbury Tales* (Rawlinson poet. 223) are linked to the "owl" atelier, so called for the trademark used by one artist who decorated the borders of books in a London illuminating shop around 1465; the text was written elsewhere (Scott, 1968, pp. 189–91). Rawlinson C. 446 and Digby 230 were written by the same scribe in the 1420s; the space left for coats of arms to be inserted in illuminated initials indicates they were destined for noble owners (Doyle and Parkes, pp. 201 n. 100, 210 n. 128). There also seems to have been a "Lydgate scribe" active in the mid-fifteenth century who was responsible for the text of *Troy Book* in Arundel 99 and for other Lydgate poems (Edwards, 1981, pp. 17–19). His presence suggests that a complex publishing organization existed to produce and disseminate Lydgate's work. A. I. Doyle speaks of a "long-standing Lydgate workshop" in East Anglia possibly composed of monks and laymen (p. 7).

The most important textual sources for *Troy Book* are the four earliest manuscripts: Cotton Augustus A.iv, Bristol MS 8, Digby 232, and Rawlinson C.446. None of them is Lydgate's original, and each was copied independently from the others. Cotton Augustus A.iv is usually thought to be the earliest witness; Bergen dated it 1420–30, the other three 1420–35. Scott suggests revised dates of 1430–40 for Cotton Augustus A.iv, c. 1420–35 for Digby 232, and c. 1420–25 for Rawlinson C.446 (1996, 2:261). The Cotton MS is virtually complete, lacking only six lines of the full text; the other three are missing portions of text that run between two thousand and five thousand lines. Bristol 8, which suffered the greatest loss of text, was mutilated for the miniatures. The large folio layout of the early manuscripts and the extent of decoration indicate that all of them could have been presentation copies, but no one manuscript can be identified as the *Troy Book* that Lydgate presented to Henry. The evidence of later manuscripts indicates that the poem retained its value as a prestige possession and found an audience among provincial gentry. Rylands English 1, for example, shows up in an inventory of Markeaton Hall, Derbyshire, compiled in 1545.

Cotton Augustus A.iv is the base text chosen for this edition of selections from *Troy Book*, as it was for Henry Bergen's complete edition of the poem prepared for the Early English Text Society early in this century. Cotton Augustus offers the most complete early text. Written on vellum leaves measuring 26 x 15 inches, the manuscript is composed of 155 folios, gathered in eight-leaf quires. The script is an Anglicana formata, with the characteristic double-lobed a, e, and g. The letter d is looped. Both x and long

Troy Book

s are used. The two-shaped r replaces the regular r after the letter o, but the forked r does not appear. Cotton Augustus contains only *Troy Book*. The text is arranged in double columns of 49 lines, except for the rhyme royal stanzas of the Envoy and the two eight-line stanzas of the final Envoy and *Verba translatores*. The first miniature (fol. 1ra) contains the arms of Sir Thomas Chaworth (d. 1458) and his second wife, Isabella de Ailesbury below the portrait of Lydgate and Henry V. A short description of the manuscript appears in the British Museum catalogue compiled by H. L. D. Ward and J. A. Herbert. A more extensive description is contained in Bergen's edition (4:1-4).

The text presented here follows the readings of Cotton Augustus A.iv, except for the emendations recorded in the accompanying Notes. Emendations have been made where sense requires and where metrical changes are needed to avoid clearly defective lines. Final -e has been added as needed for meter, most notably in forms like *myght*, *herr*, and *gret*, which are spelled inconsistently. A MS form like *ageyns* is emended to *ageynes*, particularly at the beginning of a line. Obvious spelling errors have been corrected. In accordance with the conventions of the TEAMS series, the letters *if* and *u/v* have been normalized. Thorn has been transcribed as *th*, yogh as *y* or *g* or *gh*, and the scribal ampersand as *and*. Unless spelled *ee* (e.g., *secree* 1.2001), the accented final -e is printed *é*, as in *pité*. Double consonants at the beginning of a line have been treated as capitals, so, for example, MS *ffal* appears as *Ful*. Suspension marks and common abbreviations have been silently expanded. Capitalization and word division are editorial. The noun *nothing*, for example, is distinguished from the adverbial form *no thing* (not at all, in no way). Punctuation follows modern practice, but there are points where the complications of Lydgate's syntax make any effort to show the structure of subordination among clauses, phrases, and parenthetical expressions only approximate.

Every reader of *Troy Book* owes a debt to Henry Bergen, and any later editor's debt must be greater still. As the Notes make clear, I have relied frequently on his suggestions for final -e and for additions needed for sense and meter. My editorial practice is somewhat more conservative, however, in retaining substantival readings from the base manuscript. I preserve some wording that Bergen would change and phrasings that he would transpose. MS forms of the past participles *avenget* (1.4255), *counselir* (4.6739), *defoulir* (2.545), *flickerit* (3.4179), *forger* (1.3218, 2.2508, 4.6938), and *plounges* (5.3551) are allowed to stand, as are a number of idiomatic constructions attested in Chaucer and the *Middle English Dictionary*. In some places I read the MS differently from Bergen and in others follow the MS order where Bergen transposes lines. Bergen proposes a number of metrical emendations at points where I have chosen to let the Lydgate lines stand. My punctuation of the text is somewhat lighter than Bergen's Victorian punctuation; on occasion, the structure of Lydgate's long parallel clauses is broken into shorter sentences as an aid to reading and comprehension.

Introduction

Select Bibliography

Manuscripts

Bristol, City Reference Library, MS 8.

Cambridge, Trinity College, MS O.5.2.

Cambridge, University Library, MS Kk.5.30.

Cambridge, Massachusetts, Houghton Library, Harvard University, MS Eng.752 (formerly Harvard-Ashburnham MS).

Geneva, Fondation Martin Bodmer, MS Bodmer 110 (formerly Phillips 3113).

Gloucester, Cathedral Library, MS 5.

London, British Library, MS Arundel 99.

London, British Library, MS Cotton Augustus A.iv.

London, British Library, MS Royal 18.D.ii.

London, British Library, MS Royal 18.D.vi.

London, Inner Temple Library, MS Petty 524 (fragment).

Manchester, John Rylands Library, MS English 1.

New York, Pierpont Morgan Library, MS M.876 (formerly Helmingham Hall and Tollemache MS).

Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Digby 230.

Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Digby 232.

Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Douce 148.

Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Rawlinson C.446.

Troy Book

- Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Digby 232.
- Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Douce 148.
- Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Rawlinson C.446.
- Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Rawlinson D.913 (fragment).
- Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Rawlinson poet. 144.
- Oxford, Bodleian Library, MS Rawlinson poet. 223 (fragment).
- Oxford, Christ Church Library, MS 153 (fragment).
- Oxford, Exeter College, MS 129.
- Oxford, St. John's College, MS 6.

Editions

Bergen, Henry, ed. *Lydgate's Troy Book*. 4 vols. Early English Text Society, o.s. 97, 103, 106, 126. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co. and Oxford University Press for the Early English Text Society, 1906–35.

Neilson, W. A., and K. G. T. Webster, eds. *The Chief British Poets of the Fourteenth and Fifteenth Centuries: Selected Poems*. Boston: The Riverside Press / Houghton Mifflin Co., 1916. [Troy Book 2.479–768.]

Norton-Smith, John, ed. *John Lydgate: Poems*. Clarendon Medieval and Tudor Series. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1966. [Troy Book 2.479–551, 565–72, 578–631, 638–41, 651–67, 681–92, 695–710.]

Steiner, George, ed. *Homer in English*. New York: Penguin, 1996. [Troy Book Pro. 145–75, 2.7852–75, 3.5423–74, 4.7058–7108.]

Introduction

Other Sources

Benoit de Sainte-Maure. *Roman de Troie*. Ed. Leopold Constant. Société des anciens textes français. 6 vols. Paris: Firmin-Didot, 1904-12.

—. *Chaucer's Boccaccio: Sources of "Troilus" and the "Knight's" and "Franklin's Tales."* Trans. N. R. Havelock. Chaucer Studies 3. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 1980. Pp. 167-80, 213-14. [Excerpts from *Le Roman de Troie*.]

Brie, Friedrich. "Zwei mittelenglische Prosaromane: The Sege of Thebes und The Sege of Troy." *Archiv für das Studium der neueren Sprachen und Literaturen* 130 (1913). 40-52, 269-85.

Chaucer, Geoffrey. *The Riverside Chaucer*. Gen. ed. Larry D. Benson. Third ed. Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 1987.

Colonne, Guido delle. *Historia destructionis Troiae*. Ed. Nathaniel Griffin. Medieval Academy of America Publications 26. Cambridge, Mass.: Medieval Academy of America, 1936.

—. *The History of the Destruction of Troy*. Trans. Mary Elizabeth Meek. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1974.

Dares Phrygius. *De excidio Troise historia*. Ed. Ferdinand Meister. Leipzig: Teubner, 1873, 1991.

Dictys Cretensis. *Ephemeridos bellum Trojani*. Ed. Werner Eisenhut. Leipzig: Teubner, 1973.

Frazer, Richard M., Jr., trans. *The Trojan War: The Chronicles of Dictys of Crete and Dares the Phrygian*. Bloomington: Indiana University Press, 1966.

The "Gest Hystoriale" of the Destruction of Troy. Ed. G. A. Panton and D. Donaldson. Early English Text Society, o.s. 39 and 56. London: John Childs and Son, 1869 and 1874; rpt. in one vol. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1968.

Joseph of Exeter. *The Iliad of Dares Phrygius*. Trans. Gildas O. Roberts. Ph.D. Diss. The Ohio State University, 1966. Cape Town: A. A. Balkema, 1970.

Troy Book

—. *Frigii Daretis Ylias: De bello Troiano*. In *Werke und Briefe von Joseph Isidorus*. Ed. Ludwig Gompf. Leiden: Brill, 1970.

The Laud Troy Book. Ed. J. E. Wulffing. Early English Text Society, o.s. 121 and 122. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1902-03.

Bibliographical Sources

Edwards, A. S. G. "Additions and Corrections to the Bibliography of John Lydgate." *Notes and Queries* ns 32 [230] (1985), 450-52.

—. "A Lydgate Bibliography, 1926-68." *Bulletin of Bibliography and Magazine Notes* 27.4 (1970), 95-98.

—. "Lydgate Scholarship: Progress and Prospects." In *Fifteenth-Century Studies: Recent Essays*. Ed. Robert F. Yeager. Hamden, Conn.: Archon Books, 1984. Pp. 29-47.

Lee, Sidney. "Lydgate." In *Dictionary of National Biography*. Ed. Sir Leslie Stephen and Sir Sidney Lee. London: Oxford University Press, 1921-22. Pp. 306-16.

Reimer, Stephen R. "The Lydgate Canon: A Project Description." *Literary and Linguistic Computing* 5 (1990), 248-49.

Renoir, Alain, and C. David Benson. "John Lydgate." In *A Manual of the Writings in Middle English, 1050-1500*. Ed. J. Burke Severs and rev. Albert E. Hartung. 9 vols. New Haven: Connecticut Academy of Arts and Sciences, 1967-. 6: 1809-1920, 2071-2175.

Rice, Joanne A. *Middle English Romance: An Annotated Bibliography, 1955-1985*. New York: Garland, 1987. Pp. 153-60, 533-36.

Ward, H. L. D., and J. A. Herbert. *Catalogue of Romances in the Department of Manuscripts in the British Museum*. 3 vols. London: British Museum, 1883-1910.

Selected Criticism and Scholarship

Alexander, Jonathan. "William Abell 'lymnour' and 15th Century English Illumination." In *Kunsthistorische Forschungen Otto Pächt zu seinem 70. Geburtstag*. Ed. Artur Rosenauer and Gerold Weber. Salzburg: Residenz Verlag, 1972. Pp. 166-72.

Introduction

- Ambrisco, Alan S., and Paul Strohm. "Succession and Sovereignty in Lydgate's Prologue to *Troy Book*." *Chaucer Review* 30 (1995-96), 40-57.
- Atwood, E. Bagby. "Some Minor Sources of Lydgate's *Troy Book*." *Studies in Philology* 35 (1938), 25-42.
- Ayers, Robert W. "Medieval History, Moral Purpose and the Structure of Lydgate's *Siege of Thebes*." *PMLA* 73 (1958), 463-74.
- Benson, C. David. "The Ancient World in John Lydgate's *Troy Book*." *American Benedictine Review* 24 (1973), 299-312.
- _____. "Chaucer's Influence on the Prose *Siege of Troy*." *Notes and Queries* ns 18 [216] (1971), 127-30.
- _____. "Critic and Poet: What Lydgate and Henryson Did to Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde*." *Modern Language Quarterly* 53 (1992), 23-40.
- _____. *The History of Troy in Middle English Literature: Guido delle Colonne's 'Historia Destructionis Troiae' in Medieval England*. Woodbridge, Suffolk: D. S. Brewer; Totowa, N. J.: Rowman and Littlefield, 1980.
- _____. "Prudence, Othea, and Lydgate's Death of Hector." *American Benedictine Review* 26 (1975), 115-23.
- Boffey, Julia. "The Reputation and Circulation of Chaucer's Lyrics in the Fifteenth Century." *Chaucer Review* 28 (1993), 23-40.
- Bornstein, Dean. "Chivalric Idealism in Lydgate's *Troy Book*." *The Lydgate Newsletter* 1 (1972), 8-13.
- Buuren-Veenenbos, Catherine C. van. "Notes and News: John Asloan, an Edinburgh Scribe." *English Studies* 47 (1966), 365-72.
- Doyle, A. I. "Book Production by the Monastic Orders in England (c. 1375-1530): Assessing the Evidence." In *Medieval Book Production: Assessing the Evidence*. Ed. Linda L. Brownrigg. Los Altos Hills, Calif.: Anderson-Lovelace / The Red Gull Press, 1990. Pp. 1-19.

Troy Book

- and M. B. Parkes. "The Production of Copies of the *Canterbury Tales* and the *Confessio Amantis* in the Early Fifteenth Century." In *Medieval Scribes, Manuscripts and Libraries: Essays Presented to N. R. Ker*. Ed. M. B. Parkes and Andrew G. Watson. London: Scolar Press, 1978. Pp. 163–210.
- Dwyer, R. A. "Some Readers of John Trevisa." *Notes and Queries* ns 14 [212] (1965), 291–92.
- Ebin, Lois. "Chaucer, Lydgate, and the 'Myrie Tale.'" *Chaucer Review* 13 (1978–79), 316–36.
- . *John Lydgate*. Twayne English Authors Series 407. Boston: Twayne, 1985.
- Edwards, A. S. G. "Lydgate Manuscripts: Some Directions for Future Research." In *Manuscripts and Readers in Fifteenth-Century England: The Literary Implications of Manuscript Study*. Ed. Derek Pearsall. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 1981. Pp. 15–26.
- . "Lydgate's Attitudes to Women." *English Studies* 51 (1970), 436.
- . "An Unidentified Extract from Lydgate's *Troy Book*." *Notes and Queries* ns 36 [234] (1989), 307–08.
- and Carol M. Meale. "The Marketing of Printed Books in Late Medieval England." *The Library*, sixth series, 15 (1993), 95–124.
- Finlayson, John. "Guido de Columnis' *Historia destructionis Troiae*, the 'Gest Historial' of the Destruction of Troy, and Lydgate's *Troy Book*: Translation and the Design of History." *Anglia* 113 (1995), 141–62.
- Fisher, John H. *The Importance of Chaucer*. Carbondale: Southern Illinois University Press, 1992.
- . "A Language Policy for Lancastrian England." *PMLA* 107 (1992), 1168–80.
- Griffin, Nathaniel. See Colonne, Guido delle, above.
- Horstmann, Carl, ed. Barbour's des schottischen Nationaldichters Legenden Sammlung nebst den Fragmenten seines Trojanerkrieges zum ersten Mal herausgegeben und kritisch Bearbeitet. 2 vols. Heilbronn: Gebr. Henninger, 1881–82.

Introduction

- Kempe, Dorothy. "A Middle English Tale of Troy." *Englische Studien* 29 (1901), 1-26.
- Krochalis, Jeanne E. "The Books and Reading of Henry V and His Circle." *Chaucer Review* 23 (1988-89), 50-77.
- Lawton, Lesley. "The Illustration of Late Medieval Secular Texts, with Special Reference to Lydgate's 'Troy Book.'" In *Manuscripts and Readers in Fifteenth-Century England: The Literary Implications of Manuscript Study*. Ed. Derek Pearsall. Cambridge: D. S. Brewer, 1981. Pp. 41-69.
- Marquardt, W. F. "A Source for the Passage on the Origin of Chess in Lydgate's *Troy Book*." *Modern Language Notes* 64 (1949), 87-88.
- McIntosh, Angus. "Some Notes on the Language and Textual Transmission of the Scottish *Troy Book*." *Archivum Linguisticum* 10 (1979), 1-19.
- Meek, Mary Elizabeth. See Colonne, Guido delle, above.
- Mieszkowski, Gretchen. "The Reputation of Criseyde, 1155-1500." *Transactions of the Connecticut Academy of Arts and Sciences* 43 (1971), 71-153.
- Patterson, Lee. "Making Identities in Fifteenth-Century England: Henry V and John Lydgate." In *New Historical Literary Study: Essays on Reproducing Texts, Representing History*. Ed. Jeffrey N. Cox and Larry J. Reynolds. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1993. Pp. 69-107.
- Payne, Robert O. "Late Medieval Images and Self-Images of the Poet: Chaucer, Gower, Lydgate, Henryson, Dunbar." In *Vernacular Poetics in the Middle Ages*. Ed. Lois Ebin. Kalamazoo, Mich.: Medieval Institute Publications, 1984. Pp. 249-61.
- Pearsall, Derek. "Chaucer and Lydgate." In *Chaucer Traditions: Studies in Honour of Derek Brewer*. Ed. Ruth Morse and Barry Windeatt. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1990. Pp. 39-53.
- . "Hoccleve's *Regement of Princes*: The Poetics of Royal Self-Representation." *Speculum* 69 (1994), 386-410.
- . *John Lydgate*. Medieval Authors: Poets of the Later Middle Ages. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul; Charlottesville: University Press of Virginia, 1970.

Troy Book

- . "Notes on the Manuscript of *Generydes*." *The Library*, fifth series, 16 (1961), 205–10.
- Renoir, Alain. "Attitudes Toward Women in Lydgate's Poetry." *English Studies* 42 (1961), 1–14.
- . *The Poetry of John Lydgate*. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1967.
- Schick, Josef. *Lydgate's Temple of Glas*. Early English Text Society, o.s. 60. London: Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co., 1891.
- Schirmer, Walter F. *John Lydgate: A Study in the Culture of the XVth Century*. Trans. Ann E. Kepp. London: Methuen; Berkeley: University of California Press, 1961. English trans. of *John Lydgate: Ein Kulturbild aus dem 15. Jahrhundert*. Tübingen: Max Niemeyer, 1952.
- Scott, Kathleen L. *Later Gothic Manuscripts: 1390–1490*. 2 vols. Vol. 6 of *A Survey of Manuscripts Illuminated in the British Isles*. London: Harvey Miller, 1996.
- . "A Mid-Fifteenth-Century English Illuminating Shop and Its Customers." *Journal of the Warburg and Courtauld Institutes* 31 (1968), 170–96.
- Skeat, Walter W. "Flaskisable." *Notes and Queries*, seventh series, 12 (1891), 146.
- Spearing, A. C. *Medieval to Renaissance in English Poetry*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1985.
- Spriggs, Gereth M. "Unnoticed Bodleian Manuscripts, Illuminated by Herman Scheerre and His School." *Bodleian Library Record* 7 (1964), 193–203.
- Strohm, Paul. "Storie, Spelle, Geste, Romauunce, Tragedie: Generic Distinctions in the Middle English Troy Narratives." *Speculum* 46 (1971), 348–59.
- Studer, John. "History as Moral Instruction: John Lydgate's Record of *Troie Toan*." *Emporia State Research Studies* 19.1 (1970), 5–13, 22.
- Sundwall, McKay. "The Destruction of Troy, Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde*, and Lydgate's *Troy Book*." *Review of English Studies* ns 26 (1975), 313–17.
- Swithin, St. "Flaskisable." *Notes and Queries*, seventh series, 12 (1891), 215–16.

Introduction

Torti, Anna. "From 'History' to 'Tragedy': The Story of Troilus and Criseyde in Lydgate's *Troy Book* and Henryson's *Testament of Cresseid*." In *The European Tragedy of Troilus*. Ed. Piero Boitani. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1989. Pp. 171-97.

Walsh, Elizabeth R. S. C. J. "John Lydgate and the Proverbial Tiger." In *The Learned and the Lewed: Studies in Chaucer and Medieval Literature*. Ed. Larry D. Benson. Harvard English Studies 5. Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1974. Pp. 291-303.

Watson, Nicholas. "Outdoing Chaucer: Lydgate's *Troy Book* and Henryson's *Testament of Cresseid* as Comparative Imitations of *Troilus and Criseyde*." In *Shifts and Transpositions in Medieval Narrative: A Festschrift for Dr. Elspeth Kennedy*. Ed. Karen Pratt. Woodbridge, Suffolk: D. S. Brewer, 1994. Pp. 89-108.

Prologue

O Myghty Mars, that wyt thy sterne lyght	who
In armys hast the power and the myght	
And named art from est til occident	
The myghty lorde, the god armypotent,	omnipotent
5 That wyt schynng of thy stremes rede	rays of red light
By influence dost the brydel lede	
Of chevalry as sovereyn and patrown,	
Ful hoot and drye of complexion,	
Irows and wood and malemolyk	Angry and mad
10 And of nature brent and coleryk,	hot (burnt)
Of colour schewyng lyche the fyre glede,	like the burning coal
Whos feerce lokes ben as ful of drede	
As the levene that alyghteth lowe	lightning that strikes
Down by the skye from Iupiteris bowe	Jupiter's
15 (Thy stremes ben so passyng despitous,	spiteful
To loke upon, inly furious,	dreadfully angry
And causer art wyt thy fery bemys	cause; fiery
Of warre and stirf in many sondry rewmys),	war; realms
Whos lordschype is most in Caprycorn	
20 But in the Bole is thy power lorn	Taurus (the Bull); lost
And causer art of contek and of strif;	anger
Now for the love of Vulcanus wyf	Venus
Wyt whom whylom thou wer at meschef take,	once
So helpe me now, only for hyr sake,	
25 And for the love of thy Bellona	Mars's sister (goddess of war)
That wyt the dwellyngh byyownd Cirrea	you; beyond Cirra (near Delphi)
In Lebyelonde upon the sondes rede;	land of Libya; red sands
So be myn helpe in this grete nede	need
To do socour my stile to directe	stylas (writing instrument)
30 And of my penne the tracys to correcte	written words
Whyche bareyn is of aureat lycour	empty; golden fluid
But in thi grace I fynde som favour	Unless
For to conveye it wyt thyn influence,	

Troy Book

- That stumblieth ay for faute of eloquence
For to reherser or wriuen any word;
Now help, O Mars, that art of knyghteth lord
And hast of manhood the magnificencie.
And Othea, goddesse of prudence,
This wirke t'explyle that ye nat refuse
But maketh Clyo for to ben my muse
Wyth hir sastren that on Pernaso dwelle
In Cirrea by Elicon the welle,
Rennynge ful clere wyth stremys cristallyn
And callyd is the welle Caballyn
That sprang by touche of the Pegase.
And helpe also, O thou Calliope,
That were moder unto Orpheus
Whos dites wern so mellodyus
That the werbles of his resownyng harpe
Appese dyde the bitter Wyrdys scharpe
Bothe of Parchas and Furies infernal
And Cerberus so cruel founde at al;
He coyede also beste, foule, and tree.
Now of thy grace be helpyng unto me
And of thy golde dewe lat the lycour wete
My dulled brest that wyth thym hony swete
Sugrest tongis of rethorisyens
And maistresse art to musicyens;
Now be myn help t'enlumyne with this wisk
Whyche am beset with cloudis dyn and dirk
Of ygnoraunce, in makynge to procede,
To be lusty to hem that schal it rede.
Also in hert I am so ful of drede
Whan prudent lysters herto schal take hede,
That in makynge more skylle can than I,
To whom I preie ful benignely
Of her goodnesse to have compassion
Wher as I erre in my translacioun.
For God I take hyghly to wyttenesse
That I this wisk of hertly lowe humblesse
Toke upon me of entencion,
Devoyde of pride and presumpcioun.
- always for lack
write
(see note)
advance
Clio (*the muse of history*)
Syria; Helicon
Pegasus
Calliope (*muse of epic poetry*)
songs were
melodies
Fates
Re (*Orpheus*) calmed; beast
(You) sugar tongues
illuminate
how to proceed in composition
lively to them who
listeners
Who know more art in composition
weekly
their

Prologue

- For to obeie withoutte variaunce
 My lordes byddynge fully and plesaunce,
 Whiche hath desire, sothly for to seyn,
 Of verray knyghthod to remembre ageyn
 The worthyness, yif I schal nat lyce,
 And the prowesse of olde chivalrie
 By cause he hath joye and gret deynyté
 To rede in bokys of antiquité
 To fyn only vertu for to swē
 Be example of hem and also for to eschewe
 The cursyd vice of slouthe and ydelnesse.
 So he enjoyeth in vertuous besynesse
 In al that longeth to manhood, dar I seyn;
 He besyeth evere, and therio is so fayn
 To hawnte his body in pleies marcial
 Thorough exercisice t'exclude slouthe at al,
 After the doctrine of Vygecius:
 Thus is he bothe manful and vertuous,
 More passyngly than I can of hym write.
 I wante connynghis highe renoun t'endite,
 So moche of manhood men may in hym sen.
 And for to witen whom I wolde mene —
 The eldest sone of the noble Kyng
 Henri the Firthe, of knyghthood welle and spryng.
 In whom is schewed of what stok he grewe;
 The rotys vertu thus can the frute renewe;
 In every part the tarage is the same,
 Lyche his fader of maneris and of name,
 In sothefastnesse, this no tale is,
 Callid Henry ek, the worthy pryncipe of Walyis,
 To whom schal longe by successioun
 For to governe Brutys Albyoun,
 Whyche me comauaded the drery pitus fate
 Of hem of Troye in Englyshe to translate,
 The sege also, and the destruccioun,
 Lyche as the Latyn maketh mencioune,
 For to compyle and after Guydo make,
 So as I coude, and write it for his sake,
 By cause he wolde that to hyghe and lowe
- truly
that
refinement
For the purpose; pursue them
pertains to
He is active; eager
use; in warlike deeds
Vegetius
lack the skill; to commend
see
know whom I mean
Fourth
power of the stock
quality
Like
truthfulness; falsehood
also; Wales
gather; verify
wished

Troy Book

	The noble story openly wer knowe In oure tonge, aboute in every age, And ywritten as wel in oure langage	were known
115	As in Latyn and in Frensche it is, That of the story the trouthe we nat mys No more than doth eche other nacioun: This was the fyn of his entencioune.	goal undertaking at once; begin
120	The whyche emprise anoon I gynne schal In his worschip for a memorial. And of the tyme to make mencioune Whan I began of this translacioun,	historical record
125	It was the yere, sothely for to seyne, Fourtene complete of his fadris regne, The tyme of yere, achorly to conclude, Whan twenty grees was Phebus altitude,	truly degrees
	The hour whan he made his stedis drawe His rosen chariet lowe under the wawe To bathe his bemyss in the wavy see,	waves
130	Tressed lyche gold, as men myghte see, Passyng the bordure of oure occian; And Lucyne, of colour pale and wan Hir cold arysyng in Octobre gan to dyght;	beams; wavy sea ocean
	T'enchace the darknesse of the frosty nyght In the myddes of the Scorpion;	the moon
135	And Esperus gan to wester doune To haste hir cours ageyn the morwe graye; And Lucifer, the nyght to voyde awaye, Is callyd than, messanger of day,	to set in the west the morning star
140	Our emysperye to put out of affraye Wyth bright kalendis of Phebus uprynt schene Out of the boundis Prosespina the Quene Wher Pluto dwelleth, the dirke regioun,	then hemisphere; alarm
	And the Furies have her mansioune;	harbingers; rising brightly
145	Til after sone Appollo lyst nat tarie To take sojour in the Sagittarie. Whyche tyme I gan the prolog to beholde Of <i>Troye Boke</i> , imade be dayes olde,	territory of their soon; it pleases
150	Wher was remembred of austours us beforne Of the dede the verreie trewe corn	true grain

Prologue

- So as it fil severid from the chaf,
 For in her honde they hilde for a staf
 The trouthe only, whyche thei han compyled
 Unto this fyn — that we wer nat begyled
 155 Of negligenc thorugh forgetilnesse.
 The whiche serpent of age by processe
 Engendred is fersly us t'assaille,
 Of the trouthe to make us for to faille;
 For nere writers, al wer out of mynde,
 160 Nat story only but of nature and kynde
 The trewe knowyng schulde have gon to wrak
 And from science oure wittes put abak,
 Ne hadde oure elderis cerched out and sought
 The sothefast pyth, to ympe it in oure thought
 165 Of thinges passed, fordirked of her hewe
 But thorugh writyng thei be refresched newe,
 Of oure auncetrys left to us byhynde
 To make a merour only to oure mynde
 To seen eche thing trewly as it was,
 170 More bryght and clere than in any glas.
 For ner her writyng nowe memorial,
 Dethe with his swerde schulde have slayen al
 And ydymmed with his sodeyn schoures
 The grete prowes of thise conquerouris
 175 And disked eke the brightnessse of her fame
 That schyneth yet by report of her name;
 For unto us her bokes represens
 Withoute feynynge the wele that thei went
 In her daies, whan thei wer alvye.
 180 Ageyn the trouthe whoso evere stryve
 Or counterplete or make any debate,
 The sothe is rad of highe or lowe estate
 Withoute favour, whoso list take hede.
 For after deith clerkis lityl drede
 185 After desert for to bere witnessac
 Nor of a tyraunt the trouthe to expresse,
 As men disservie withoute excepcion;
 With lak or prys thei graunt hem her guerdoun.
 Wherfore me semeth every maner man
- fell out
their hands; held
- end; deceived
forgetfulness
- if there were no
nature
destruction
- searched
the substance of truth; implant
- darkened
Unless
- were not their
- darkened; showers
- also; reparation
- argue against; dissension
- truth
- wishes
- worth
- have a rightful claim
value; them their reward

Troy Book

- 190 Schulde be his live in al that ever he can
For vertu only eschewe to don amys,
For after deth, pleynly as it is,
Clerkis wil write, and exceptie noon, leave out
The pleyne trouthe whan a man is goon.
- 195 And by olde tyme for her writing trew
Thei cherished werne of lordes that hem knewe
And honoured gretly in tho dawes;
For they enacted and gilde with her sawes were valued by
those days
Her hyghe renoun, her manhood and prowes.
200 Her knyghthood eke and her worthynes,
Her tryumphes also and victories,
Her famous conquest and her songe glories;
From poynt to poynt rebessyng al the trouthe
Withoutte fraude, negligence, or slowthe also
205 Thei dide her labour and her besynesse,
For elles certeyn the grete worthynesse sloth
Of her dedis hadde ben in veyn;
Fordirked age elles wolde have slain
By leathe of yeris the noble worthi fame otherwise
210 Of conquerours and pleynly of her name
Fordymmed eke the lettris aureat, would have been
And diffaced the palme laureat
Whiche that thei was by knyghthod in her dayes, Darkened; otherwise
Whos fretyng rust newe and newe assayes length
215 For to eclipse the honour and the glorie
Of highe prowes whiche clerkis in memorie ornamentation runt again; attacks
Han trewly set thorough diligent labour
And enlumyned with many corious flour
Of rethorik, to make us comprehendre elaborate
- 220 The trouth of al, as it was in kende;
Besid hem, and feythfully travayld
Agayn al that that age wolde assayled,
In her bokes everythyng iset, nature
And with the keye of remembraunce it schet, Busted themselves; worked
225 Whiche lasteth yet and dureth ever in oon. diminish
Recordre of Thebes that was so long agoon.
Of whiche the ruyne and distruccioune endures
Ye may beholde by gode inspeccioune. Remember
rain

Prologue

	Crop and rote, right as it was indede;	Branch and root (<i>i.e.</i> , the whole thing)
230	On Stace loketh, and ther ye may it rede:	<i>Status</i>
	How Polynece and Ethiocles,	<i>Oedipus's sons Polynices and Etiocles</i>
	The brether two, ne kowde nat lyve in pees	<i>peace</i>
	Til Thebes was brought unto rayne,	
	And al the maner how thei dide fyne,	<i>died</i>
235	The deth also of worthi Tydeus;	
	And how Edippus with teris ful pytous	<i>Oedipus</i>
	Wepte oute his eyne and al his drery peyen;	<i>eyes; pain</i>
	And how the smokys departid wer in tweyen	<i>two</i>
	At the fest of fires funeral.	
240	In grete Stace ye may reden al:	
	The fyre engendered by brotherly harrede,	<i>Through which; reward</i>
	Wherborugh that deth was the cruel mede	<i>full truth</i>
	In verray sothe of many worthi man	
	Lyche as myn auctor wel reherse can;	
245	Of Troye also that was of latter yeres,	<i>chroniclers</i>
	By dillygence of cronyceris	
	Ye may beholde in her wrytyng wel	
	The stryfe, the warre, the sege, and everydel,	
	Ryghte as it was, so many yeres passyd.	<i>so long ago</i>
250	Whos story yit age hath nouȝt diffaced,	<i>marred</i>
	Nor cruel deth with his mortal strokys;	
	For maugre deth, ye may beholde in bokys	<i>despite</i>
	The story fully rehersed new and newe	<i>again and again</i>
	And freschely floare of colour and of hewe	
255	From day to day, quyk and no thyngh feynt.	<i>alive; not at all invented</i>
	For clerkys han this story so depeynt	<i>portrayed</i>
	That deth nor age by no maner weye	
	The trouthe may not maken for to deye,	<i>die</i>
	Albe that somme han the trouthe spared	<i>Although</i>
260	In her wrytyng and pleymly not declared	
	So as it was nor tolde our feithfully	
	But it transformed in her poussy	<i>poetry</i>
	Thorough veyn fables, whiche of entencious	<i>empty</i>
	They han contrevied by false transumpcion	<i>transferring materials</i>
265	To hyde trouthe falsely under cloude,	
	And the sothe of malys for to schroude,	<i>desire to injure; cloak</i>
	As Omer dide, the whiche in his wrytyng	<i>Homer</i>

Troy Book

	Iseynd hathe ful many divers thyng That never was, as Guydo lyst devise, And thingys done in another wyse He hathe transformed than the trouthe was And feyned falsly that goddis in this caas The worthi Grekis holpen to werreye Ageyn Troyens, and howe that thei wer seye Lyche lyfly men amoneg hem day by day. And in his dites that wer so fresche and gay With sugred wordes under hony soote His galle is hidde lowe by the rose, That it may nought outewarde ben espied.	Fabricated chose to explain wage war seen bring them writings sweet bitterness; deeply hidden since
270	And al for he with Grekis was allied, Therfor he was to hem favourable In myche thing, whiche is nought commendable Of hem that lyst to demen after ryght: For in makynge, love hath lost his syght,	them who wish to judge composing; blinded him ascibe worth whose judgments follow
275	To yeve a pris wher noon is disserved. Cupide is blynde, whos domys ben observyd More after lust than after equite Or after resoun, how the trouthe be. For singulerly and false affeccioun	what the truth is
280	Reyseth ful ofte by veyne lausioun A man to worship that disserveth noon, By false reporte; and thus ful many oon Withoute merit hath his fame blowe,	praise honor who
285	Wher of another the renoun is unknowe, That in armys hath meruelles wrought:	trumpeted unknown
290	Of whom paraunter speketh no man nought; For favour only is fostered more than ryght, That hyndered hath many worthi knyght. Ovide also poetycally hath closyd	perhaps
295	Falshede with trouthe, that maketh men enoosed To whiche partie that thei schal hem holde;	clothed confused
300	His mysty speche so hard is to unfold That it entriketh redaris that it se.	ensnares
305	Virgile also for love of Eneas In Enydot rehersyth moche thyng And was in party trewe of his writyng.	Aeneas <i>Aeneid</i>

Prologue

- Exepte only that hym lyst som whyle
The tracys folwe of Omeris stile.
And of this sege wrot eke Lollius.
traces (ideas)
- 310 But toforn alle Dares Frigius
Wrot moste trewly after that he fonde,
And Dytis eke of the Grekys lond.
before
according to what
Dytis also
saw everything
as it happened
- They were present and seyen everydel,
And as it fel they write trewt and wel,
315 Eche in his tonge by swyche consonaunce
That in her bokys was no variaunce,
Whiche after wern unso Athenes brought
And by processe serched oute and sought
with such agreement
- By dillygence of oon Cornelius
320 Whyche was nevewe unto Salustius,
Of Rome yborn, whiche dide his dever dewe
Hem to translate and the tracys sewe
Of thise auctours by good avisement.
their
- proper obligation
follow the written words
consideration
- But bycause he sette al his entent
325 For to be brefe, he lefte moche behynde
Of the story, as men in bokys fynde —
The firste mevyng and cause original
What was the gynnyng and rote in special;
Which was the beginning; source
- Ne how thei come by lond or by navie;
ship
- 330 How firste the sparke was kyndeled of envie
Atwyse Grekis and hem of Troye town,
Of whiche Cornelye maketh no mencionoun,
Or her schippes nor of her vitaille;
Between
- Nor how that Grece is called Gret Ytaille
food
- 335 And the lasse, as bokys verrefye,
Is named now the londe of Romanye;
confirm
land of Italy
- What noumber of kynges and of dukes went
Towarde the sege, al of oon assent,
To wynne worship and for excersise
340 Of armys only in ful knyghtly wyse,
Abydyng there to sen the versioun
Overthrow
Of the cité and noble Ylyoun;
- Nor what the maner was of her armure;
the citadel of noble Iliam (Troy)
- Nor at the sege who lengest dide endure;
345 In what wyse eche other dide assaile;

Troy Book

- Nor how often thei metten in bataille;
How mony worthi loate ther his lyf *many a worthy man*
Thorough olde hatrede wrought up with newe strif;
Nor of her dethe he dateth nat the yere, *death*
350 For his writyng was particular;
Withoute fruse he was compendious,
This forseyde Romeyne, this Cornelius. *incomplete*
Wherfore but late in comparisoun
Ther was an auctour of ful highe renoun
355 That besid hym the tracys for to swe
Of Dite and Dares, and cast hym nat transmwe
In al the story a worde as in sentence
But folweth hem by swyche convenience
That in effecte the substaunce is the same;
360 And of Columpna Guydo was his name,
Whiche had in writyng passyng excellencye.
For he enlumyneth by crafte and cadence
This noble story with many fresche colour
Of rethorik, and many riche flour
365 Of eloquence to make it sownde bet
He in the story hathe ymped in and set,
That in good feythe I trowe he hath no pere,
To rekne alle that write of this matere,
As in his boke ye may byholde and se.
370 To whom I seie, knelyng on my knee:
Laude and honour and excellencye of fame,
O Guydo maister, be unto thi name
That excelllest by sovereinté of stile
Alle that writen this mater to compile.
375 Whom I schal folwe as nyghe as ever I may
That God me graunt it be unto the pay
Of hym for whom I have undertake
So as I can this story for to make,
Preyng to alle that schal it rede or se *compose in verse*
380 Wher as I erre for to amenden me,
Of humble herte and lowe entencioune
Commytyng al to her correccioune,
And therof thanke; my wille is that thei wynne
For thorough her support thus I wil begynne. *meek*
 prosper

Book I

	In the regne and lond of Thesalye, The whiche is now ynamed Salonye.	Thessaly Salonica
	Ther was a kyng callyd Peleus, Wys and discrete and also vertuous.	Peleus
5	The whiche, as Guydo lyst to speefie, Held the lordashipe and the regallye Of this yle as governour and kyng. Of whiche the pepil, by record of writyng. Myrmidones were called in tho dawes,	chose kingship island <i>those</i>
10	Of whom Ovyde feyneth in his sawes, <i>Methamorphoseos</i> , where as ye may rede How this peple sothfastly in dede, So as myn auctor maketh mencioune, Were brought echon to destrucioun	Ovid invents in his tales truly <i>each one</i>
15	With sodeyn tempest and with fery levene By the goddyns sent down from the hevene; For they of ire, withoute more offence, With the swerde and stroke of pestilence On this yle whylom toke vengaunce,	sudden storms; bright flames gods wrath <i>once</i>
20	Lyche as it is putte in remembraunce. For this peple distroyed were sercyn With thonder deant and with hael and reyn Ful unwarly, as Guydo list discryve; For ther was noon of hem lefte alve	Just certainly thunderbolt; hail <i>unexpectedly; chose to describe</i>
25	In al the lond that the violence Escape myghte of this pestilence. Excepte the kyng, the whiche went allone Into a wode for to make his moane Sool by hymselfe, al disconsolate,	who forest; complaint Alone
30	In a place that stood al desolat. Wher this kyng, roomyng to and fro, Compleynynge ay of his fatal woo And the harmys that he dide endure —	deserted <i>Lamenting</i>

Troy Book

35	Til at the laste, of caas or aventure, Besyde an holt he sawe wher stode a tre Of ful gret heght and large of quantite, Holwe by the rote, as he kowde knowe, Where as he sawe by the erthe lowe Of amptis crepe passyng gret plentie,	by chance wood size <i>Hollow</i>
40	With whiche sygthe he felle down on his kne And made his preyer in his paynym wyse To the goddes with humble sacrificys Upon his wo and gret adversite Only of mercy for to have pyne,	<i>A large number of ants creeping</i> <i>pagan manner</i>
45	To turne thise amptis into forme of man. Thus gan he praye with colour pale and wan His lond t'enhabite whiche stondeth disolat, And he alone, awaped and amast, Conforlles of any creature,	antr
50	Hym to releve of that he dide endure. And as Ovide maketh mencioune, That Jubiter herde his orisoun And hath swiche rowth on hym at the laste That he anoon fulfilled his requeste,	<i>Jupiter; prayer</i> <i>pity</i> <i>immediately</i> <i>with his power</i>
55	And of his myghte, whiche that is devine, His grace he made from hevene for to schyne Benyngnely unto the erthe doun, That a sodeyn transmutacion Was made of amptis to forme of men anon.	
60	Whiche on her feet gonne streight to goon To Thesalye and salute ther the kyng And lyche his liges token her dwellynge Withinne a cite called tho Egee, As in Ovide ye may beholde and see.	begin salute vassals; their residence <i>Aigion</i>
65	The whiche peple for her worthines, For her strenthe and grete hardynes Myrmidores so longe have boor the name (As in the lyfe ye reden may the same Of Seynt Mathewe, how thei be called soo,	prowess <i>bore</i>
70	Where the apostel so mochel hadde adoo) Whiche for wisdom and prudent adverstence, Besy labour and wilful diligence,	<i>St. Mathew</i> <i>attention to the future</i>

Book I

- By forseyng and discrecion,
As I suppose in myn opinoun,
That this fable of amptis was contrevē,
Whiche by her wysdam han so mycheachevid
Thorough her knyghthod, whoso list to loke,
Her manly dedis thoroughout *Troie Boke*.
In al meschef so wel thei han hem born
That thei ful wysly provided wern toforn
Or that it fil, bothe in warre and pees;
For of no slouthe thei wer nat rekeles,
But as the ampte t'eschewen ydelnesse
In somer is so ful of besynessee
Or wynter com, to saven hir fro colde
Sche toforne astored hath hir holde.
But in this mater I holde no sermoun,
I wil no longer make digressioune,
Nor in fables no more as now sojourne,
But there I lefte I wyl agayn retourne,
Of Pelleus ferther to procede.
Whiche kyng forsothe, in story as I rede
And as myn auctor lyseth to endyte,
Had a wif that called was Tedite;
Of whiche two, platly this no les,
The manly man, the hardy Achilles,
So as Guydo festeth to termyne,
Descended was, soothly as be lyne,
Most renomed of manhood and of myght
Amonges Grekis and the beste knyght
Iholde in sothe thoroughoute al her load,
In worthines preved of his hond.
Whos craulte Troiens sore abought
So passyng merveilles in armys ther he wrought
Duryng the sege, as ye schal after lere,
Paciently yif ye liste to here.
But Pelleus, that I spak of aforeme,
A brother hadde of o moder born
That hyghte Eson, so fer yronne in yeris,
That he of luste hath lost al his desyris,
So fer he was ycropen into age
- foresight
invented
their
Through
misfortune
were before
*Before it happened; war; peace
they were not negligent for laziness
and to avoid*
Before
beforehand has provided for her nest
maly
*is pleased to compose
who; Thetis
plainly this is no lie*
wishes to declare
by lineage
Regarded in truth
great; performed
*siege (of Troy); learn
if you wish
whom; before
one*
*was named Aeson; grown old
pleasure
had crept*

Troy Book

	That al his witte was turned to dotage;	<i>mind; feebleness</i>
	For bothe mynde and memorial	<i>memory</i>
	Fordulled wern and dirked so at al	<i>Were dailed and clouded</i>
115	That verrailly his discrecion	
	Was hym biraft, in conclusioune.	<i>taken from him</i>
	Wherfor the regne and lond of Thesalye,	
	Croune and septe with al the regalye,	<i>Crown</i>
	He hath resygned his brother for to queme,	<i>please</i>
120	Estate royal and also diademe:	
	Bycause he was crooked, lame, and blynde	
	And to governe losie bothe wit and mynde,	
	So febled was his celle retentif	<i>memory</i>
	And fordirked his ymagnatif	<i>darkened; faculty of imagination</i>
125	That lost were bothe memorie and reson;	
	For whiche he made a resygnacion	
	To his brother, next heyr by degré	<i>heir by descent</i>
	And next allye of his affinité.	<i>relation</i>
	But as somme auctours in her bokys seym,	
130	To youthe he was restored new ageyn	
	By crafte of Medee, the gret sorceresse,	<i>Medea</i>
	And renewed to his lastynesse;	<i>liveliness</i>
	For with hyr herbes and hir pocions,	<i>potions</i>
	Sotyl wrychynge of confeccions,	<i>drugs</i>
135	By quentyse eke of hir instrumentys,	<i>noble craft</i>
	With hir charmys and hir enchauntements,	<i>spells</i>
	Sche made a drynke, in bokys as is tolde,	
	In whiche a yerde that was drye and olde	
	Withoute abod anoon as she it caste	<i>branch</i>
140	To blosme and budde it began as faste,	<i>Immediately as soon as</i>
	Turne grene and fresche for to beholde.	
	And thorough this drinke sche hath fro yeris olde	
	Eson restored unto lusty age	
	And was of witte and reson eke as sage	<i>wise</i>
145	As ever he had his lyve ben afor.	
	The whiche Eson of his wylfe yborn	
	Hadde a son, and Jason was his name,	
	In wryk of whom Nature nas to blame;	<i>was not</i>
	For sche hir crafte plately and konnyng	<i>skill plainly; shrewdly</i>
150	Spent upon hym hooly in wirkynge.	<i>wholly</i>

Book I

	Whan sche hym made with herte, wil, and thought, That of hir crafte behynde was ryght sought.	nothing was omitted
	To rekne his schap and also his faynes, His strenthe, his bewtē, and his lyflynes.	
155	His gentilles and wyse governaunce. How large he was, and of dalliaunce The moste goodly that men koude knowe, In al his port bothe to hyghe and lowe,	speech
	And with al this avise and tretable —	behavior prudent
160	That of konnyng God wot I am nat able For to discreye his vertues by and by. For as myn auctor telleth feithfully, He was beloved so of old and yonge	make known
	That thorugh the londe is his honour sponge;	
165	But for that he was but yonge and sklender, Of age also inly grene and tender, He was committed to the governaille Of Pelleus, to whom withoute faille	because; tender extremely governance
	In everythyng he was as servisable,	
170	As diligent in chambre and at table, As evere was any childe or man Unto his lorde, in all that ever he can Devise in herte of feithful obeyshaunce;	
	So that in chere nor in countenaunce,	Will; obedience expression
175	Inwarde in herte nor outwarde in schewyng, To his uncle ne was he nat grucchyng: Albe he had holly in his hande	
	The worthi kyngdam and the riche lande	wholly
	Of this Jason and the eritage.	
180	Only for he was to yonge of age.	because
	Unto whom Pelleus dide his peyne Agynes herte falsely for to feyne, To schewen other than he mente in herte,	dissemble
	And kepte hym cloos that nothing hym asterte,	kept strictly silent; escape
185	Lyche an addre under flouris fayre, For to his herte his tonge was contrarie: Benyngne of speche, of memyng a serpente,	
	For under colour was the tresoun blente	
	To schewe hym goodly unto his allye;	concealed

Troy Book

- 190 But inwardly brent of hate and of envie
The boote fyre, and yit ther was no smoke,
So covertly the malys was yreke,
That no man myght as by sygnes espie
Toward Jason in herie he bare envie.
smoke
hidden
discover
- 195 And merveil noon, for hit was causeles,
Save he dradde that he for his encres
And for his manhood likly was t'ateyme
For to succede in his faders reigne,
Whiche Pelleus unjustly occupieth;
let no one wonder
gain
reach
- 200 And day be day cast and fantasieth
How his venym may be som pursute
Upon Jason be fully execute.
Heron he museth every hour and tyme,
As he that dradde to sen an hasty pryme
by; assault
- 205 Folowen a chaunge, as it is wont to done,
Sodeynly after a newe moone;
He caste weyes and compasseth sore,
And under colour alwey more and more
His felle malys he gan to close and hide.
ponders
see; an early season
counsives
- 210 Lyche a snake that is wont to glyde
With his venym under fresche floures;
And as the sonne is hoot afore thise schoures.
So of envie hattere bran the glede.
Upon a tyme he sought to procede
before
hotter burned the coal
- 215 To execute his menyng everydel,
In porce a lambe, in herie a lyoun fel.
Dowble as a tygre slightly to compasse,
Galle in his breste and sugre in his face,
That no man hath to hym suspecious,
wholly
demeanor; cruel
canningly contriving
- 220 Howe he purveieth the destruccioum
Of his nevewe and that withinne a whyle,
Pretendyng love, albe the fyn was gyle.
His malys was ischette so under keye
That his entent can no man bewreye;
plans
- 225 It was concealed and closed in secrete,
Under the lok of pryve enmyte,
And that in soth greved hym the more:
Upon hymself the anger frat so sore.
even though; aim; guile
locked
reveal
personal
tormented so deeply

Book I

- Abydyng ay til unto his entent
 230 He fynde may leyser convenient
 Upon his purpos platly to procede
 For to parfome it fully up in dede.
 Wherof Jason hath ful lytel rought —
 His uncle and he wer not in o thought —
 235 Of whos menyng was no convenience,
 For malys was coupled with innocence;
 And grownde of al, as I can divise,
 Was the ethik of false covetise,
 Whiche fret so sore falsly for to wynne,
 240 As crop and rote of every sorowe and synne,
 And cause hath ben, sythen goo ful yore,
 That many a rewme hath abought ful sore
 The dredful venym of covetyse, alias!
 Lat hem be war that stonden in this caas
 245 To thinke aforne and for to have in mynde
 That al falshed draweth to an ende:
 For thoughit bide and last a yer or two,
 The ende in soth schal be sorwe and wo
 Of alle that ben false and envious.

[Peleus learns of a ram with golden fleece in the kingdom of Colchos, which is ruled by Cethes (Aetes). The ram is protected by wild bulls, a serpent, and men who spring from the serpent's teeth and fight one another when the teeth are sown in the ground. Anyone trying to win the fleece has to survive all these tests. Peleus schemes to have Jason undertake the adventure, and at a council he flatters him and then asks him to try to win the fleece. Not suspecting Peleus's treachery, Jason accepts the challenge and gathers his companions, among them Hercules who performed twelve labors. The heroes set out for Colchos but after a difficult passage land on the Trojan coast to rest (lines 250-722).]

- Whan Hercules and Jasoun on his hond
 Out of hir schip taken han the lond
 725 And with hem eke her knyghtes everychon
 That fro the see bea to londe goon,
 Forweried after her travaille;
 And thei in sothe come to arivalle
 At Symeonte, an havene of gret renoun,
 730 That was a lyte bysyde Troye town —

Troy Book

	And thei wer glad to ben in sikirnesse From storm and tempest after werynesse;	safety
	For thei ne ment tresoun, harm, nor gyle	fatigwe
	But on the strande to resten hem a while;	intended
735	To hynder no wyght, of no maner age.	shore
	Not in that ile for to do damage	injure; person
	To man or beste, wherewere that thei goo,	beast
	But for to abyde ther a day or two	rest
	Hem to refresche and repeire anoon	depart immediately
740	Whan that the rage of the see wer goon.	shore
	And whiles thei on the strande leye.	divert themselves
	Thei nothynge dide but disporte and playe	sweet
	And bathe and wasche hem in the fresche ryver	
	And drank watrys that were swote and clere,	
745	That sprange lyche cristal in the colde welle,	on sale (paid for)
	And toke right nought but it were to selle.	not at all
	It was no thing in her entencioune	person; offense
	Unto no wyghte to done offencioune,	aggrieve anyone
	For to moleste or greven ony wyght;	
750	But the ordre of Fortunys myght	<i>It always jealous</i>
	Hath evere envy that men lyve in ese,	<i>bastens unexpectedly to discomfort</i>
	Whos cours enhasteth unwarily to disease.	<i>God knows; with justification</i>
	For sche was cause, God wotte, causeles.	<i>fickle; imprudent</i>
755	This gery Fortune, this lady reccholes,	
	The blynde goddesse of transmutacione,	think
	To turne her whele by revolucione	harm
	To make Troyens unjustly for to wene	
	That Grekys werne arived hem to tene,	
	So that the cause of this suspicioone	
760	Hath many brought unto destruccione.	
	Ful many worthi of kynges and of princes	mentioned one after another
	Thorughoute the worlde, reckned in provinces,	
	Werne by this sclawader unto deth brought,	Were; false statement
	For thing, alias, that was never thought.	Because of something
765	For it was cause and occasioune	
	That this cité and this royal town	seen
	Distroied was, as it is pleynly fownde,	
	Whos walles highe wer bete down to grounde.	beaten
	And many man and many worthi knyghte	

Book I

- 770 Were slawe ther, and many lady bryghte
 Was wydowe made by duresse of this werre,
 As it is kouthe and reported ferre;
 And many mayde in grene and tender age
 Belefte wer soot in that grete rage.
 Behynd her fadris, alias, it falle schulde!
 And for nothing but that Fortune wolde
 Schewen her myght and her craulté,
 In vengaunce takyng upon this cité.
 Alias, that evere so worthi of estate
 Schulde for lytel fallen at debate!
 Whan it is gonue, it is not lyght to staunche:
 For of griffyn of a lytel braunche
 Ful sturdy trees growen up ful ofte;
 Who clymbeth hyghe may not falle softe;
 And of sparkys that ben of syghe smale
 Is fire engendered that devoureth al;
 And a quarel, first of lytel hate,
 Encauseth flawme of contek and debate
 And of envie to sprede abrod ful ferre.
 790 And thus, alias, in rewmys mortal werre
 Is first begonne, as men may rede and see,
 Of a sparke of lytel enmyté
 That was not staunchid first whan it is gonue.
 For whan the fyre is so fer yronne
 795 That it embraseth heris by hatrede
 To make hem brenne, hoot as any glede,
 On outher party thorough his cruel tene,
 Ther is no staunche but scharpe swerdys kene,
 The whiche, alias, consumeth al and sleth;
 800 And thus the fyne of enmyté is deth.
 Though the gynnyng be but casuel,
 The fret abydyng is passyng cruel
 To voide rewmys of rest, ples, and joye,
 As it fil whilom of this worthi Troye.
 805 It doth me wepe of this case sodeyne;
 For every wyght oughte to compleyne
 That lytel gytle schulde have swyche vengaunce,
 Except parcas thorough Goddis purvaunce
- severity; war
known; far and wide

alone
fathers
for no reason except

in strife
easy to stop
grafting
very often
land softly

Causes; discord and strife
very far
kingdoms deadly war

By
extinguished

encompasses
glede
either; malice
check
slays
end
circumstantial
continuing torment; exceedingly
empty
once
causes me to; unforeseen case

perhaps; God's foresight

Troy Book

		misfortune; afterwards have Outcome
810	That this mescheffe schulde after be Folwyng perchaunce of gret felicité. For Troye brought unto destruccioun Was the gynnyng and occasioun, In myn auctor as it is specified, That worthi Rome was after edefied	beginning
815	By the ospryng of worthi Eneas, Whilom fro Troye whan he exiled was. The whiche Rome, rede and ye may se, Of al the worlde was hed and chef cité For the passyng famous worthinessse.	built <i>Aeneas</i> <i>long ago</i>
820	And eke whan Troye was brought in distresse And the wallis cast and broke down, It was in cause that many regiou[n] Begonne was and many gret cité: For this Troyan, this manly man Enee,	also <i>for this reason</i>
825	By sondri sees gan so longe saille, Til of fortune he com into Ytaille And wan that lond, as booke tellen us; With whom was eke his sone Askanus, That after Enee next began succede	various <i>by: Italy</i> <i>conquered</i> <i>Ascanius</i> <i>Who</i>
830	The lond of Ytaille justly to possede; And after hym his sone Silvius. Of whom cam Brute, so passyngly famus; After whom, yif I schal nat feyne, Whilom this lond called was Breteyne.	possess <i>Breteux (founder of England)</i> <i>if: lie</i> <i>Britain</i> <i>giants</i>
835	For he of geaunrys thorough his manhood wan This noble yle and it first began. From Troye also with this ilk Enee Cam worthi Francus, a lord of highe degré Whiche upon Rone, t'encressen his renoun,	<i>some Aeneas</i>
840	Bilt in his tyme a ful royal toun. The whiche soothly, his honour to avaunce, After his name he made calle Fraunce; And thus began, as I understand, The name first of that worthi lond.	<i>the Rhone, to augment his fame</i>
845	And Anthenor, departyng from Troyens, Gan first the cité of Venycyens; And Sycanus withinne a lytel while	<i>Antenor</i> <i>the Venetians</i>

Book I

- Gan inhabite the land of Cecyle. Sicily
 And after partyng of this Sycanus,
 His worthi brother, called Syculus,
 So as I fynde, regned in that yle;
 And after hym it called was Cecille.
 But Eneas is to Tuscany goon.
 It t'enhabite with peple right anoon;
 And in Cecille he Naples first began.
 To whiche ful many Neopolitan
 Longeth this day, ful riche and of gret myght.
 And Diomedes, the noble worthi knyght,
 Whan Troye was falle with his toures faire,
 As to his regne he cast to repaire,
 His leges gan to feynen a querele
 Ageynes hym and schop hem to rebelle;
 And of malys and conspiracioun,
 Thei hym withhilde bothe septer and croun.
 Her doeté and her olde lygaunce
 And hym denye trouthe and obeissance.
 Wherfor anoon, so as bokes telle,
 With al his folke he went for to dwelle
 Unto Callabre and gan it to possede.
 And ther the knyghtes of this Dyomede
 That fro Troye han him thider swed
 To forme of briddes wern anon transmwed
 By Cyroes crafte, doughter of the sonne,
 And in the eyr to flean anoon thei gonnes
 And called ben, in Ysidre as I rede,
 Amonges Grekys briddes of Dyomede.
 But as som bokys of hem ber witnesse,
 This chaunge was made be Venus the goddesse
 Of wrath sche had to this worthi knyghte;
 Only for sche sawe hym onys fyghte
 With Eneas, hir owne sone dete.
 At whiche tyme, as thei faught ifere
 And Diomedes with a darte igrounde
 Gan hame at hym a dedly mortal wounde.
 His moder Venus gan anoon hym schroude
 Under a skye and a mysty cloude

Troy Book

	To saven hym that tyme fro meschaunce.	misfortune
	And for this skyl Venus took vengaunce:	by this means
	Into briddes to turne his meyne.	followers
890	And in that forme fro yer to yer thei fle Unto his towmbe, wher that he is grave. So upon hym a mynde yit thei have, That of custom for a remembraunce A rite thei holde and an obseruaunce	tomb; buried memory
895	At his exequies thise briddes everychon A dayes space and thennys nought ne gon. And overmore, as it to hem is dwe, Thei love Grekis, and platly thei eachewe Latyns alle, for ought that may betyde:	funeral rites and do not leave appropriate to them avoid whatever may happen
900	For thei present, anoon thei flen aside; ¹ And eche from other, as bokys us assure, This briddes knowe only of nature Grekyss and Latyns kymdelij assonder, Whan thei hem seen: the whiche is swiche a wonder	instinctively how to distinguish
905	Unto my witte that I can nougnt espie The causys hid of swiche sorcerye. But wel I wot, though my wit be blent, That rote of al was fals enchauntement.	mind; discover hidden source; magic <i>But I know well, though my mind is dulled</i> coarse
910	But of our feithe we oughte to defye Swiche apparenccis schewed to the eye, Whiche of the fende is but illusioun — Herof no more. And thus whan Troye toun Eversed was and ibrought to nougnt,	reject false appearances devil
915	Ful many cité was ibilt and wrought, And many lond and many riche toun Was edified by th'ocasioun Of this werre, as ye han herde me tellie.	Overtrown made <i>built because of the accident</i>
920	Whiche to declare now I may not dwelle From point to point, lyche as bokis seyn, For to Jason I wil resorte ageyn That londed is with worthi Hercules At Symeonte, the havene that thei ches,	return chose

¹ If they (Latins) are present, they (the birds) immediately fly off

Book I

- As I have tolde, to reste hem and counforste,
And for mot elles but only to disperte. anything else
925 But to the kyng regnyng in Troye town
That was that tyme called Lamedown,
Of fals envy reported was and tolde
How certeyn Grekis wern of herte bolde
To entre his lond, the whiche thei nat knewe,
930 Wei arrayed in a vessel newe.
Whiche to arryve hadde no lycence
And hem purpose for to doon offence
Be liklyhed and his lond to greve:
For thei of pryd withouten any leve
935 Or safcondyte han the stronde ytake;
And swiche maistries on the lond thei make,
As in her power wer alle maner thyng.
Havynge no rewarde pleynly to the kyng:
Of his estat take thei noon hefe.
940 Of swyche straungeris gretly is to drede,
Yffe men be laches outhir negligent
Fully to wit what is her entent,
But furthe prolong and no pereil caste.
Swyche sodeyn thing wolde be wist as faste
945 And nat differrid til the harme be do;
It wer wisdam that it wer sele to:
Men may to long suffryng and abyde
Of negligence for to lete slyde
For to enqueren of her governaunce.
950 This was the speche and the dalyaunce
Everyche to other by relacioun
In every strete thoroughoute Troye toun.
Somme rounyng and somme spak abrood;
And this speche so longe ther abood
955 From on to another, sothly, that the soun
Reported was to Kyng Lamedoun.
As ye han herde, the whiche of wilfulness,
Without counsail or avisenesse,
To hastily maked hath his sonde
960 To wit how thei wern hardy for to londe
Besyde his leve, of presumpcioun.
- Lamedon
malicious ill will
were
whom they (the Trojans)
- They
intend to do harm
harm
permission
safeconduct; shore
free actions
As if
gift
- If; careless or
know
delay and foresee no peril
unforeseen; should
deferred
- delay
intentions
conversation
Each one to each other in turn
- whispering; openly
- foresight
message
To learn; bold
Without

Troy Book

	Wherfore he bad in conclusoun Withoute aboode sone to remwe, Or finally thei schalde nat eschewe	delay; remove themselves avoid despite
965	To be compellid, maugre who seith nay. And so the kyng upon a certeyn day In haste hath sent his embassatour Unto Jason, of Grekys governour,	
	That nouther thought harme nor vlyonye But innocent with his companye	neither
970	Disported hym endelong the stroade And ever hath do sethen he cam to loade. And of the charge that he on hym leyde And word by word to Jason how he seide,	along the full length since
975	As in effecte with every circumstaunce, This was the somme plainly in substaunce. 'The wise, worthi, moste famus of renoun, The myghty kyng, the noble Lamedoun	gist; essence
	Hath unto yow his message sent, Of whiche th'effect, as in sentement,	
980	Is this in sothe: that he hath mervaille Ento this loade of your arivaille, Bryngyng with yow Grekys nat a fewe, And have no condyte for yow to schewe,	purpose; meaning truth
985	Proteccioun, pleynly, nor lycence, In prejudise of his magnificencie.	safeconduct permission defiance
	Wherfore he hath on me the charge leyde And wil to yow that it be platly seyde	
	That ye anoon, withoute more delay,	openly
990	Withoute noyse, or any more affray Of Troye lond the bowndis that ye leve;	disturbance boundaries
	Or yow and youres he casteth for to greve, And bet it is with ese to departe	intends; punish better
995	Than of foly your lyves to juparte In any wyse, for lak of providence	foolishly; risk
	Ageyns his wille to make resistance	
	Outher of pride or of wilfulnessse,	
	For to be bolde withoute avisenesse	
	To interrupte his felicite;	
1000	For he desyreth in tranquillite	Either out of foresought

Book I

- To holde his regne withoute perturbaunce.
In whos persone is made swyche aliasance
Atwen his manhood and royal mageste
That thei nyl suffre noon of no degré
1005 T'enpugne his quiete in any maner wyse;
Wherfore I consaille, as ye seme wyse,
To taken hede unto that I seye
And his byddyng moght to disobeye,
Liste ye offendis his kyngly excellencie. Lest
- 1010 For ye schal fynde in experiance
Withoute feyning sothe al that I telle:
Take hede therfor; I may no lenger dwelle
From poynt to poynt, syth ye be wis and sage;
For this is hool th'effeete of my message." mark
- 1015 Whan Jason herd of the massanger
Thise wordes alle, he gan chaunge cher
And kepte hym cloos with sobre contenaunce
And was nat hasty for ire nor grevaunce;
For no rancour he caughte of his tale, since
- 1020 Save in his face he gan to wexe pale; grow
Long abydyng or ought he wolde seyn
And or he spak any worde ageyn
Unto hym that from the kyng was sent,
He gan disclose the somme of his entent before he said anything
- 1025 Unto his foolike stondyng ronde aboute;
For unto hem he discurede oute
The message hool, firste whan he abreide,
And worde by worde thus to hem he seyd: reveal; giv
"Sirs," he seyth, "to yow be it knowe —
1030 Taketh hede, I praye, both hygh and lowe —
How Lamedoun, that is Kyng of Troye,
Hath sent to us a wonderful envoye, strange
Chargyng in haste to hyye oute of his load; his
And axeth how we upon the stronde inquires
- 1035 For to arive hadden hardinesse
Withoute leve: seth here his gentillesse
And his fredam, the whiche is nat a lite!
How lyche a kyng that he can hym quite
Unto straungerys that entren in his ile Without permission; see
mobility (or generosity)
behave

Troy Book

1040	For nought, God wot, but for a litel while Hem to refresche and departe anoon, Lyche as ye can recorden everychon And bere witnes, bothe alle and somme. Allas, fredam, wher is it now becom?	<i>For no reason</i>
1045	Where is manhood and gentilnesse also, Whiche in a kyng togidre bothe two Schulde of custom han her restyng place? And wher is honour, that schulde also embrace A lordis hert, whiche of kayghtly ryght,	<i>remember one and all</i>
1050	Of manly fredam, with alle his fulle myght, Schulde straungeris refresche and recomforcie, That aftirward thei myght of hym reporte Largesse expert, manhood, and gentillesse That thei han founden in his worthiness.	<i>Well-schooled generosity</i>
1055	For yiffe noblesse wer of his allye And fredam eke knyt with his regalye (So as longeth to honour of a kyng), He schulde have chargid first of alle thing His worthi liges with al that myghte plesse	<i>if joined; rule is appropriate to instructed</i>
1060	To have schewed the comfort and the ese With al his myght and her besy cure Unto straungeris that of aventure Wern in the see dryven and dismayed And of our comfort nat ben evel payed.	<i>concern by chance disheartened badly disposed similar</i>
1065	For yif that he in any cas semblable, Outher by fortune that is variable, By sort or happe, that may not be withstande, Arived had into Grekys londe, More honestly, lyche to his degré.	<i>chance or luck (see note)</i>
1070	He schulde of us have resseived be, Lyche as it longeth unto genterie. But syth that he, for ought I can espie, Hath fredam, honour, and humanité Atonys made oute of his courte to fle.	<i>appropriate to his standing understand</i>
1075	Chose dishonour and late worship goon — Ther is no more. But we schal everychon That he hath chosen helpe to falfille Whan power schal nat be lyke his wille:	<i>At once good name each one of us What (see note) to his advantage</i>

Book I

	This to seyne — and sothe it schal be founde —	truth
1080	That his dede on hymselfe schal rebounde, Sith of malys he hath this werke begonne, Paraventure or the somer sonne The zodiak hath thries gon aboute. For late hym trust and no thing ben in doute,	Since Perhaps before zodiac
1085	We schal hym serve with swyche as he hath sought; For yif I lyve it schal be dere abought, Albe therof I sette as now no tyde. And in this lond I nyl no lenger byde Til I have leisir better to sojorne."	let; in no way repay <i>paid for dearly</i> Although
1090	And with that worde he gan anoon to turne With manly face and a sterne chere Sodeynly unto the massangere That fro the kyng unto hym was sent;	fierce countenance
1095	And in this wyse he scheweth his entent: "My frende," quod he, "I have wel understande The message hool that thou toke on honde Of thi kyng to bryngen unto us Right now unwarily; and syth it standeth thus,	whole
1100	That I have his menyng everydel From point to point and understande it wel — For word by word I have it plein conceived And the gifthes that we han resseived On his byhalve in our grete nede —	behalf
1105	I wil remembre and take right gode hede To everything that thou hast us brought. For trusste wel that I foryeite it nouȝt But enprente it surly in my mynde And with al this, how goodly that we fynde	<i>imprint; securely</i>
1110	The gret bounte in al maner thing Within this lond of Lamedoun the Kyng: His wolcomyng and his grete cher And the goodly sond that thou bryngist her, Nat accordyng unto oure entent;	message
1115	For God wel wot that we never ment Harme unto hym nor pleinly no damage To noon of his of no maner age. And heruppon the goddis immortal	godz

Troy Book

- That of kynde ben celestial
Unto recorde with al myn hert I take;
naturally
- 1120 And touchyng this my borwys I hem make,
In witnessyng we mente noon offence
I promise
Ne toke nat, as by violence,
pledge
- Within his rewme of womman, child, nor man;
And so thou maist reporte yif thou can —
- 1125 But for that we, fordriven in the se,
Compellid were of necessité
For to arive, as thou haste herd me seyn,
Only to reste us her upon the pleyn,
Withoutore more, unto a certeyn day
- 1130 And afterward to holde farthe our way
Upon our journeye and make no tariyng.
Liche as thou maist recorde to thi kyng —
And seye hym eke he schal the tyme se
That he paraunter schal mow thanked be, *by chance may well be repaid*
- 1135 Whan tyme comyth, by us or by som other:
Go farthe thi waye and seie hym thus, my brother.”
And than anoon, as Jason was in pes,
The manly knyght, the worthi Hercules,
quiet
- 1140 Whan he had herd this thing fro poynt to point,
He was asoon brought in swyche disjoint
Of hasty rancour and of sodeyn ire,
The whiche his hert almost set afire,
agitation
- 1145 That sodeymly, as he abreyde abak,
Of high disdeyn even thus he spak
With cher askoyn unto the messanger
And seide, “Felaw, be no thing in wer
scorn
- Of our abödyng but be right wel certeyn
That or Tytan his bemys reise ageyn
sidelong glances
- 1150 That of oure men ther schal nat leuen oon
Withinne this lond and, God toforn, tomorwe.
And herupon have her my feith to borwe;
For we no lenger schal holden her sojour,
here; to be sure
- 1155 For elleswher we schal make our retourt
Tomorwe erly in the dawenyng
Up peyne of repref; and so go seie the kyng. *return*
blame

Book I

- And or thre yere, yif God us graunste lyf,
Maugre who gruccheth or maketh any strif,
Unto this lond we schal ageym retourne
1160 And caste anker a while to sojourne.
Take hede therfore and note wel the tyme:
A newe chaunge schal folwen of this pryme,
And thanne his power schal not so large strecche;
Of his sauconduit lytel schal we recche.
I seie the platly, as is oure entent,
We wil not have to his maundement
But lytel reward, and we that day abide;
For takyng leve schal be set asyde
Because he hath now begonne a play
1170 Which we schal quite — be God, yif that I may —
That torme schal into his owne schame;
And spare nought to seie the kyng the same."
This massanger than gan ageyn replye
And seide, "Syr, ye may me not denye
1175 Of honesté my massage to declare;
Avise yow, for I wil not spare
The kynges sonde pleynly for to telle.
And wherso be ye lyt to goon or dwelle,
Ye may yit chese, whoso be lefe or lothe;
1180 Ye have no cause with me to be wroth;
For it sit not unto your worthines,
Yfle ye take hede be weye of gentilnes,
Of manassysng swyche armes for to schete;
For more honest it were youre thretynge lete
1185 And kepe secrete til ye ben at your large.
For certeinly no parcel of my charge
Is for to strive with yow or debate.
But bet it is bytymes than to late
That ye be war for harme that myghte fale.
1190 And for my partie, I saie unto yow alle,
It were pitie that ye distroyed were
Or any man hyndre schulde or dere
So worthi persones in any maner wise
Whiche ben so likly to be discret and wise;
- Despise
- anchor
- follow from this beginning*
- safeconduct; reckon
tell you plainly
orders
- concern, if we see that day*
- Reflect carefully; fall
message
- happy or sad
- it does not befit*
- to shoot such menacing bolts*
threatening forego
at liberty
- before it is too late*
- injure or harm

Troy Book

- 1195 And list with wordis as now I do you greve,
I saye no more. I take of yow my leve."

test

[*Jason and his men leave Trojan territory and sail to Colchos. They march in splendor to Cethes's palace, and the king receives them courteously. Jason asks for permission to undertake the tests to gain the fleece. Cethes, wary of being blamed, explains the dangers but grants permission. A feast is prepared, to which Cethes summons Medea, his daughter and heir. Medea has been educated in the liberal arts and exercises great powers over nature. Cethes seats Medea next to Jason (lines 1197-1822).]*

	But O, alias, ther lakked high prudence,	was lacking
	Discret avis of inward providence,	foresighted
1825	Wisdom also with perill caste afore To trust a maide of tendre yeres bore, Of unhappy founned wilfulnes.	peril foreseen born unfortunate infatuated
	For this kyng of his gentelnes Comaunded hath to his confusioune,	destruction
1830	To his dishonour and destruccioun His owne daughter, born to be his eyr, That was also so wommanly and fair, So sodeynly doune to descende — Considered nat the meschef of the ende.	trust
1835	Allas, why durst he in hir youthe affie To make hir sytten of his cortesie Wher sche myght by casuel mocion Ful lightly cacche or han occasioune	seize
1840	To don amys; alias, whi did he so? Why list hym nat taken hede therio Nor to adverte in his disrescioun, Wysly to caste afor in his resoun The unwar chaunge that is in wommashed,	did he not wish turn aside foresee unexpected
1845	Whiche every man oughte for to dredre? For who was ever yit so mad or wood That ought of resoun conne aright his good To yeve feith or hastily credence To any womman withoute experiance	insane
	In whom is nouther trust ne sikernesise?	know his well being
1850	Thei ben so double and ful of brotilnesse That it is harde in hem to assure;	give neither; certainty brutleness have faith

Book I

	For unto hem is longeth of nature From her birth to haven alliaunce With doublnes and with variaunce.	it is natural for them their
1855	Her hertes ben so freel and unstable, Namly in yowthe so mevynge and mutable That so as clerkis of hem liste endite (Albe that I am sori it to write) Thei seyn that chawng and mutabilite	fruit with to write
1860	Appropred ben to femynnytē — This is affermed of hem that were ful sage. And speciali while thei be tender of age In her wexyng and whan that thei be yonge, Whos herte acordeth ful selde with her tonge.	Are characteristic of especially growing
1865	For if the trouthe inwardly be soughte With the surbase and remnaunte of her thoughte, Men may ther the trewe patron fynde Of inconstaunce, whos flaskable kynde Is to and fro mevynge as a wynde,	inconstant nature moving like
1870	That Hercules wer nat strong to bynde Nouther Sampson, so as I bileyve. Wommannes herte to make it nat remeve. For as the blase whirleth of a fire, So to and fro thei fleen in her desire	Nor alter flame fly
1875	Til thei accomplische fulli her delite. For as matere by naturel appetit, Kyndely desyreth after forme Til he his course by processe may performe, So this wommen restreynen hem ne can	fully Naturally
1880	To sue her lust ay fro man to man. Thei wil not cesse til al be assayed; But wolde God, as mater is apaied With o forme and holdeth him content, Whan of his boundys he hath the terme went	follow tried pleased reached
1885	And not desyreth ferther to procede But stille abidte and wil it nat excede, That by ensample alle wommen wolde Resten in on, as duelly thei schulde, And holde hem peyde and stille ther abide.	walts properly sanctified
1890	But unsure fotyng doth hem ofte slide.	support; causes

Troy Book

- For thei be nat content with unité:
Thei pursue ay for pluralité,
So of nature to mevyng thei be thewed,
Although amonge, by signes outward schewed.
1895 Thei pretende a maner stabilnes;
But under that is hid the dowbilnes
So secretly that outward at the eyc
Ful harde it is the tresoun to espie.
Under curteyn and veil of honesté
1900 Is closed chaunge and mutabilité,
For her desyr is kepte ful cloos in mewe
And thing thei hadde levest for to sewe
Only outward for to have a laude,
Thei can decline with feynymg and with fraude.
1905 Wherfore, Cethes, thi wit was to bareyne
That thou aforne by prudence naddist seyne
What schulde folwe of this unhappy caas.
Whi wer thou bolde for to suffre, alias,
Thin owne daughter, so fair and fresche of hewe,
1910 With straunge gestis entred but of newe
So folly for to lete hir dele,
Wherthorugh thin honour, thi worship, and thin hele
Was lost in haste, and sche to meschef brought
In straunge londe with sorwe and myche thought.
1915 Wheras sche to grete sculaunder of the
In gret miserie and adversité
An ende made and thou wer lefte al sool,
Thou myghtest wel compleyne and make dool.
Alias the while, yif in thi prudent syght
1920 Thou haddest grace to remembre aright
And to have cast by discret purvaunce,
And weied wysely by mesour in balaunce
The fraude of wommon and the freelté,
In whom ful selde is any sikerté.
1925 As in his Latyn Guydo doth expresse.
Wherfor, thou Cethes, of verray reklesnesse
Thou hast astonyys in augment of thi woo
Without recure bothe two forgoo:
Firste thi tresour and thi daughter dere,
- disposed
from time to time
- discover
- hidden
concealment
- would wish most to pursue
praise
- dissimulation
- mind
- did not foresee
- foreign; lately
- associate
- health
- you
- alone
- lament; complaint
- frailty
- seldom; stability
- at once; woe
- remedy

Book I

- 1930 That was to the so passyngly entere,
And eke thin ayre; for whan that sche was goon,
As seithe myn auctor, other was ther noon
After thi day for to occupie
Thi royal septre nor thi lond to guye.
*exceedingly dear
heir
guide*
- 1935 But what was worth the grete providence,
The wakir kepyng, or besy diligence
Of myghti Mars, that god is of bataile?
What myght it help, diffende, or availe
Ageyn the wit of womman or the sleighe
wakeful watch
- 1940 Whos fraudes arn of so huge a weighte
That as hem list ay the game gothe,
Her purpos halt, whoso be lefe or lothe —
Thei ben so slighe, so prudent, and so wyse!
For as this story plainly doth devise,
*are
as they wish
intention held; happy or sad*
- 1945 This Medea by hir engyne and crafte
From hir fader his tresour hath berafte
Thorugh the werchyng of hir sleighe gylle,
As ye schal her withinne a lityl while.
For as sche sat at mete in that tyde
*ingenuity
taken
crafty
time*
- 1950 Next hir fader and Jason by hir syde,
Al sodeinly hir fresche rosen hewe
Ful ofte tyme gan chaunge and renewe
An hondrid sythe in a litel space.
For now the blood from hir goodly face
sime
- 1955 Unto hir hert unwarly gan avale,
And therewithal sche wexe ded and pale;
And este anoon, who that can take hed,
Hir hewe chaungeth into a goodly red.
But evere amoneg f'caswen hir colour,
*began to drop
grew
soon afterwards
hue
to shade
mingled*
- 1960 The rose was meynt with the lillie flour;
And though the rose stoundemele gan pase,
Yit the lillie abideth in his place
Til nature made hem este to mete.
And thus with colde and with sodein hete
*from time to time; pass away
again*
- 1965 Was Medea in hirsilfe assailled
And passyngly vexed and travailed.
For now sche brent, and now sche gan to colde,
And ay the more that sche began beholde
*distressed
burned
always*

Troy Book

1970	This yong Jason, the more sche gan desyre To loke on hym, so was sche seise afire With his bewte and his semlynesse; And everything sche inly gan enpresse What that sche sawe, bothe in mynde and thought; Sche al enprenteth and forgt right nougnt;	attractiveness notice
1975	Sche considereth every circumstaunce Bothe of his port and his governaunce: His sonnelyche here, crisped liche gold wyre, His knyghtly loke and his manly chere, His contenaunce with many noble signe,	remembers; nothing behavior; demeanor sunny hair face
1980	His face also, most gracious and benigne, Most acceptable unto hir plesaunce; For, as sche thought, it was sufficiaunce Withouten more unto hir alone To considre and loke on his person.	
1985	For in that tyme withouten any drede Of mete or drinke sche toke but litel hede, For sche of food hath loste hir appetit; To loke on hym sche hath so gret delite — He was so prented in hir remembraunce.	imprinted
1990	Love hath hir caught so newli in a traunce And ymarked with his firy brond That sche may nougnt eskappen fro his bond Nor eschewe his strok in special; For sche was yolde body, herfe, and al,	marked; arrow avoid given up plainly
1995	Unto Jason platly for to seye, And evere among on hym sche cast hir eye, Whan that sche fonde a leyser oportune. But of wisdom sche wolde nat contune Hir loke to longe, list men dempte amys;	at the same time opportunity persist in lest; judge amiss
2000	But as the maner of this wommen is, Sche kepte hir cloos and wonderly secree, That by hir chere no man myghte see What that sche ment by noon occasioune. Sche put hem out of al suspectioune,	these herself appearance by no opportunity
2005	For openly ther was no tokne sene. Sche caste rather that men schulde wene That th'enchesoun of hir abstinence	token thought; believe cause

Book I

- And why that sche satte so in silence —
How that it was only of wommanhede,
2010 Of honest schame, and of chaste drede,
That togidre in hir herte mette;
The whiche tweyn so this maide lette
Fro mete and drink, as it wolde seme.
Thus of wisdom sche made hem for to deme
2015 And so to cast in hir opinoun;
And thus sche blent hem by discreciooun,
For hir chere koude everything excuse.
Sche gaf no mater folis for to muse;
No cher unbridled that tyme hir asterte;
2020 For ther was oon enclosed in hir herte
And another in her chere declared.
For maidenes han ofte sythes spared
To schewen oute that thei desyre in dede;
As it falleth, whoso can take hede,
2025 That whil thei flouren in virginité
And for youthe have no liberté
To specifie that her herte wolde,
Thei kepe hem cloos, for thei be nat bolde
To schewen out the somme of her sentence.
2030 And thus Medea, kepyng ay silence,
Ne lete no worde by hir lippis passe,
But covertly with sobre chere and face
What sche ment scheweth with his eye
So secretly that no man koude espie
2035 The hoote fire in hir breste yreke;
And in hirself right thus sche gan to speke,
As sche in sothe that so moche can:
"So wolde God, this yonge lusty man,
Whiche is so faire and semly in my sighte,
2040 Assured were to be myn owne knyghte.
Whiche is to me most plesaunt and entere
With berd ysprong, schynning liche gold were,
So wel ilemed and compact by mesure,
Wel growe on heighte and of gode stature;
2045 And lyketh me in every part so wel
That by assent of Fortune and hir whele
- kept
food and drink
judge
believe; their
deceived them
expression; explain
to foolish people to ponder
expression unguarded; escaped
- often times
reveal
Since it happens, as anyone can see
- reveal; whole; meaning
- hot; concealed
knows
- beloved
growing; wile
well-built
good
it pleases me

Troy Book

	I ewred were to stonden in his grace.	<i>destined</i>
	For as me semeth, on his knyghtly face	
	It is to me an hevene to byholde,	
2050	Albe therwith myn hert I fele colde;	<i>truth</i>
	And yit in soth it may noon other be.	<i>did he not have</i>
	Allas! whi nadde he upon my wo pité	
	Or, at the leste, he knewe in his entente	
	How moche trouth to hym that I mente!	<i>faithfulness</i>
2055	Of whiche, allas, he taketh no maner heede,	
	Albe for hym I brenne as doth the gledē	<i>Although; burn; cost</i>
	And to be ded I dar not me discuse.	<i>allow to be seen</i>
	Allas! my pitous and wofal aventure	
	Is to rewful and my mortal peyne	<i>pitiable</i>
2060	So to be mordred, and dar me not compleyne	<i>tormented</i>
	To frende nor foo of my chaunce, allas,	
	To finden help or socour in this caas.	
	And trewely, yit as I schal devise,	
	I nothing mene but in honest wise,	
2065	Liche as it schal openly be fownde;	<i>joined</i>
	For I desire to be knet and bounde	<i>part</i>
	With hym in wedlok and never fro hym twynne;	<i>intention</i>
	For my menyng is withouten synne,	
	Grounded and set upon al cleanness,	
2070	Withoutte fraude or any doublines —	
	So cleane and pure is myn entencioune!"	
	Loo, ay the maner and condicioun	
	Of this wommen, that so wel can feyne	<i>dissimile</i>
	And schewen on, though thei thinke tweyne;	<i>one thing; another</i>
2075	And covertly, that nothing be seyn,	
	With humble chere and with face pleyn	
	Enclose her lustis by swyche sotilé	<i>subtlety</i>
	Under the bowndis of al honesté	
	Of hir entent, though the trecherie	
2080	With al the surplus under be ywrye.	<i>rest underneath; hidden</i>
	And though that thei feith aforne pretende	
	And can her fraude with florissyng wel diffende	<i>fine words; vindicate</i>
	And flaterie, only the worlde to blonde,	
	With dowbilnes enclosed in the ende.	<i>blind</i>
2085	Yit ay deceyt is benethe ment	

Book I

- Undre the sugre of feyned clene entent,
As it were sooth in verray existence;
But, trust me wel, al is but apparence.
Thei can schewe on and another mese,
Whos blewe is lightly died into grene;
For under floures depeint of stabilnes,
The serpent dareth of newfongilnes.
So pleyne thei seme with wordis faire glosed,
But undernethe her covert wil is closed;
For what thing be most unto ther pay
Thei wil denye and rathest ther swere nay.
Thus liketh Guydo of wommen for t'endite.
Allas, whi wolde he so cursedly write
Ageynes hem or with hem debase?
I am right sorry in Englische to translate
Reprefe of hem or any evel to seye;
Lever me wer for her love deye.
Wherefore I preye hem to take in pacience;
My purpos is nat hem to done offence;
Thei ben so gode and parfyte everechon,
To rekne alle, I trowe ther be nat on
But that thei ben in wille and herte trewe.
For though amoneg thei chese hem lovis newe,
Who considreth, thei be no thing to blame; Who thinks about it will see; not at all
For ofte tyme thei se men do the same.
Thei most hem purveie whan men hem refuse;
And yif I koude, I wolde hem excuse.
It sitteth nat a womman lyve alone;
It is no stor but thei have more than oom.
Preying to hem for to do me grace,
For as I hope, to hem is no trespass
Though my makynge be the same in al,
As Guydo wryt in his original —
Where he mysseyth, late hym bere the wyte.
For it sit wel that the vengaunce byte
On hym that so this wommen hath offendid;
And yif I myght, it schulde ben amendid.
He schulde reseyve duely his penaunce;
For yif he died withoutise repentaunce.

Troy Book

- 2125 I am dispeired of his savacioun,
Howe he schulde ever have remissioune,
But he were contrite his synne to redresse;
It may not ben, as clerkys bere wytnesse.
And be my trouthe, and he were aliyve — *despair; salvation
forgiveness for sins
Unless; to atone*
- 2130 I mene Guydo — and I schulde hym shryve,
So bitter penaunce pleynly he schulde have
That to the tyme that he were igrave *by; if
confess him*
He schulde remembre and platly not asterte
For to repente hym with al his hole herfe *buried
escape*
- 2135 That he so spake to his confusious. *misfortune*
I wil no lenger make digressioun
Fro my matere, but let Guydo be
And telle forthe the woching of Medee,
That hath licence of hir fader nome *permission to withdraw; taken*
- 2140 And to hir chaumbre is allone ycome. *crowd*
Whan oute of halle withdrawn was the pres
And whan Jason and also Hercules,
Liche as the kyng after mete bad, *commanded*
To her chaumbres conveiled wern and lad, *their; were; led*
2145 Ful rially arrayed and beseyn; *appointed*
For every wal was cured in certeyn
With clothe of golde in ful statly wyse. *overspread*

[At the end of the feast, Medea retires to her chamber alone. She has fallen in love with Jason but is held back by modesty and the fear of shame. Fortune eventually resolves the conflict of love and shame when Cethes sends Medea to entertain Jason and Hercules. Medea seizes the chance to speak privately to Jason. She tries to dissuade him from trying to win the fleece. When he perseveres in his intention, she offers him her help, which is his only chance to survive and prevail. Jason in return promises to obey her and be her knight. She tries again to dissuade him, but Jason asserts that he would rather perish than suffer the shame of abandoning his goal. Medea says she will put aside her lineage and birthright, if Jason will marry her. Jason agrees, and the two are bound by their pledges to each other. Medea says she will send a go-between to bring him to her chamber that night. At midnight she calls for an old woman, experienced in love's tactics, to bring Jason (lines 2148-2812).]

Whan that the cok, comoun astrologer, *roaster, public*
The mydryght hour with his vois ful clere

Book I

- | | | |
|------|---|---|
| 2815 | Began to sowne and dide his besy payne
To bete his brest with his wyngys tweyne
And of the tyme a mynute wil not passe
To warnen hem that weren in the place
Of the tydes and sesoun of the nyght. | sound; endeavored
two
go beyond
time
await |
| 2820 | Medea so waytem upon hir knyght
Ful redy was the entré for to kepe,
As sche that list ful litel for to slepe:
For that ne was no parcel of hir thought.
And whan Jason was to hir chambre brought | wished |
| 2825 | Without espying of eny maner wight,
Than sche anoon conveyeth hym ful right
Into his closet in al the hast sche may,
Ful wel beseyn with gret and riche araye,
Where by hir side sche made hym take his se. | being seen
private room
seat
leash of three
in these matters
brace (a pair)
old woman; moon |
| 2830 | And first of alle this ilke lees of thre,
By hir that was moaste expert in this cas,
Was sodeynly turned to a bras;
For the vekke to stare upon the mone
Is walked out and hath hem lefte allone. | shaf |
| 2835 | And whan Medea the dores hadde schet,
Down by Jason anoon sche hath hir set.
But first I fynde with al hir besy myght
Abouthe chamber that sche sette up light
Of grete torches and cyrges ful royal | candles |
| 2840 | Abouthe on pilers and on every wal,
Whiche yaf a light liche the sonne schene.
And to a cheste wrought of cristal clene
First of al sche taketh hir passage,
Out of the wiche sche toke a rich ymage | gave; sunshine bright
clear crystal
goes |
| 2845 | Of pured gold, ful lusty to beholde,
That by custom of this rytes olde
To myghti Jove, eterne and increat.
Ihalwed was and also consecrat.
The whiche ymage, devoutly as sche oughte, | pleasing
self-existent
Holy; consecrated |
| 2850 | With humble herte to Jason first sche broughte
And made hym lowly theron take his othe
Unto his laste, outher for lefe or lothe,
That he hir schulde take unto his wife | Unto death; happy or sad |

Troy Book

- 2855 Fro that day forth duryng al his life
With hert unsyneyned and feith inviolat
And cherischen hir liche to hir estat.
For to that tyme, I fynde how that sche
Hadde ever floured in virginité;
And as myn auctor wel reherse can. sincere
- 2860 Ay kepte hir clene from touche of any man
In thoughte and dede and never dide amys:
For sche of herte so hooly yoven is
Unto Jason and that for evermo.
And he anoon hath put his honde thereto
report
- 2865 And sworne fully, as ye han herde me say,
Al hir requestes withoute more delay
To kepen hem whil his life may laste.
But, O allas, how sone he overcaste
His heste, his feith, with whiche he was assured,
given
- 2870 And hadde his fraude with flaterie ycured
So coverly that hir innocence,
Hir trewe menyng, and hir diligence,
And al that ever sche devise can
Deseyved was by falsofis of this man!
soon; shrew over
promise; guaranteed
concealed
- 2875 And though that trouthe was apparent above,
Doubilnes so slightly was in schove,
As though he hadde soothly ben allied
With trewe menyng, and so nothing espied
Under faire chere was feynynge and fallas.
Duplicity; cunningly; introduced
deception
- 2880 For what myght sche ha wrought more in this cas
Than for thi sake, septre and regalye,
And alle the lordis eke of hir allye
Forsoke attonys and toke of hem noon hede;
And of pité and verray goodlyhede
have done more
Forsaken at once
- 2885 Loste hir frendes and hir goode fame,
Only, Jason, to save the fro schame;
And yit, moreovere, forsoke hir heritage,
Sche that was born of so highe parage
And schulde have ben by successioum
you
lineage
- 2890 Eyre by dissent of that regioun.
But wommanly for sche wolde hir quite,
Of al yfere sche sette nought a myte,
Heir by descent
as a woman; please herself
everything together; set at nothing

Book I

- But at oon hour al sche hath forsake,
And unto the sche hath hir hooly take:
Only for truste thou schuldest have be kynde.
Riches and honour sche hath ylefft byhynde
And ches in exil with the for to goon
From al hir kyn, this cely maide allone.
Alias, I wepe for thin unkyndenes!
- What, hath sche nat fro deth and fro distresse
Preserved the, and yit thou takest noon hede,
That schust adeyed, nadde sche ben thin rede!
Of thi conquesce sche was the verray cause!
That I may nat schortly in a clause
Writen hir bounte nor brefly comprehendre
Effectuelly parforned to the ende,
At wordes fewe it may nat be tolde.
Thorugh whom thou hast the riche flees of golde
Manly conquered, whiche withoute doute
- Unlykly was the to have brought abouthe;
For whan thou were of helpe destrutus,
Sche was thi counfort and singuler refut.
And with al this, thou maist it nat deneye,
Al erthly honour how sche gan defye
The to conserve out of hevenes;
And hir fader sche hath of his riches
So emporisched that pitie is to here:
Be example of whiche wommen myght here
How thei schulde truste on any man.
- Alias, Medea, that so moche can
Bothe of sterries and of astronomye!
Yet sawe sche nat aforne hir destenyte:
Love hadde hir put ouste of governaille,
That al hir crafte ne might hir not availle.
- Sche was to slowe by calculacioun
To cast aforne the constellacioun
Of hir birthe and hir woful fate;
For rekleshed sche sawe it al to late.
But I suppose hir konnymge was fallible;
- For douteles, me semeth nat credible,
That yif sche hadde wist of it tofore,
- you
naturally
choose; you to go
simple maiden
unnativeness
- Who should; had she not; help
Since
encompass
given to the fullest extent
In
fleece
- succour
renounce
preserve from grief
impoverished
learn
- knows
beforehand
self-control
- too
Through recklessness; too
before

Troy Book

	So pitously sche hadde nat be lore, As ye schal seen hereafter hastely. So as the story reherseth by and by,	brought to rain recommencement
2935	Howe it befel of Jason and Medee. But first ye schul the ordre and maner se How sche wrought after he was swore: The same nyght, alias, sche hathe forborne Hir maidenhed, and that was grete pite.	acted parted with
2940	And yet sche ment nat but honeste; As I suppose, sche wende have ben his wyfe; But touching that, I holde as now no strife. And yit o thing I dar afferme and seyne, That the menyng of this ilke tweyne	meant nothing wrong thought she was regarding; make no demur two
2945	Ne was nat on but wonder fer atwene; For al that sche trewely gan mene, Of honeste thinkyng noon outerage, Liche a maide innocent of age.	Was not the same; exceedingly far apart harm
2950	He to accomplische his fleschely fals delite And to parforme his foule appetite Wrought everything to hir entent contrerie. Alias, that sche was so debonaire	pleasure satisfy Did kindly
2955	For to trust upon his curtesye Or to quite hir of hir genterie, So hastily to rewe upon his smerte; But wommen ben of so tender hert	repay: courtesy quickly to pity his distress
	That thei wil gladly of routhe and pite. Whan that a man is in adversite, Saven his life rather than he deye.	compassion
2960	And so Medea, schortly for to seye, Castyng no pereil after that schal fallie. His desyris and his lustis alle Hooly obeyeth with al hir ful myght;	Foreseeing
2965	And that so longe almost that the nyght Hath his cours rounde aboute goon. At whiche tyme to hir spake Jason And lowly seide, "My lady, it is tyme	
	That we arise, for sone it wil be pryme: Ye may se wel the day begynneth springe,	dawn
2970	For we may here how the briddes singe.	birds

Book I

- Preying to yow in al my beste wyse,
How I schal wirke that ye list devise
And ceryously everything dispose,
I yow beseche, O goodly fresche rose,
do; wish set forth
in due order; prepare
- 2975 Myn emprise to bringen to an ende;
And thanne at erst hennes wil I wende,
Save that I thinke first with you to trete
In what wyse this contré ye schal lete
undertaking
nor until then hence
discuss
abandon
- 2980 Whiche is a londe of gret felicité.
For trusteth wel, and beth no thing in drede,
Into that regne with me I schal you lede
After my conquest, yif so be that I wynne.
return
have no worry
prevail
- 2985 How I schal werke, in al the hast ye may,
For in good feith anoon it wil be day."

[To aid Jason in his quest to gain the fleece, Medea gives him a silver image, ointment to protect him against fire, an agate ring that will destroy poison and make him invisible, a document to read before touching the ram, and a container of liquid to glue the bulls' jaws shut. Jason leaves and goes to Cethes shortly after dawn. Fearing blame should Jason die, Cethes again tries to dissuade him from undertaking the adventure, but Jason persists in his determination (lines 2987-3200).]

- Whan Titan had with his fervent heie
Draw up the dewe from the levis were
Toward mydmorwe, as I can diffyne,
Upon the hour whan the cloke is nyne.
burning
Drawn; wet leaves
state
clock
- 3205 Jason ful manly and ful lyke a knyght,
Armed in steel, of chere ful glad and lyght,
Gan dresse him forth, what hap that ever falle,
And seide adieu unto his feris alle.
West forth, whatever may happen
companions
- He in the bot and thei upon the strande.
boat; shore
- 3210 And al allone, whan he cam to londe
And in the water had his vessel lafte,
He first of al remembraunce on the crachte
Of Medea, with al the circumstaunces
land
left
- 3215 And how he schulde kepe his observaunces
In everything and had it wel in mynde —
follow instructions

Troy Book

- And thanne anon ful manly, as I fynde,
He schope him forthe and wente a knyghtly pas
Toward the bolis, that forget wer of bras.
But at the point whan he his jorné gan
3220 For hym Medea wexe ful pale and wan,
So sore agast that nothing myght hir glade,
A routh it was to se what wo sche made:
For the teris on hir chekis tweyne,
Ful pitously doum distille and reyme,
3225 That al fordewed wern hir wedis blake.
And ay this sorwe sche made for his sake
Liche a womman ferful and in doute,
While he his armys ful manly brought abouthe.
To sobbe and syghe sche can not ben in pees,
3230 List he for hast were oughte rekeles
From point to point to don liche as sche bad.
This was the life that sche for hym hath lad.
And for to seen how he schulde hym defende,
Sche gan anon by greces to ascende
3235 Of a tour into a highe pynacle
Ther as sche myght have noon obstacle
Nor lettyng nouther, for to han a sighte
Of hym that was hir owne chose knyghte.
And ever among with wordis out sche brak
3240 And stoundemel thus to hir silf sche spake:
"O thou Jason, my sovereyn hertis hele,
Yif thou knewe what wo for the I fele,
Sothly, I crowe, it schuld the nat asterte
For to be trewe with al thin boole herte.
3245 And God, I praye, this jorné at the leste
May this tyme tornen for the beste,
And kepe the sauf and sounde in every membre,
And yif the myght fulli to remembre,
As I the taught and in the same forme,
3250 Everything fully to perforne,
Only this day thin honour to avaunce,
Whiche for to sen wer al myn hool plesance.
For certeyn, Jason, yif the fil ought amys,
Farewel myn helthe and al my worldly blis,
- immediately
set forth; bravely
built; forged; brass
undertaking began
- terrified; please
pity; woe
- trickle down
bedewed; black clothes
- feats of arms
peace
- Lest; careless
instructed
- stairs
turret
- no hinderance; have
chosen
- now and then
from time to time; self
well being
- you
- Truly; think; fail
- whole
- undertaking; least
- you safe
give you the power
manner
- see
if anything happened to you

Book I

- 3255 And my welfare, my fortune, and my grace,
 And farewel thanne my myrthe and my solace,
 And al attonyss myn hertly sufficiance!"
 Lo, this for him was his governaunce
 From the tyme that he the lond hath nome.
- 3260 And first of al, whan that he was come
 Where as the bolis, fel and dispitous,
 Out caste her fire and flawme furious
 At her mowthes, wonder large and huge,
 Ageyn the whiche, for his cheft refage,
- 3265 Hym to save that he wer nat brent
 He was enoynt with an oignement
 On his body, that kepte hym fro damage
 Of thilke fire, that was so ful of rage,
 And the smokys, dirke and ful horrible,
- 3270 Whiche to eskape was almost impossible
 For any man, of what estat he be,
 Withoute comfort and conseil of Medee,
 By whos doctrine Jason can so wirke
 That he is skapid from the mystis dirke
- 3275 Of the fire with his blases Blake,
 That al the eyre so cloudy dide make.
 Sche had hym made so discrete and sage
 Only by vertu of thilke ymage,
 Which that he aboute his nekke bare,
- 3280 Wherby he was so prudent and so war
 That, whan the bolis han most fersly gaped,
 He hath her malis avisely eskapid.
 For th'enfecccion of hir troubled eyr
 He hath venquesched and was in no dispaire;
- 3285 For in effecte, ageyn the soule fume,
 That wolde a man unto the deth consume,
 The ymage was a preservatif.
 Hym to defende and to save his life,
 And more surly to kepe hym oute of drede,
- 3290 Ful ofte sythe the wrt he dide rede;
 For the vertu of that orisoun
 Was unto hym ful proteccion,
 That he nat fil into no distresse.

happiness

at once

command

has taken (arrived)

bold; cruel; pitiless

their mouths

remedy

burned

anointed; ointment

that same; fury

act

escaped

its blazes

air

that same

bore

alert

have; fiercely opened their mouths

their venom wisely escaped

poison; their murky air

desperation

against the foul smoke

safeguard

danger

often; document

power; prayer

danger

Troy Book

	And after that, for more sikernessee,	security
3295	Hym to preserve in this mortal caas.	deadly
	He toke the licour that in the viol was	liquid; vial
	And therewithal, ful like a manly man,	
	At attomis, he to the bolys ran	at once
	And forgat nat so warly it to caste;	carefully; throw
3300	And therewithal her chaules wer made faste	jaws
	And by the vertu so myghtely englewed	closed together with glue
	That he therethrough hath ousterly eschewed	escaped
	Th'enfeccioune of the smoky levente.	poison; seething flame
	And whan the eyr gan cleryn and the hevene	air
3305	And the mystis wern wastid hym toorn,	had disappeared before him
	With manly hert he raughte by the horn	seized
	The sterne bolis; and by violence	fierce
	He drowe hem forthe, in whom was no diffience,	resistance
	And yoketh hem, so as the maner was;	yokes
3310	And with the plowe he made hem gon a pas	go forward
	Nowne up, now down and to ere the lond.	plow
	And at his last so baxum he hem fonde	obedient; found
	That the soil, smothe, bare, and pleyn.	
	Thei maked han redy to bere greyn.	have; produce grain
3315	And on rengis it torned upsodoun:	furrows; over
	For tho in hem was no rebelloun	then
	But humble and meke and redy at his wille,	
	Alle his desires pleyntly to fulfille.	But [they were] (see note)
	And Jason thanne liche a champioun	
3320	Gan hym inbait towarde the dragoun,	harry
	That was a beste gret and monstorous,	beast
	Foule and horrible and right venomous,	
	And was enarmed in skalis large and thikke,	scales
	Of whom the brethe more perillous and wikkie	injurious
3325	Was than the eyr of any pestilence;	breath
	For his venom was of swiche violence	
	That it was ful dedly and mortal.	
	And at his throte ther issed oate withal	from; issued
	A flawme of fire, as of a fournes mouthe	furnace
3330	Or liche the levente that doun by the southe	lightning
	Out of the est is wost in tempest amye:	storm to strike
	Right so the dragoun, soothly for to write,	truly

Book I

	Out of his mouthe had a flame blasid.	blew fire
	Wherof Jason first a litel masid	frightened
3335	Was in his hert of that dredful thing, But whan that he remembrid on his ring, Al fer and dредe was leide asyde and goon;	fear
	For in that ring ther was sette a stoon,	stone
	Ful riche and noble and right vertuous,	powerful
3340	The whiche, as techith gret Ysydorus And myn auctor also, as I fynde, Most comounly cometh out of Ynde,	Indore
	And mot be keptie chast and wonder cleane,	India
	And of colour surmounteth every grene.	pure
3345	Whos vertu is al venym to distroye And to withstande that it may nat anoye, Of dragoun, serpent, adder and of snake.	is superior to
	And specialy, yif that it be take And yholden in the opposyt	disable
3350	Of any worm, even ageyn the syght, Withoutte alood, in sothe, he may not chese: Of his venym the force he moste lese.	held; before make; in front of the eyes
	How strong it be or violent of rage.	delay; choose
	But to the stoon it doth ful gret damage;	lose
3355	For whan he hath his vertu don, as blyve On pecis smale it gynnith al to rive	fury
	And in itself hool abit no while.	power exercised, as quickly
	For in the londe that called is Cecyle	It begins to shatter in small pieces
	Ther is a worme that Bufo bereth the name;	whole remains
3360	And whan men wil of malis make him tame And his venym ouerly represse,	Sicily
	Thei take a squille, myn auctor bereth witnes,	serpent
	Whan thei wil wirke, or a large canne,	malice; docile
	And in the ende the ston thei sette thanne,	bring under control
3365	And lyne right ageyn the wormes hed Thei holden it, til that he be ded.	quill
	For that is soothly his vertu of nature,	reed
	That no venym may lasten nor endure	straight against; make's
	In the presence of this riche stoon.	its natural power
3370	And as I fynde, this Bufo right anoon Thorugh myght therof bresteth even on tweyne	breaks in two

Troy Book

	Only by kynde, whiche no man may restreyne.	naturally
	For the goddesse that called is Nature,	
	Whiche nexte hir lord hath al thing in care,	charge
3375	Hath vertu yove to herbe, gras, and stoon,	power gives
	Whiche no man knoweth but hirsilf allon;	only
	The causis hid ben closed in hir honde,	hand
	That wit of man can not understande	
	Openly the myght of hir wirkynge.	
3380	And so Jason by vertu of this ring	
	And thorough his ston, that myght him most avaunce,	aid
	Hath the dragoun brought unto ultraunce.	overcome completely
	In whom he fonde no maner resistence	
	Hym to withstonde, force nor diffence,	
3385	Nouther be venym nor noon other strif;	Neither by; other danger
	Wherfor he hath berefte hym of hys life	
	In manly wise and in the felde outraide.	overcome
	And Jason than, ful glad and wel apaied,	satisfied
	Hath with his swerd spent on him many stroke	
3390	And leied on him as men hewe on an oke;	oak
	His brighte squamys wern so harde and dure	scales were; tough
	That wel onethe he ne myght endure	scarcely
	Hym to dismembre and smyten of his hed.	off
	And than anoon in the stede of sed	<i>in place of seed</i>
3395	He gan his ieth out of his hed arrace,	remove
	And right forthewith in the silfe place	same
	He gan hem sowe, liche as men do corn,	plant, just as; grain
	Upon the lond that ered was aforn.	plowed
	Of whiche sede ther sprang a wonder greyn.	fruit
3400	Bright armed knyghtes stondyng on the pleyn,	keen
	The whiche anon with scharpe swerdis grounde	
	Everyche gan other for to hurte and wounde.	
	Til echis felawe hath cruelly yslawe:	slain
	This of hir fate was the fynal lawe,	requisite
3405	That noon of hem schulde be victorie	in
	The deth rejoische of other by memorie;	
	For alle yfere thus thei made an ende.	
	And after this Jason gan to wende	
	Unto the ram with al his dilligence,	all together
3410	In whiche he fonde no power nor diffence,	went
		resistance

Book I

- No maner strife nor rebellious;
And myghtely the ram he draweth doun
And sette on bond upon every horn
And slowe it first; and than he hath it schorn
Out of his flees of gold so passyng riche,
That in this world ther was no tresour liche.
And after that he made no delay
To take his bote as faste as he may
And roweth forthe into the tother yle.
- Wher Hercules, al the mene while
Upon the brinke with many another mo,
Abod Jason til he hadde do.
And everychon I fynde that as blive,
Only for joye whan he dide aryve.
- Thei gan to thanke to her goddes alle
So graciously that it hath yfalle
And that the flees he hath so knyghtly wonne,
That schom as clere as the somer sonne,
Whiche that he brought with hym unto londe,
- His feris alle abyding on the stronde.
- a hand
slew
- boat
other island
- bank; many others
Waited for; finished
everyone; happy
- for what happened
- brightly; summer sun
- companions; waiting; shore

[*Jason returns to Cethes, who is inwardly distressed that Jason has won the fleece but covers his disappointment with a show of good cheer that Jason takes as genuine. Medea tells Jason to come secretly to her chamber at night, where they make love. She agrees to go with him to Greece, and they sail off together with much of her father's treasure. Later when Jason has satisfied his desires with her, he abandons her. Guido says no more about her, but the rest of her story can be found in Ovid. Meanwhile, Jason and Hercules return to Thessaly, where King Peleus receives them, feigning happiness at Jason's success. Peleus restores the kingdom that Jason should rightfully inherit. Jason is still angry at King Lamedon's treatment when he landed in Troy, and he secures money and men from Peleus to pursue his vengeance. Hercules enlists Cassor and Pollux, then King Telamon and Nestor. The Greeks set forth for Troy and land at Symeonte. Peleus convenes a council in his tent, where he explains the aims of the expedition, which are to forestall Greek losses, to destroy their foes, and to win victory and riches (lines 3431–4019).]*

- 4020 And also faste as the kyng was stille,
The noble knyghte, the strong Hercules
In the presence of that worthi pres
Seide his counsell was heighly to commende,
- just as soon as
crowd
greatly to be valand

Troy Book

- For wis begynnyng is preyed be the ende:
4025 "But to effecte our purpos for to bryng.
My counseil is, in the morwenyng
Toforse or we discured ben be day,
That we us arme in al haste we may
And om this felde that we do oure peyne
4030 For to devyde oure meyné into tweyne;
And of the ton schal Kyng Thelamoun
Be governour for his highe renoun,
And of the tother Kyng Pelleus schal have
The governaunce, wylly hem to save;
4035 And I myselfe and Jason here my brother
Schal secrely go with alle the tother
Under the cité, or the sonne schynes,
And in the bruschail and the thikke vynes
We schal us hyde and kepe us ther ful koye;
4040 For Lamedoun, that is Kyng of Troye,
Anon as he may heren and espie
Of the Grekis, with his chevalrye
Out of the cité wele issen oute anoon
With yow to fighte and venge him of his foone;
4045 But whan he cometh to our schippis ward,
Nestor the duke schal in the firste ward
Metyn with hym, and Castor schal also,
Whan he seth tyme, knyghtly have ado
To help Nestor, yif that it be nede.
4050 The thridde warde Pelleus schal lede;
And whiles ye thus hym occupie,
Jason and I schal us faste hyc
To the cité, unwiste of hem echon;
I doute nat we schal it wynne anoon.
4055 Doth be counseil, and it wil yow availe;
And her my trouthe, ye ne may not fayle
For to conquerre the cité yonde afore;
This al and some — ye gete of me no more."
And thei acorde with al her strenthe and myghte
4060 And armen hem in stede that schon ful brighte
Ageyn the sonne amorwe whan he riseth,
And wrought fully as Hercules deviseth.
- conclusion
morning
Before; revealed; by
- divide; force; two
the one
because
other
- the others
Below; before
underbrush; vines
quite still
who
As soon as
knights
sally out immediately
take revenge; foes
toward our ships
division
- third
go
unbeknownst to them
conquer
Follow; serve
hear my pledge
- agree
themselves in steel armor
in the morning; it
did; planned

Book I

- And Lamedoun, whan he herde telle
Of her comyng, hym lyst no lenger dwelle, wished
4065 But out he went with many a noble knyghte,
Flourryng in youthe and desirous to fyghte,
And alle tho that myght armes bere,
Or koude schete or durste handle a spere. knew how to shoot; were so bold as to
And whan thei were assemblid in the felde,
4070 Everyche his armes depeynt upon his scheld, blazon displayed
Brouded or bete upon his cote armure.
Inlaid or embossed; surcoat
Than Lamedoun with al his besy cure Then; complete attention
Set hem in ordre and his wardes maketh,
divisions
And in the felde furthe his weye he taketh
4075 Towardis the Grekis, as eny lyne righte, straight as a line
Fully purposyng to abide and fighte.
He was nat war of hem that were behynde; aware
He nat adverteth nor casteth in his mynde noticed; foresaw
The grete sleighe nor the trechery
4080 That hym was schape: he koude it nat espie; was prepared for him
But furthe he went with his wardis set. divisions
And the Grekis anoon with hym han met
With herte bolde, astonyed nat at al. amazed
Duke Nestor firste, sturdy as a wal,
4085 In whos manhood was never founde lake, lack
Ful knyghtly than upon horse bake, back
To bert his men and his knyghtes eke, exhort; also
Gan presen in with many worthi Greke,
With Lamedoun surdely to mete.
4090 At whiche tyme thei felte ful unswete,
And in the frountel ful many manly man first battle-line
With scharpe speris first togidre ran;
And with swerdis scharpe and kene grounde
Was thilke day yoven many wounde; given
4095 Ther as thei mette upon every syde,
Thorough plate and mayle her woundis bledde wyde. armor plate; chain mail
And basenettis thei riven to the crowne; helmets; cut through to the head
The noise of strokis in the eyr gan sownde; strokes; air did sound
And of the blood that was schad of newe
4100 The grene soile chaunged hath his hewe:
For it was died playnly into red. dyed

Troy Book

- Upon the whiche ful many man lay ded
And many worthi loste ther his lif. nobleman
- 4105 The Grekis had discomfetid ben echon,
Nadde Castor socored hem anoon; would have been defeated
Thei of Troye so manly han hem bore
That many knyght of Grekis were ilore; Had not: supported them immediately
But whan Castor entreth in batail themselves borne
4110 With his knyghtes, so sore he dide assayl lost
The worthi Troyans that with spere and scheld
Grekis ageyn recured han the felde,
That many oon lyth slayen on the grene, assault
Girt thorugh the body with scharp speris kene. spear; shield
4115 That thai of Troye in this mortal stour regained have
Were drive abak, til ther cam socour Pierced
To hem in hast of worthi Lamedoun, combat
Whiche entred in liche a wood lyoun from
And made weye upon every syde. raging lion
- 4120 And where as he made his swerde to glide, scarcely no one dare
Ther was but deth, so manly he hym bare
That wel unnethe was ther non that dar
Abide his stroke; for ridyng up and doun,
He made weye aboute hym enviroun.
- 4125 In the rengis he hath his fooun oute sought; all around
That day in armys merveilles he hath wrought, ranks; foes
That by his manhood and his worthines arms
He Grekis hath brought in swiche distres misfortune
That thei his swerde fledden as the deth,
- 4130 Merciles so many of hem he sleth.
Of whiche slaughter the Grekis wer confus, their rescue
Til Pelleus cam to her rescus, Wrathful and angry; fury
Iros and wood, as he wer falle in rage. pride lesson
He thought he wolde the grete pompe aswage
- 4135 Of hem of Troye, and so he dide anoon;
For he unhorseth of hem many oon cruelly; before
And felly slowe al that stood hym aforne, armor; torn to pieces
And many harnes he hath that day totorne shields split apart
And made scheldes for to rive asoundre.
- 4140 That to beholde it was a verray wonder,

Book I

	Til Lamedoun his peple sawe goo bake,	
	For Pelleus brought hem so to wrape.	<i>destruction</i>
	Wherof he felte in hert ful gret peyne,	
	Besochyng hem to repeyre ageyne	<i>return</i>
4145	And kythe her myght and lyche as men endure;	<i>show their</i>
	And so the felde he made hem to recure,	<i>regain</i>
	Til duke Nestor knewe that Lamedoun	
	Amyd the felde was Kyng of Troye town.	
	And right anoon withoute more abood	<i>delay</i>
4150	Ageynes hym a ful gret pas he rood;	<i>swifly</i>
	And whan the kyng dide hym first espie,	<i>see</i>
	Of highe dispit, of rancour and envie,	<i>great hatred; anger; enmity</i>
	In knyghtly wyse gan to torne agayn,	<i>turn</i>
	No thing agast but of highe disdelyn.	<i>In no way afraid; scorn</i>
4155	With irous hert enbollid al with pride,	<i>wrathful heart swollen</i>
	His hors fersly gan takyn in the syde,	<i>struck (with spurs)</i>
	Til ther ran out the verray rede blood;	
	And to Nestor, liche as he were wood,	<i>crazy</i>
	He rood anoon, and his spere brake;	
4160	But he ful knyghtly kepte his horse bak	
	And ful deliverly, hym ageyn to quyte	<i>simply gave him in return</i>
	With a spere ful scharpe whet to byte,	<i>honed to cut</i>
	Thorugh schelede and breste gaf hym swiche a wounde	<i>shield; breast</i>
	That from his hors he felde him doune to grunde.	<i>dropped</i>
4165	Of whiche fal the kyng no thing aferde	<i>did not fear at all</i>
	But ros hym up and pulled out a swerde,	
	So anger fret hym at his herte rote	<i>gnawed at; deeply in his heart</i>
	That he unhorsed feghte muoste on fote;	<i>fight; foot</i>
	Wherof he was in parti ful confus,	<i>did not know which way to turn</i>
4170	Til oon Cedar cam to his reskus,	
	That was made knyghte the silfe same yere,	<i>very</i>
	Yong, fresche, and lusty, and of noble chere,	<i>lively</i>
	Sitting that tyme on a noble stede.	
	And whan that he gan to taken hede	
4175	And sawe the kyng on fote at meschef fighte,	<i>foot; distress</i>
	He gan to prike in al the hast he myghte	<i>ride fast</i>
	Toward Nestor and with a spere hym hitte,	
	From his sadel that he made hym flitte	<i>fall</i>
	Down to the grunde afore Kyng Lamedoun.	<i>before</i>

Troy Book

4180	But he anon liche a champiou Recured up and hymselfe diffendeth; And many strok eche on other spendeth With scharpe swerdis, kene for to bite; Everyche at other gan to foyne and smyte.	immediately <i>Get up and regained himself</i>
4185	Til Lamedoun with a dispitous chere From his face raced his visere And by force al at onys smet A riche cercle from his basenet, Of large perle goyng envoiron —	<i>thrust</i> <i>pithless</i> <i>slashed through; visor</i> <i>with strength all suddenly smote</i> <i>ornamental band; helmet</i> <i>gems going all around</i> <i>plumes; fiercely</i>
4190	With creste and al, he fersly bette adoun: That whiles Nestor thus aforn him stood, His face was al depeynt with blood, That certeynly, the sothe to conclude, Had nat Grekis with gret multitude	<i>covered</i>
4195	Reskewed hym, he hadde of Lamedoun Be slaye as faste; for he was bore doun Unto the erthe among the horse feet. But Castor thoghte that he molde leet To be his helpe, as he behelde afer;	<i>Rescued</i> <i>cast</i>
4200	And irously he toke a myghty speer, And to Cedar, that I spak of late, He gan to ride and priken in gret hate: But or he cam to hym, douteles, A Troyan knyght, callid Segnerides,	<i>hesitate</i> <i>from afar</i>
4205	Cosyn to Cedar, whan he hath this seen, On a courser rood anoon between; And with a spere he smete Castor so That with the stroke he brake evene atwo. To whom Castor withoute more arreste	<i>recently</i> <i>charge; enmity</i> <i>before</i>
4210	Hath with a spere amyddes of the breste Segnerides yove a mortal wounde, That likly was never for to sounde. Wherof Cedar caughte swiche envie That he anoon, of malencolye	<i>kinman</i> <i>steed</i>
4215	And of dispit boilyng in his herte, Segnerides whan he sawe so smerte, Maugre who gruccheth, amyddes of the feld Of verray myght from Castor toke his scheld	<i>hesitation</i>
		<i>given</i>
		<i>never to heal</i>
		<i>felt such anger</i>
		<i>rage</i>
		<i>dissain</i>
		<i>suffer from wounds</i>
		<i>Despite opposition</i>
		<i>shield</i>

Book I

	And thorough viser, of rancour and of rage,	visor
4220	He wounded hym amyddes the visage;	face
	And his hors from hym also he caughte,	
	And to his squier manfully it caughte:	carried off
	That certeynly he stood in swiche disjoyns,	furmoil
	This worthi Castor, that he was in poyst	about
4225	To have ben take of hem of Troye tho;	taken by; then
	For he on fote with hem moste have go,	
	Nadde Pollux with many manly knyght,	
	Mo than sevene hundrid in stede armyd bright,	
	The rather com Castor to reskewe;	<i>The sooner; rescue</i>
4230	Whiche after hem so sore gan to sewe	<i>follow</i>
	That maugre hem, Castor whan he fonda,	<i>despite them</i>
	Of force he toke hym fre out of her hond	<i>released him</i>
	And to his hors restorid hym ageyn.	<i>returned</i>
	And after that, this Pollux in certeyn,	
4235	Of verray angre and of fervent ire,	<i>true</i>
	Agen Troyens with rancour set afire,	
	That al attonis he upon hem set;	<i>at once</i>
	And in his mood, by fortune as he met	
	A Troyan knyght, called Eliatus,	
4240	In armys yong, freache, and desirous,	<i>handsome</i>
	Wonder semly and but tender of age,	<i>Carthage</i>
	The Kynges sone also of Cartage	
	And nevewe eke unto Lamedoun,	<i>nephew</i>
	Whom Pollux hath lyche a ferse lyoun	
4245	Withoutte routhe, pitie, or mercy.	
	In the rengis slawen cruelly —	<i>battle-lines</i>
	That Lamedoun, whan he gan take hede,	
	Of inward dool felte his herte blede,	<i>sorrow; bleed</i>
	Whan he hym sawe evene uppon the deth	
4250	Ful pitously yelden up the brethe	<i>yield</i>
	Upon the playn, as he lay hym beforne.	<i>plain</i>
	For whiche anoon he made sowme an horn,	<i>sound</i>
	At whiche ther cam a ful riche array,	<i>mastering of an army</i>
	Sevene thowsand knyghtes, in al hast thei may	
4255	Upon his deth avenget for to be.	
	Whiche mercyles, of grete craulte,	
	The Grekes han here and ther igrounded:	<i>struck to earth</i>

Troy Book

- Here lith on ded, ther another wounded,
So that thei myght have with hem no tak.
4260 So mortally thei made hem gon abak,
That al gan turne to her confusoun:
And finaly that day with Lamedoum
The tryumphe had and the felde ygoon,
Save that, alias, oute of the toun anoon
4265 Unto the kyng ther cam a messenger
That hath hym tolde with a ful pitous chere
How the Grekis han the cité take.
Than for to se the wo he dide make
It wolde have made a pitas hert as blyve
4270 Of verray dool asondre for to rive,
So sore he gan within hymselfe to morne.
He wiste nat what party he myght turne;
But in a were he abydyng longe
Aforn hym sawe the myghty Grekis stronge
4275 And in the cyté another host behynde:
Almost for wo he went out of his mynde;
And sodenly, bacward as he behilde
Toward the cité, he sawe com in the felde
First Hercules and with hym Jason.
4280 That by her sleight wonen han the toun.
And in al hast this cruel Hercules,
The myghty gesaunt of force pereles,
Liche a lyoun wood and dispitous
Or a tigre in rage furious,
4285 Gan of newe hem of Troye assaille
And with his swerde perce plate and mail,
Whiche of labour wer ful mate and feynt
And of long fighte with werynes atteynt.
And he cam in, lusty, fresche, and grene,
4290 That thei his force myghte nat sustene;
For as he rod among hem here and yonder,
In cruel wyse he severed hem asonder
And put hem holly in this highe meschaunce
Oute of rewle and of governaunce;
4295 So that the kyng, oppressed al with dool,
Of his wardis destitute and sool,
- lies one
hold their own against them
misfortune
won the field
messenger
sorrowful face

sympathetic; as quickly
sorrow apart to break
moan
did not know where
uncertainty
before
armed force

treachery have won
giant; unmatched
mad; merciless

armor plate; chain mail
exhausted; feeble
weariness affected

divided their ranks
in great disorder
discipline; control
sorrow
guardians; alone

Book I

	At meschef lefte and al infortunat,	<i>misfortune</i>
	And of comfort fully disconsolat —	
	This Hercules with a dispitous look	
4300	With scharpe spors his stede felly toke	<i>cruelly spurred on</i>
	And cruelly rod til Lamedoun,	
	And to the erthe fersly bare hym down,	<i>fiercely bare</i>
	And upon hym, in al the hast he myghte,	
	Downe of his hors sodeinly alyghte,	<i>off; alighted</i>
4305	And myghtely rent of his basenet,	<i>tore off; helmet</i>
	And with a swerde scharpe grounde and whet	
	Smot of his bede — ther was noon other grace —	<i>Cut off</i>
	And caste it furthe in the silve place	<i>same</i>
	Among the hors by cruel violence,	
4310	Withoutte pite or any reverence;	
	And in a rage raghte his hors ageyn	<i>remounted</i>
	And lyche a lyoun renyng on the playn	<i>moving to and fro</i>
	Bar downe and slowe what cam in his weye.	<i>whatever</i>
	And many Troyan that day made he deye,	
4315	That liche to schepe wer forskatered wyde,	<i>sheep; scattered</i>
	Al destitute of governour or guyde,	<i>Without; leader</i>
	Ne can no rede, schortly to conclude;	<i>[They] can take no counsel</i>
	For the Grekis with double multitude	
	Gan hem enchace to the deth ful blyve,	
4320	That wel unnethe ther left noon alyve.	<i>pursue; at once</i>
	The feld thei han and ben that day victours;	<i>hardly any were left</i>
	And with tryumphe, liche as conquerours,	<i>gain</i>
	To the cité thei take her weye after	
	And rende doun bothe sparre and rafter;	
4325	And al the tresour and riches of the toun	<i>tear; beam</i>
	Thei toke anoon to her pocessioune,	
	Who ever grucche or be lef or lothe;	
	What thei founde, pleynly with hem gothe.	
	In the temples thei dide gret offence,	
4330	To the goddis doyng no reverence;	<i>homage</i>
	For al thei spoyle, withoute drede or fere,	<i>despoil</i>
	And unto schip everything thei bere;	
	And merciles on crooked, olde, and lame,	
	Her swerde thei made cruelly atame;	<i>put to the sword</i>
4335	And children soukyng at the moder breast	

Troy Book

	Thei mordre and sle withoute more arrest;	hesitation
	And yong maydenes, wepyng in distresse,	
	Ful gentil born and of gret faynesse,	
	With hem thei ladde and may hem nat excuse	
4340	Her fresche bewte falsly to mysuse.	<i>keep from</i>
	Thei waste and brenne and consumen al,	<i>abuse</i>
	And withoute thei brake adoun the wal.	<i>burn</i>
	And Exione, the kynges daughter dere,	<i>outside</i>
	That was to hym passyngly entere	<i>Hesione</i>
4345	By his lyve — I mene Lamedoun —	<i>beloved</i>
	Meke and benyng of condicoun,	
	Hercules hath anoon hir take,	
	That for drede pitously gan quake,	<i>meek</i>
	And hir delivered unto Thelamoun,	<i>shake</i>
4350	For he entrede first into the toun.	<i>Because</i>
	And he his gifte reseyved hath at gre	<i>with pleasure</i>
	Because sche was surmountyng of bewte	<i>of surpassing beauty</i>
	And tretid hir after as he wolde,	<i>wished</i>
	Nat lyche as he a kynges daughter schulde.	
4355	For syth he gat hir that day be victorie	
	For his worship and his owne glorie,	
	Havynge rewarde to his highe degré,	
	He schulde rather of kyngly honesté	
	And of knyghthood have weddid hir therfore,	
4360	Syth that sche was of blood so gentil bore,	<i>bore</i>
	Than of fals lust, ageyn al godlyhede	
	Used hir bewte and hir womanhede	
	Dishonesty, and in synful wyse —	
	Of royal blood nat liche the highe emprise,	
4365	Nor the doctrine of naturis right,	<i>intent</i>
	Nor liche the norture of a gentil knyght:	<i>Nature's</i>
	Considered first hir birthe and hir kynrede,	<i>upbringing</i>
	Hir grene youthe, and hir maydenhed,	
	So gode, so fayre, so womanly thereto.	
4370	A kynges daughter of birth sche was also;	
	To have wedded hir it had be no schame.	
	Now, Thelamoun, in sooth thou wer to blame;	
	For thorugh the errore of thi governaunce,	<i>truly you</i>
	Ther kyndled was of ful byghe vengaunce	<i>behavior</i>

Book I

- | | | |
|------|---|------------------------------------|
| 4375 | So hoot a sparke after of envye
That thorugh the worlde the fyr gan multiplie,
Whiche was nat liche to quenchyn of his hete. ¹ | hatred |
| | For hatred olde to brenne can nat lete
With newe flawme, whoso taketh hede; | stop |
| 4380 | Yif it nat smeke, it is the more to drede,
As in the story herafter schal be knowe. | <i>If: smoke; fear known</i> |
| | And whan this toun was brent and broughte lowe,
Bothe tour and wal with the soil made pleyn, | <i>made even with the ground</i> |
| | And nothing stood, alias, that may be seyn, | seen |
| 4385 | (So outerly the Grekis hem oppresse,
Makynge al waste liche a wyldernesse), | <i>completely: destroy them</i> |
| | For good and tresour and riches infinyst,
With many jowel ful plesyng of delyt | barren |
| | To her schippis out of the toun thei lede, | jewel |
| 4390 | And in schort tyme homward thei hem spede
With tresour stuffid and haboundance of good. | went |
| | And whan thei seye that the wedir stood,
The wynde also at her lust thei hadde, | abundance |
| | Thei gan to saille, and with hem hom thei ladde | weather |
| 4395 | Exyona and many a mayde mo,
That out of Troye into Grece goo. | <i>Hesione; more</i> |
| | And seyling forthe, within a lytel space
Thei ben eskapid fro the se by grace | |
| | And unto lond aryved merily. | |
| 4400 | At whos commyng the Grekis outerly
So joyful ben of her goode spede; | |
| | And specialy, in Guydo as I rede, | |
| | Her schippes wern with golde and tresour lade; | laden |
| | Wherof in herte thei wexe wonder glade. | became |
| 4405 | And for thei hadde out so wel hem born
To conquerre Troye and so fewe lorne | <i>done so well</i> |
| | Of her meiné, thei thanke her goddes alle | lost |
| | And of the grace that to hem is falle. | <i>their retinue (of warriors)</i> |
| | For with the tresour that thei han hom brought | befell |
| 4410 | Ful many pore was made up of nought: <i>Many poor people were raised from penury</i> | home |

¹ Which was not likely to be extinguished because of its heat

Troy Book

Thoroughout the lond there was swiche abundance,
So moche good, and so gret sufficiaunce
That no wight had amonges hem no nede.
And many day this blissful lyfe thei lede

- 4415 From yer to yer by revolucioune;
And for her manhood and her highe renoun
Her honour ran rounde the worlde aboute,
That hem t'offende every londe hath doute,
For her knyghthod and for thei wer so wyse.
- 4420 And til the story liste ageyn devyse
In this mater ferther to procede,
With the favour of youre goodlyhed
I wil me reste for a litel space
And than, upborn with support of your grace,
- 4425 Forthe accomplische as I undertook.
And here an ende of the firste book
I make now with quakynge hand for drede,
Only for fer of yow that schal it rede,
Liste ye, alas, of hasty mocyoun
- 4430 Ne wil not have no compassioune,
Pyté, nor routhe upon my rudenesse;
Lowly beseching to your gentilnes
Of mercy only bothe neghe and ferre
Where ye fynde that I fayle or erre.
- 4435 For to correcte or ye ferther flitte,
For to your grace I holly al commytic.
- Through the cycle of the years*
people hesitates
Because of; because
pleases
then
shaking
fear
Lest;oward impulse
near
before; proceed
wholly

Book 2

The envious ordre of Fortunas meving,
In worldly thing fals and fleying.
Ne wil not suffre us in this present lyf
To lyve in rest withoutte were or striffe;
5 For sche is blinde, fikel, and unstable,
And of her cours fals and ful mutable.

*Fortune's
changeable*

war

[*Fortune brings those who sit highest to ruin. She gives some renown and victory, and humbles others. She overthrows all who trust her, just as she did King Lamedon. Thus I advise every man to take heed before starting a dispute. Be warned by Lamedon's example and show kindness to strangers. Old Troy was destroyed, the people were led into exile, and Hesione was given to Telamon because of Lamedon's unkindness. Great war and destruction can be caused by small events (lines 7-133).]*

- | | | |
|-----|--|--|
| 135 | Allas, whi nyl thei taken better hede? | <i>will they not</i> |
| 140 | For olde Troye and afterward the newe
Therughe smal enchesoun, who the trouthe knewe,
Wer finally brought to distruccoun,
As olde bokes maken mencioune. | <i>cause: truth</i> |
| 145 | And many worthi and many noble knyght
Slayn in the feld by dures of that fight;
Kynge, princes at that seige ded
Whan Antropos tobrak hir lyves thred, | <i>hardship</i> |
| | That for to tellle the meschef and the wo
I wante connynge and I fele also | <i>siege died</i> |
| 150 | My penne quake and tremble in my hond,
Lest that my lord, dredde on see and lond,
Whos worthines thorugh the world doth sprede,
My makynge rude schal beholde and rede, | <i>broke (see note)</i> |
| | Whiche of colour ful nakyd is and bare: | <i>lock skill: feel</i> |
| | That but yif he of his grace spare | <i>Lest: feared</i> |
| | For to disdeyne and list to have pitie,
For fere I tremble that he schuld it se. | <i>humble composing
rhetorical figures</i> |
| | | <i>unless</i> |
| | | <i>wish</i> |

Troy Book

- But only mercy, that dothe his hert embrace.
Byt me preswme fully in his grace. Bids
- 155 Seynge in hym, most vertuous and good,
Mercy anexid unto royal blood,
As to a prince longeth nyghe and ferre,
Ay tofore ryght pitē to preferre.
For thorughe the support of his highe noblesse
Sowpowailed, I wil my stile dresse
To write forthe the story by and by
Of newe Troye in ordee ceriously
As myn auctor in Latyn, Guydo, writ,
Preying the redor wher any word myssit,
Causing the metre to be halte or lame,
For to correcte, to save me fro blame:
Late hym nat wayte after coryoustē.
Syth that in ryme Ynglysch hath skarsetē.
I am so dulle, certeyn, that I ne can
170 Folwen Guydo, that clerke, that coryous man,
Whiche in Latyn hath be rethorik
Set so his wordis that I can nat be lyke.
To sewe his stile in my translacioun
Word by word lyche the construccoun
175 After the maner of gramariens
Nor lyke the stile of rethoriciens.
I toke nat on me this story to translate;
For me to forther Clyo cam to late,
That in swyche craft hath gret experiance;
180 I leue the wordis and folwe the sentence.
And trouth of metre I sette also asyde,
For of that arte I hadde as tho no guyde
Me to reducyn whan I went awrong;
I toke non heide nouther of schort nor long
185 But to the trouthe and leste coryoustē
Bothe of makynge and of metre be,
Nat purposyng to moche for to varie
Nor for to be dyverse nor contrarie
Unto Guydo, as by discordaunce,
190 But me conforme fully in substiaunce,
Only in menyng to conclude al on;
- Seeing
joined to
is due near and far
Always before
- Aided: writing instrument prepare
consecutively
is inappropriate
elaborateness
scarcity
elegant writer
follow his styles (writing instrument)
grammarians
did not undertake
Clio (muse of history)
correctness
then
lead back
short or long /syllables/
elaborateness

Book 2

- Albe that I ne can the weye goon
To swe the floures of his eloquence
Nor of peyntyng I have noon excellencie
195 With sondry hewes noble, fresche, and gay.
So riche colours biggen I ne may;
I mote procede with sable and with blake.
And in enewyng wher ye fynde a lak,
I axe mercy or I fro yow twynne:
200 And with your favour anon I wil begynne
And in al haste my style farthe directe;
And where I erre, I praye yow to correcte.
- way
follow

construct
the color black
shading
depart
immediately

err

[At the time Old Troy was destroyed and Lamedon killed, his son Priam and his family were besieging a castle. Priam performed great deeds of arms, risking his life in battle. He had five sons and three daughters. The oldest son was Hector, the root and stock of chivalry, who excelled everyone in knighthood. Paris was Hector's next brother, and he was the most handsome man alive. Deiphobus, a brave and wise man, was the third son. The fourth was Helenus, a man known for his learning in the liberal arts. Troilus was the fifth son, and he was called "Hector the secounde" (line 288) because of his manliness. Vergil records that Priam had two other sons. Polydorus was sent from Troy by Priam to a king he trusted, but the king cut the boy's throat and buried him in a hidden grave. The other son, Ganymede, was carried off by Jupiter who made him his butler. Priam's oldest daughter was Creusa, who married Aeneas, son of Anchises by the goddess Venus. Priam's second daughter was Cassandra, who had the power of prophecy. His third daughter was Polyaena, a maiden whom Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles, eventually slew. Priam also had thirty natural sons, all of them noble and hardy in arms.

While Priam was besieging the castle, he was told of the fall of Old Troy, his father's death, and the fate of Hesione. Sorrow overcame him; he dressed in black, raised the siege, and returned to Troy. He found a wilderness and lamented for three days, at the end of which he resolved to rebuild Troy (lines 203-478).]

- The sorwe awaged and the syghes olde
480 By longe processe, liche as I yow tolde,
This worthi kyng, callyd Priamus,
Is in his herte nowe so desyrous
Upon the pleyne that was so waste and wylde,
So strong a toun of newe for to bilde,
485 At his devyse a cite edefye,
- lessened

plain

By his direction; to build

Troy Book

	That schal th'assautys utterly defye Of alle enmyes and his mortal soon With riche tourys and wallys of hard stoon. And al aboute the costres enviroun	assault; entirely foes towers surrounding
490	He made seke in every regiou For swiche werkemen as were corious, Of wyt inventyf, of castyng merveilous, Or swiche as coude crafte of gemetreye, Or wer sotyle in her fantasye;	made to be sought ingenious understanding; planning such as knew; geometry were subtle; imagination
495	And for everyche that was good devysour, Mason, hewer, or crafty quareour; For every wright and passyng carpenter That may be founde, oþher fer or nere; For swiche as koude grave, grope, or kerue;	planner quarrier builder; excellent
500	Or swiche as werne able for to serve With lym or stoon for to reise a wal With bataillyng and crestis marcial; Or swiche as had knowyng in her hed, Alabastre, oþher white or redde,	carve; incise; sculpt were; build
505	Or marbil graye for to pulsche it pleyn To make it smothe of veynes and of greyn. He sent also for every ymagour, Bothe in entaille, and every purtreyour That coude drawe, or with colour peynt	polish it smooth vein-like roughnesses; rough surfaces sculptor pattern; portrait painter
510	With hewes fresche, that the werke nat feyn: And swiche as coude with countenaunces glade Make an ymage that wil nevere fade — To counterfet in metal, tre, or stoon The sotil werke of Pigmaleoun	lose color
515	Or of Appollo, the whiche as bokis telle In ymagerye alle other dide excelle; For by his crafty werkynge corious, The towmbe he made of Kyng Daryus Whiche Alysaundre dide on heyghte reise,	To imitate; wood subtle; Pygmalion Apollo (Apelles; see note) painting images
520	Only for men schuld his fame preise In his conquest by Perce whan he went, And thus Priam for every maister sent, For eche keruer and passyng joignour To make knottis with many corious flour.	Darius Alexander the Great praise Persia wood worker knobs beautifully wrought

Book 2

525	To sette on crestis withinne and withoute Upon the wal the cité rounde abouste; Or who that wer excellyng in practik Of any art callyd mekanyk Or hadde a name flouryng or famus Was after sent to come to Priamus.	cresting inside and out practice mechanical reputation distinguished intended
530	For he purposeth, this noble worthi kyng, To make a cité most royal in byldyng — Brod, large, and wyde — and lest it wer assailled, For were proudly aboute embatailled.	attacked
535	And first the grounde he made to be sought, Ful depe and lowe, that it faille nought To make sure the fundacioun; In the place where the olde toun Was first ybilt he the wallis sette;	war; furnished with battlements examined by probing built
540	And he of lond many myle out mette Aboute in compas for to make it large, As the maysters that toke on hem the charge Devysed han the settynge and the syt, For holsom eyr to be more of delyt.	measured themselves Planned; site air
545	And whan the soille, defoulit with ruyne Of walles old, was made pleyn as lyne, The werkmen gan this cité for to founde Ful myghtely with stony square and rounde, That in this world was to it noon lyche	soil strewn level as a line
550	Of werkmanship nor of bildyng riche Nor of crafe of coryous masounry. I can no termys to speke of gemestrye; Wherfore as now I muste hem sette asyde, For douteles I radde never Euclide	elegant masonry I know for now read
555	That the maister and the foundour was Of alle that werkyn by squyre or compas Or kepe her mesour by level or by lyne; I am to rude clerly to diffyne Or to discribe this werk in every parte	square too unlearned
560	For lak of termys longyng to that arte. For I dar wel of trouthe affermyn here, In al this world ne was ther never pere Unto this cité, and write it for a sothe.	pertaining to affirm equal truth

Troy Book

- As in this boke my mayster Guydo doth.
 565 And that it myght in prosperité,
 In hyghe honour and felicité,
 From al assaut perpetuelly contane,
 It reyzed was in worship of Neptune
 And namyd Troye, as it was aforn,
 570 Lyche the firste that was thorough Grekis born.
 The lenthe was, shortly to conclude,
 Thre dayes journé, lyche the latitude,
 That never I herd make mencioune
 Of swiche another of fundacioun
 575 So huge in compas nor of swiche larges,
 Nor to counte so passyng of fayrnes,
 So edyfied or lusty to the syght.
 And, as I rede, the walles wern on highte
 Two hundred cubites, al of marbil gray,
 580 Maskowed withoute for sautis and assay;¹
 And it to make more plesaunt of delyt,
 Among the marbil was alabaster white
 Meynt in the walles, rounde the toun aboute,
 To make it schewe withinne and withoute
 585 So fresche, so riche, and so delitable,
 That it alone was incomperable
 Of alle cités that any mortal man
 Sawe ever yit sithe the world began.
 And at the corner of every wal was set
 590 A crowne of golde with riche stony fret
 That schone ful bright ageyn the sonne schene;
 And every tour bretensed was so cleme
 Of chose stoon that wer nat fer asondre,
 That to beholde it was a verray wonder.
 595 Therto this cité compassed enviroun
 Hadde sexe gatis to entre into the toun:
 The first of al and strengest eke with al,
 Largest also and most principal,
 Of myghty bildynge allone peerles,

endare

built

before

Like; lost

in circuit; size

reckon

were in height
cubits (c. 300 feet)

Mixed

incomparable

since

adorned

shone; sun's shining

furnished with battlements

chosen; apart

circled around

so

unparalleled

¹ With openings to the outside for flinging/assault or probes

Book 2

- 600 Was by the kyng callyd Dardanydes;
 And in story, lyche as it is fownde,
 Tymbria was named the secounde;
 And the thridde callyd Helyas; was called
 The fourte gate hight also Cethas;
- 605 The fyfte Troians; the syxt Anthonydes,
 Strong and myghty bothe in werre and pes,
 With square toures set on every syde.
 At whos corners, of verray pompe and pride,
 The werkmen han with sterne and fel visages, true glory
 610 Of riche entaille, set up gret ymages
 Wrought out of ston, that never ar like to fayle,
 Ful coriouly enarmed for batayle.
 And thorugh the wal, her fomen for to lette,
 At every tour wer grete gunnys sette their foes to hinder
 615 For assault and sodeyn aventurys;
 And on toureit is wer reyssed up figurys
 Of wylde bestis, as beris and lyouns,
 Of tigers, bores, of serpentys and dragouns
 And hertis eke with her brode hornes, catapaults
 620 Olyfauntes and large unicormes,
 Buglis, bolys, and many grete grifounes,
 Forged of brasse, of copur and latoun,
 That cruelly by sygnes of her facys
 Upon her fooun made fel manacys. assaults; events
 625 Barbykans and bolewerkys huge
 Afors the toun made for highe refuge,
 Yiffe nede were, erly and eke late;
 And portecolys stronge at every gate,
 That hem that nat non assailyng charge; turrets
 630 And the lowkis thikke, brode, and large,
 Of the gatys al of yoten bras;
 And withinne the myghty schittynge was
 Of strong yrne barres square and rounde
 And gret barrerys picched in the grounde bears
 635 With huge cheynes forged for diffence,
 Whiche nolde breeke for no violence,
 That hard it was thorugh hem for to wynne.
 And every hous that was bilt withinne, harts
Elephants
Wild oxen, bulls
Latten (brass-like alloy)
foes; evil threats
Double towers over gates; ramparts
Before; /were/ made; shelter
If
portcullises (iron grating)
dissuade (see note)
bars and bolts
cas
inside; shutting
iron
barriers
defense
would not
to force one's way
inside

Troy Book

- Every paleys, and every mancoun
640 Of marbil werne thoroughout al the toun,
Of crafty bildyng and werkyn most roial.
And the heght was of every wal
Sixty cubites from the grounde accountid;
measured
And ther was non that other hath surmountid
exceeded in height
645 In the cité, but of on heght alyche,
one same height
In verray sothe, bothe of pore and riche,
That it was harde of highe estat or lowe
Hous or palys ascunder for to knowe,
distinguish from one another
So egaly of tymbre and of stoon
650 Her housis wern reysed everychon.
were each raised (built)
And if I schulde rehersen by and by
recite
The korve knottes by crafte of masounry,
carved knobs
The fresche enbowyng with vergis right as linys, arches; shafts of columns straight
And the vowing ful of babewynes.
vaulting; grotesque figures
655 The riche koynynge, the lusty tablementis,
corner work; pleasant cornices
Vynettis rennyng in the casementis;
Ornamental leaves; hollow mouldings
Though the termys in Englisch wolde ryme,
account for them
To rekne hem alle I have as now no tyme
chosen for the occasion
Ne no langage pyked for the noays,
subtle
660 The sotil joynymg to tellen of the stonyis,
joints; bright
Nor how thei putten in stede of morter
In the joynury copur gilt ful clere
To make hem joyne by level and by lyne
reflect off
Among the marbil, freschely for to schyne
665 Agein the sonne, whan his schene lyght
Smote in the gold that was borayd bright.
To make the werke gletere on every syde.
And of the toun the stretis large and wyde
Wer by crafte so prudently provided
burnished
670 And by werkemen sette so and devided
That holsum eyr amyddis myght enspire
Erly on morwe to hem that it desyre;
And Zephirus, that is so comfortable
For to norysche thinges vegetable,
advantageous
675 In tyme of yere thoroughoute every strete,
With sagred flavour, so lusty and so swete,
Most plesantly in the eyr gan smyte,
lively
penetrate

Book 2

	The cytezeyns only to delyte,	inhabitants
	And with his brethe hem to recomfort,	refresh
680	Whan thei list walke hem silven to disport.	wished; entertain
	And thorough the toun by crafty purviaunce,	arrangement
	By gret avys and discret ordynaunce,	plan; disposition
	By compas cast and squared out by squires,	compass; carpenter's squares
	Of pulched marbil upon strong pilleris	polished; pillars
685	Devised wern, longe, large, and wyde,	
	In the frountel of every stetis syde	façade
	Fresche alures with lusty highe pynacles	covered passages; turrets
	And moustryng outward riche tabernacles,	outward facing; shrines
	Vowted above like reclinatories,	Vaulted; canopied beds (see note)
690	That called were deambulatories,	covered walks
	Men to walke togydre tweine and tweyne	two by two
	To kepe hem drie whan it dide reyne	
	Or hem to save from tempest, wynde, or thonder.	
	Yif that hem list schrowde hem silve therunder.	protect
695	And every hous cured was with led;	roofed
	And many gargoyl and many hidous hed	gargoyle
	With spoutis thorough and pipes as thei ought	
	From the stonwerke to the canel raught,	masonry; gutter extended
	Voyding filthes low into the grunde	Empying
700	Thorough gratis percid of yren percid rounde;	gratings perforated; iron punctured
	The stetis paved bothe in lengthe and bredē	breadth
	In cheker wyse with stony white and rede.	Like checkerboard
	And every craft that any maner man	kind of
	In any lond devise or rekene can	imagine; name
705	Kyng Priamus, of highe discreciooun,	sound judgment
	Ordeyned hath to dwellyn in the toun	Decreed
	And in stetis severyd her and yoonder,	separated
	Everyche from other to be sette asonder	apart
	That thei myght for more comodite	convenience
710	Eche be hymsilfe werke at liberte:	
	Goldsmythes first; and riche jewellers;	jewelers
	And by hemself crafty browdereris;	themselves; embroiderers
	Wevers also of wolne and of lyne,	woolen; linen
	Of cloth of gold, damaske, and satyn.	silk cloth

Troy Book

- 715 Of welwet, cendel, and double samyt eke,¹ wish
And every clothe that men list to seke;
Smythes also that koude forge wele battle ax
Swerdis, pollex, and speris scharp of stele, maim
Dartis, daggeris, for to mayme and wounde,
720 And quarel hedis scharp and square grounde. crossbow bolts; pointed (see note)
Ther wer also crafty armoureris,
Bowyers, and fast by flescheris, Bowmakers; arrow makers
And swyche as koude make schafies pleym, could; smooth
And other eke that dide her besy peyn effort
725 For the werre to make also trappuris, trappings for horses
Bete baners and royal cote armuris, Pound; sarcoats
And by devise stondardis and penowns, banners; pennons
And for the felde fresche and gay gytounis, small standards
And every crafte that may reckned be, mentioned
730 To telle shortly, was in this cité.
And thorugh this town, so riche and excellent, middle
In the myddes a large river went, convenience
Causyng to hem ful gret commodité;
The whiche on tweyne hath partid the cité,
735 Of cours ful swyft, with fresche stremys clere; it was named; inform
And highte Xanctus, as Guydo doth us lere.
And as I rede, that upon that flood, many a mill
On eche asyde many myle stood,
Whan nede was her grayn and corn to grinde,
740 Hem to sustene, in storie as I fynde. plentiful
This river eke, of fyse ful plenteuous, ingenious
Devided was by werkmen corious marchless planning
So craftely, thorugh castyng sovereyne,
That in his course the stremys myght atcynam
745 For to areche, as Guydo doth conjecte, be able; conjecture
By archis strong his cours for to reflecte curves; divert
Thorugh condut pipis, large and wyde withal, water pipes
By certeyn meatis artificial, channels
That it made a ful purgacioun purification
750 Of al ordure and fylthes in the toun, refuse

¹ Of velvet, sendal (thin, rich silken material), and double fine silken cloth also

Book 2

- Waschynge the streys as thei stod a rowe
 And the goteris in the erthe lowe,
 That in the cité was no filthe sene;
 For the canel skoured was so clene
 755 And devoyded in so secré wyse
 That no man myght espien nor devyse
 By what engyn the filthes, fer nor ner,
 Wern bren away by cours of the ryver —
 So covertly everything was cured.
- 760 Wherby the toun was utterly assured
 From engenderyng of al corrupcion,
 From wikked eyr and from infeccion,
 That causyn ofte by her violence
 Mortalitē and gret pestilence.
- 765 And by example of this flode ther was
 Made Tibre at Rome and wrought by Eneas,
 The whiche also departeth Rome on two,
 Myn auctor seith, I not wher it be so.
 And to enabite this royal chef cité
 770 Kyng Priam hath aboute in the contré
 Made for to serche with al his hool entent
 And in provinces that werne adjacent,
 In borwys, townys, and in smale villages,
 Igadred out of al maner ages,
 775 And of thropis folkys ful divers;
 And swiche as wern vacaunt and dispers
 Aboute Troye in many regioune;
 He maked bath to entre into the toun
 Gret multitude, what of yong and olde,
 780 It to eshabite, as ye han herde me tolde.
 And hem that wern afore to hym foreyns
 He hath in Troye maked citezeyns,
 Ful discretly, liche as it is founde.
 And whan thei gan with peple to abounde,
 785 Kyng Priamus of highe affeccion
 After the bildyng of this myghty toun
 Hath in his hert caught a fantasie
 His newe cité for to magnyfye.
 And it to put the more in remembraunce
- all together*
- gather*
- discharged; hidden*
- device*
- producing*
- do not know whether*
- populate*
- boroughs*
- Gathered from*
- hamlets*
- dispersed*
- strangers*
- prudently*
- glorify*

Troy Book

790	He cast fully to do some observaunce To myghty Mars, sterne and ferse of hewe; And specialy with certeyn pleies newe. On horse and fote, in many sondry wyse, To yeve his men in knyghthod exercysse,	color games
795	Everyche to putten other at assaye In justis, bordis, and also in tornay, To preve her force whan thei hadde mete. The whiche pleies wer fondid first in Crete, And in that lond of highte and lowe estat	to the test tilting tournament chance games
800	In Martys honour thei wer dedicate. And in palestre at wakys on the nyght Wer other pleies men t'assay her myght, Only on fote with many solil poynyt; And some of hem wer makyd and anoynt;	Mars's athletic practice fields; watcher test much subtlety covered with oil prize
805	To wymne a prys thei dide her ful entent. And ther was founde by clerkys ful prudent Of the ches the pleye most glorious, Whiche is so solil and so meruelous That it wer harde the mater to discryve;	chess (see note)
810	For thoughe a man stodid al his lyve, He schal ay fynde dyvers fantasys Of wardys makynge and newe juparties: Ther is therin so gret diversité. And it was first founde in this cité	studied ideas protective moves; problems
815	Duryng the sege, liche as seyth Guydo; But Jacobus de Vitriaco Is contrarie of oppymoun: For, like as he makyth mencious And affermeth fully in his avys.	
820	How Philometer, a philysofre wys, Unto a kyng, to stynte his cruelté, Fond first this pleie and made it in Caldé; And into Grece from thense it was sent, Also in Troye by gret avysement	stop originated; Chaldea
825	The pleye was first founde of dees and tables And of castynge the chaunces deceyvables, That han be cause ofte of gret debat: For yif that on be nowe fortunat	dice; backgammon deceptive one

Book 2

- To wynne a while be favour of his chance,
830 Or he be war be sodeyn variaunce *by*
Unhappely he is putte abak *is overthrown*
And another, that stood upon the wrak *was near ruin*
And of losse was plounched in distresse,
Thei reyzed han unto hyghe ryches;
835 Gladnes of on is to another rage. *one*
Adevaunte, hasard, and passage — *(see note)*
Yif on have joye, another suffereth wo,
Liche as the bonys renne to and fro; *dice*
An hundrid sythe in a day thei varie, *times*
840 Now blaundisschyg and now thei be contrarie; *favorable*
No man with hem assured is in joye.
And first also I rede that in Troye
Wer song and rad lusty fresche comedies
And other dites that called be tragedies. *verse compositions*
845 And to declare schortly in sentence
Of bothe two the final difference:
A comedie hath in his gynnyng,
At prime face, a maner compleynyng
And afterward endeth in gladnes;
850 And it the dedis only doth expres
Of swiche as ben in povert plounched lowe; *poverty*
But tragicidie, whoso list to knowe,
It begynneth in prosperite
And endeth ever in adversite;
855 And it also doth the conquest trese
Of riche kynges and of lordys grete,
Of myghty men and olde conquerouris,
Whiche by fraude of Fortunys schowris *over*
Ben overcast and whelmed from her glorie. *thrown*
860 And whilom thus was halwed the memorie
Of tragedies, as bokis make mynde;
Whan thei wer rad or songyn, as I fynde,
In the theatre ther was a smal auter *altar*
Amyddes set that was half circuler,
865 Whiche into the est of custom was direcste; *ear*
Upon the whiche a pulpet was erecte,
And therin stod an awacien poete

Troy Book

- For to reberse by rethorikes swete *in elegant expressions*
The noble dedis that wer historial
870 Of kynges, princes for a memorial *record*
And of thes olde, worthi emperours,
The grete emprises eke of conquerours,
And how thei gat in Martis highe honour
The laurer grene for fyn of her labour.
875 The palme of knyghthod diservid by old date *undertakings also*
Or Parchas made hem passyn into fate.
And after that with chere and face pale,
With stile enclymed gan to turne his tale,
And for to syng after al her loos *isarel as a reward for their*
880 Ful mortally the stroke of Antropos,
And telle also, for al her worthihede,
The sodeyn brekyng of her lives thredes:
How pitously thei made her mortal ende
Thorough fals Fortune, that al the world wil schende; *Before*
885 And howe the fyn of al her worthines *reputation*
Endid in sorwe and highe distresse
By compassyng of fraude and fals tresoun,
By sodeyn mordre or vengaunce of poysoun,
Or conspiringe of fretyng fals envye; *destroy*
890 How unwarly that thei dide dye;
And how her renoun and her highe fame
Was of hatrede sodeynly made lame;
And how her honour drowe unto decline;
And the meschef of her unhappy fyne; *intent*
895 And how Fortune was to hem unsweite —
Al this was tolde and rad of the poete.
And whil that he in the pulpit stood
With dedly face al devoide of blood,
Singinge his dites with Muses al torrent, *corrosive*
900 Amydde the theatre schrowdid in a tent
Ther cam out men gastful of her cheris,
Disfigurid her facis with viseris,
Pleying by signes in the peoples sight,
That the poete songon hath on hight; *approached*
905 So that ther was no maner discordaunce
Atwen his dites and her contenaunce: *death*
verses; torn furiously
dreadful; expression
visors (see note)
facial expressions

Book 2

- For lik as he alofte did expresse
 Wordes of joye or of hevynes,
 Meving and cher, bynethe of hem pleying *Movement; facial expression*
 910 From point to point was alwey answering.
 Now trist, now glad, now hevy, and now light,
 And face chaunged with a sodeyn sight,
 So craftily thei koude hem transfigur.
 Conformyng hem to the chaunteplure, *mixture of joy and sadness*
 915 Now to syng and sodeinly to wepe,
 So wel thei koude her observaunces kepe.
 And this was doon in April and in May,
 Whan blosmys new bothe on busche and hay *hedges*
 And flouris fresche gynne for to springe;
 920 And the briddis in the wode syng
 With last surprised of the somer sonne,
 Whan the pleies in Troye wer begonne
 And in theatre halowed and yholde. *sanctified; performed*
 And thus the rytt of tragedies olde
 925 Priamus the worthi kyng began.
 Of this mater no more telle I can.
 But I wil farthe of this story wryte
 And on my maner boistusly endyte, *roughly compose*
 How Priamus was passyng diligent,
 930 Right deasyrous, and inwardly fervent,
 Yif he myght among his werkes alle
 To bilde a paleys and a riche halle *palace*
 Whiche schulde ben his chose chef dongon,
 His royal se and sovereyn mansioun. *chosen; palace*
 935 And whan he gan to this werke aproche,
 He made it bilde highe upon a roche *ordered it to be built; rock*
 (It for t'assure in his fundacioun)
 And callyd it the noble Ilyoun.
 The sight of whiche, justly circuler, *exactly*
 940 By compas cast rounde as any spere.
 And who that wold the content of the grounde
 Trewly acounten of this place rounde
 In the theatre he most first entre,
 Takynge the lyne that kerveth thorugh the centre
 945 By gemetrie, as longeth to that art.

Troy Book

	And treblid it with the seventhe part; He fynde myght by experience The mesour hool of the circumference, What lond also withinne the stronge wal	<i>multiplying it by three and one seventh</i>
950	Contened was pleymlly eke with al — The creste of whiche, wher it lowest was, Hadde in hight ful sise hundred pas, Bilt of marbil, ful royal and ful strong.	
	And many other riche stoon among;	
955	Whos touris wern reyzed up so highe That thei raght almost unto the skye; The werk of whiche no man myght amende. And who that list by grecis up ascende,	<i>built</i> <i>extended</i> <i>improve</i> <i>stairs</i>
	He myghte seen in his inspeccions	
960	To the boundis of many regionis And provincys that stond rounde aboute. And the wallys, withinne and withoute, Endelong with knottis grave clene. ¹	<i>limits</i>
	Depeynt with azour, gold, ginopre, and grene,	<i>cinnabar</i>
965	That verrailly, whan the sonne schon, Upon the gold meyns among the stoon, Thei yaf a light withouten any were As Phebus doth in his mydday spere —	<i>mixed</i> <i>wire</i>
	The werke of wyndowe and fenestral, Wrought of berel and of clere cristal.	<i>orbit (sphere)</i> <i>window pane</i>
970	And amyddys of this Ylyoun, So fresche, so riche of fundacioun, Whiche clerkys yit in her bokis preyse.	
	Kyng Pryam made an halle for to reyse,	
975	Excellyng alle in bewte and in streathe, The latitude acordyng with the lengthe. And of marbil outward was the wal;	<i>as long as it was wide</i>
	And the tymbre, most nobil in special, Was halfe of cedre, as I reherse can.	
980	And the remenant of the riche eban, Whiche most is able, as I dar speefye,	<i>ebony</i>

¹ Carved all along their length with embossed ornaments [were]

Book 2

- With stoom to joyne by craft of carpentrie;
 For thei of tymbre have the sovereynté.
 And for to telle of this eban tre,
 985 Liche in bokys soothly as I fynde, truly
 It cometh out of Ethiope and Ynde.
 Blak as is get; and it wil wene anoon,
 Whan it is korve, harde as any stoon,
 And evermore lasten and endure,
 990 And nat corrupte with water nor moysture.
 And of his halle ferther to diffyne,
 With stonys square by level and by lyne
 It pavid was with gret diligence
 Of masownry and passyng excellencie.
 995 And al above, reyzed was a sé,
 Ful coriouly of stonys and perré,
 That callid was, as chefe and principal,
 Of the regne the sete moste royal.
 Tofore whiche was set by gret delyt
 1000 A borde of eban and of yvor whyt,
 So egaly joymed and so cleane
 That in the werk ther was no rife sene;
 And sessions wer made on every syde,
 Only the statis by ordre to devyde.
 1005 Eke in the halle, as it was covenable,
 On ech party was set a dormont table
 Of evor eke and this eban tre;
 And even agyn the kynges royal see,
 In the party that was therto contrarie
 1010 Ireeised was by many crafty stayre
 Highe in the halle in the tother syt,
 Right as any lyne in the opposyt,
 Of pured metal and of stonys clere
 In brede and lengthe a ful riche auter.
 1015 On whiche ther stood of figure and visage
 Of massé gold a wonderful ymage,
 To ben honoured in that highe sete,
 Only in honour of Jubiter the grete,
 And the statue, for al his huge weghghe,
 1020 Fiftene cubites compleat was of heighghe.
- jet (lignite); grow
carved
- royal throne (see)
precious jewels
- throne
- table
- perfectly
- places for sitting
estates (classes/ranks)
- appropriate
- table fixed to the floor
- ivory; ebony
- other
- altar
- pure
- Jupiter
- cabler (c. 25 feet); height

Troy Book

- A crowne of gold highe upon his hed
With hevenly saphirs and many rubé red
Fret enviroun with other stonyys of Ynde;
And among wer medled, as I fynde.
- 1025 Whyte perlis — massyf, large, and rounde;
And for most chefe al dirkenes to confounde,
Was a carbocle, kyng of stonyys alle,
To recounfort and gladyn al the halle
And it t'enlumyn in the blake nyght
- 1030 With the freschenes of his rody light.
The valu was therof inestimable
And the riches pleynly incomperable,
For this ymage by divisiooun
Was of schap and of proporcional
- 1035 From hed to foot so maisterly entayled
That in a point the werkeman hath nat failed
It to performe by crafty excellencie.
Whom Priamus with drede and reverence
Honoured hath above the goddys alle.
- 1040 In al meschef to hym to clepe and calle;
For in hym was his hool affeccioun,
His sovereyn trust and devocioun,
His hope also and his affyaunce,
His heille, his joye, and his assuraunce;
- 1045 And his welfare and prosperité
He hath commytted to his deitie,
Wensyng in hert wonder sekely
To ben assured from al meschef therby,
And diffended in eche adversité.
- 1050 And hold his regne in highe felicité,
And in honour continually to schyme,
Whil Jubiter thorough his power divyne
Hym and his hath in proteccional —
This was his trust and ful oppinioun.
- 1055 And thus this werke finally achieved,
Wherof Priam with joye ful releved
That he his cité and noble Ylyoun
Hath fully brought unto perfeccional,
Liche his entent whan that he began.

*Richly adorned
mixed*

carbuncle

its ruddy

in design

beseech

*faith
health*

Thinking: confidently

Book 2

- 1060 And thus Priam, this kyng, this worthi man,
 Ful many day in his newe Troye
 With his liges lad his lyf in joye.
 Wher I hym leve in his royal sete
 Sovereynly regnynge in quiete,
 1065 Procedyng forthe, yif ye liste to here,
 Unto the effect anoon of my matere.

vassals

hear

[*Anger and malice continue to stir Priam to seek vengeance on the Greeks. Though Hector is away, Priam calls a council in Troy to announce his intent to seek revenge. Before starting a war, however, he will seek peaceful redress, and he decides to ask that Hesione be returned. Antenor is chosen as an ambassador; he sails to Thessaly where King Peleus receives him graciously but then orders him to leave when he reveals Priam's demand to return Hesione. Antenor sails next to King Telamon, who holds Hesione. Telamon listens to Antenor's message, derides him and Priam, and orders him to leave. Antenor sails to Achaia where Castor and Pollux angrily reject the demand. His final visit is to Pylos where King Nestor can barely control his anger when Antenor delivers his message. After a terrifying storm at sea, Antenor reaches Troy and reports to Priam. Driven by his anger, Priam decides to risk war by sending a fleet to attack the Greeks (lines 1067-1796).]*

- But seye, Priam, what infelicité,
 What new trouble, what hap, what destynē,
 Or from above what hateful influence
 1800 Descendid is by unwar violence
 To move the — thou canst not lyve in pes!
 What sodeyn sort, what fortune graces,
 What chaunce unhappy, withoute avisenes,
 What wilful lust, what founyd hardynes
 1805 Han putte thi soule out of tranquillité,
 To make the wery of thi prosperitē!
 Whi hast thou savour in bitter more than swete,
 That canst nat lyve in pes nor in quyete?
 Thou art travailed with wilful mocions,
 1810 Overmaystred with thi passiouns,
 For lak of resoun and of highe prudence
 Dirked and blind from al providence,
 And ful bareyn to cast afore and see
 The harmys foloyng of thin adversité!
 1815 Thou wer to slow wisely to consydre;

unhappiness

chance

unforeseen

move you

fate

prudence

foolish

tormented; impaled

Cloaked

dull; judge

Troy Book

- For want of sight made the to slydre,
Thorugh myst of errour falsely to foreye
By pathis wrong from the righte weye.
To voyde resoun of wilful hastynes!
- 1820 Wher was thi guyde, wher was thi maistres
Discreciooun, so prudent and so sad,
Avisely that schulde the have lad
From the tracis of sensualite,
Though it ful selde in manrys power be
- 1825 By suffraunce hymselfen to restreyne,
Whan sodeyn ire doth his herie streyne?
Thou schust aforn bet ha cast thi chaunce,
Wrought by counseil, and nat put in balaunce
Thi sikernes — alas, whi disnow so? —
- 1830 And have symuled somdel of thi wo,
And cast thi chance wel afore the prime
To have forgoten wrongis of old tyme.
And thought aforn in thin adverntence
That ofte falleth in experience
- 1835 That whyles men do most besynes
Vengably her wrongis to redres,
With double harme, or that thei ar ware,
Thei falie ageyn in a newe snare;
And damages that wer foryete clene
- 1840 By fals report of rumour fresche and grene
Renewed ben, thorugh the swifte fame
That fletch so fer to hindre a lordis name;
Namly, whan thei to a purpos wende
Only of hed and se nat to the ende.
- 1845 For of pride and of sodeyn hete
Thei voide hemself out of al quiete,
Adverting nat to wirke avisely
Nor the proverbe that techeth communally,
"He that stant sure, enhast hym not to meve";
- 1850 For yif he do, it schal hym after greve;
And he that walkyth surly on the pleyn,
Yif he stumble, his wit is but in veyn;
But if so be he list of his foly
Be negligent to putte hym wilfully
- slip
go astray
- Wisely; you
lower nature
- have
- feigned
- consideration
- are basien
- before; aware
- forgotten entirely
- rumor
takes to flight; slander
- intention suppose
- carelessly
- favor
- withdraw themselves from
- Considering; prudently
- hasten him; move
- surely
- wishes

Book 2

- | | | |
|------|---|---|
| 1855 | In aventure and of hymself ne reche
T'eschewen perel, I hold he be a wroche,
For soothly, Priam, thou wer to rekles
For to comyete thi quiete and thi pes
So dredfully, duryng by no date, | <i>take heed</i>
<i>peril</i>
<i>too</i> |
| 1860 | To cruel Fortune or to fikel Fate;
Whos maner is of custom comounly
That whan a man trusteth most sovereynly
On this goddesse, blind and ful unstable,
Than sche to hym is most deceyveable, | |
| 1865 | Hym to abate from his royal stalle,
And sodeynly to make hym doan to falle,
And with a trip throwe hym on the bake —
Who that geynstryveth schal have litel tak.
Sche is so sleighty with hir gynny snare | <i>cast down; station</i> |
| 1870 | That sche can make a man from his welfare
With hir panter, that is with fraude englued,
Whan he lest weneth for to be remewed.
Therfor, no man have noon affyance,
In Fortune nor in hir variaunce; | <i>resist; power of resistance</i>
<i>tricky; cunning</i>

<i>set</i>
<i>least expect</i>
<i>trust</i> |
| 1875 | Ne late no wight his ese more jupart —
List that the pleye wil afterward departe —
To turne his chaunce outhier to wel or wo:
For selde in oon sche doth the gamen go,
As ye may se be example of Priamus | <i>let; person; risk</i>
<i>Lest; be stopped</i>
<i>happiness or grief</i>
<i>seldom; lets an undertaking go</i> |
| 1880 | That of foly is so desyrous
To wirke of hede and folwe his ounе wille,
To trouble, alias, the calm of his tranquille —
As in this boke hereafter schal be founde —
Hym and his cité platly to confounde | |
| 1885 | And outhery to his confusiouн;
That afterward by long successiouн
It schal be rad in story and in fable
And remembred with dites deliyable
To do plesaunce to hem that schal it here: | <i>plainly to raise</i>

<i>read</i>
<i>verses</i> |
| 1890 | That be example thei may be war and lere
Of hasty lust or of volunté
To gynne a thing which in nonsureté
Dependeth ay, as strif, werre, and debate; | <i>will</i>
<i>uncertainty</i> |

Troy Book

- For in swiche pley unwarly cometh chekmate; unexpectedly
 1895 And harme ydone to late is to amende,
 Whos fyn is ofte other than thei wende — suppose
 In this story as ye schal after seen.
 And late Priam alwey your merour ben, pattern
 Hasty errour be tymes to correcte.
 1900 For I anoon my poynTEL wil directe pen
 After the maner of his tracis rude its crude verses
 Of this story the remnaunte to conclude.

[*Priam summons lords from every part of the town to a parliament at which he discloses the Greeks' rejection of Antenor's mission. He reminds his men of the need for unity and proposes to send a force by ship to attack Greek towns and lay waste to their fields. Mindful of Fortune's instability, he thinks it may now be time for her to favor the Trojans over the Greeks who have been lifted up so high. Priam then recesses parliament and calls for his sons to gather in council, where he can reveal his intention to seek vengeance for the death of their ancestors, the destruction of Old Troy, and the outrage to Hesione. He calls first on Hector to carry out his purpose, and Hector answers with soft, courteous speech (lines 1903-2182).]*

- "Myn owne lord and my fader dere,
 Benignely yif ye list to here, if you wish
 2185 After the force and the grete myght
 And the somme of naturis right,
 Whiche everything by kynde doth constreyne whole
 In the boundis of hir large cheyne,
 It fityng is, as sche doth enspire, keep in bounds
 2190 And acordyng that every man desyre
 Of wrongis don to han amendement
 And to hir law right convenient;
 Namly, to swiche that with nobilité
 Kynd hath endewed and set in highe degré; Nature; invested
 2195 For to swiche gret repref is and schame
 Whan any wrong be do unto her name;
 For eche trespass mote consydered be,
 Justly mesurid after the qualité
 Of hym that is offendid and also
 2200 After the persone by whom the wrong is do;
 Be it in werre, in contek, or debate. war; strife

Book 2

- For gretter gref is to highe estate
 To suffre an harme, of cas or aventure.
 Or any wrong unjustly to endure.
- 2205 Or injuries compassed of malys
 Is more offence by discret avys
 To hem that ben famous in manhood,
 Renomed, and born of gentyl blood,
 Than to swiche on that holde is but a wreche.
- 2210 Wherfore, we most gretily charge and reche
 Only of knyghthod oure worship for to eke,
 Of wrongis don amendis for to seke,
 Oure staat consydered and oure highe noblesse
 And in what plyte we stonde of worthines,
- 2215 Whan that bestis of resoun rude and blinde
 Desire the same by instynt of kynde.
 And for my part trusteth in certeyn,
 Ye have no sone that wolde halfe so feyn
 Upon Grekis avenged ben as I:
- 2220 For here my trouth I seye yow feithfully,
 For ire of hem I brenne as doth the glede;
 I thurst her blood more than other mede;
 For right as I eldest am of age
 Among your sonys, so am I most with rage
- 2225 Ifret withinne, justly of knyghthood,
 With my right hand to schede the Grekys blod,
 As thei schal fynd paraunter or thei wene:
 Whan tyme cometh, the sothe schal be sene.
 But first I rede, wysely in your mynde
- 2230 To cast aforn and leve nat behynde,
 Or ye begynne, discretly to adverie
 And prudently consyderen in your herte
 Al, only nat the gynnng but the ende
 And the myddes, what weie thei wil wende,
- 2235 And to what fyn Fortune wil hem lede:
 Yif ye thus don, amys ye may nat spedie.
 For that counsell in myn oppinioun
 Is worthi litel by discreciooun
 To have a pris that cast nat by and by
- 2240 The course of thinges by ordre ceryously,
 ill will
 on competent opinion
 Renowned
 one
 are anxious
 increase
 state
 unskilled
 instinct
 glad
 barn; hot coal
 anything else
 Tormented
 before they think
 advise
 reflect
 not only
 end
 benefit
 one after another

Troy Book

- What weye thei trace to wo or to delite;
For though a gynnyng have his appetite,
Yet in the ende, pleynly this no fable,
Ther may thing folwe whiche is nat commendable. *invented story*
- 2245 For what is worthe a gynnyng fortunat,
That causeth after strif and gret debat? *later; contention*
Wherfor in sothe principles are to dredre, *truth; beginnings; to be feared greatly*
But men wel knowe what fym schal succede;
For a gynnyng with grace is wel fortunyd, *gives good fortune*
2250 Whan ende and myddes aliche ben contunyd. *remain alike*
But whan that it in wele ne may contene,
It is wel bet bytymes to abutene *persist*
Than put in doste that stant in sureté;
For whoso doth hath ofte adversité. *better*
- 2255 But humblye to your estat royal
Of hert I praye, lat nat offende at al,
That I am bolde to seie my mocion; *express my view*
For in good feith, of noon entencious
I no thing mene yow to don offence; *in no way*
- 2260 But only this — that your magnificence
Procede nat of hede wilfully *without care*
Ne that no spirit you meve folyly
To gymne thing that after wil you schende, *begin; bring to ruin*
For lak that ye se nat to the ende
- 2265 Nor taken hede in youre adverstence *judgment*
To consydere by good providence
How Grekis han in her subjeccoun
Europ and Aufrik with many regioun
Ful large and wyde, of knyghthod most famus.
- 2270 And of riches wonder plenteuous, *abundant*
Right renomed also of worthines. *renowned*
With your support that I dar wel expresse,
Ful perious is displesse hem or disturbe;
- 2275 For yif that we oure quiete now pertourbe, *if*
Whiche stant in pes, gretly is to dredre;
For though al Asye help us at our nede,
Yif it be lokid on every part aright,
Thei be nat egal unto Grekis myght;
- And though also myn aunte Exioun *Hesione*

Book 2

- 2280 Ageyn al right be holde of Thelamoun,
It is nat good for bir redempcioun
To putte us alle to destruccioum.
I rede nat to bien bir half so dere;
For many of us in hap that sitten here
2285 And other mo myghten for bir sake
Deth underfonge and an ende make;
Whiche were no wisdam, liche as semeth me.
And it may happen also how that sche
In schort tyme hir fatal cours schal fyne,
2290 Whan Antropos the threde atwo schal twyne.
What had we wonne thanne and sche wer go
But enmyté, thought, and sorow and wo,
Slaughter of oure men, deth and confusioum!
Wherfore I rede, by dissymulacioun,
2295 Withoute more that we oure wo endure
And nat to putte oureself in aventure —
This hold I best — and wirkyn as the wyse.
But douteles for no cowarddyse
I seie nat this in youre highe presence.
2300 But for cause I hold it no prudence
To Fortune, ful of doublines
(Sith we be sure) to putte oure sikernes:
This al and som, th'effect of al my wille."
And with that worde Hector held hym stille.
2305 And whan Hector by ful highe prudence
Concluded hath the fyn of his sentence,
Ful demurly he keptie his lippis cloos.
And therwithal Paryn up aroos
And gan his tale thus afore the kynge.
2310 "My lord," quod he, "so it be lykymg
To youre highnes for to taken hede,
As me semeth, we schuld litel drede
In knyghtly wyse for to undirtake
Upon Grekis a werre for to make,
2315 Al attonys her pride to confounde;
Sith that we passyngly habounde
Of chivalrie here withinne our toun
And have plenté and pocessioum

Telamon
deliveranceadvise; redeem her
by chance
more
receiveend
in two; part
if she
care

feigning

at risk

duplicity
Seeing that; securityend
closed

destroy

Troy Book

- 2320 Of eche thing that may to werre aveile,
Stuf in oursilf and ryal appareile
Of al that longeth to assautis marcial,
And with al this, more in special,
Help and socour of many regious
With us to werke to her destruccioune,
- 2325 The pompe and pride manly to abate
And of Grekis the malis for to mate;
For al that thei of herte ben so stoute,
Me semeth schortly that we dar nat doute
Nor on no part for to be dismayed.
- 2330 Wherfor I rede, lat nat be delaied
Our schippes first redy for to make;
And I myself wil fully undirtake,
So it to you be lykyng and plesance,
Of this emprise boolly the governaunce,
- 2335 And yow assuren and putte in certeyn
Exyona to recure ageyn.
And in what forme that it schal be wrought
I have a weye founden in my thought
That likly is hereafter to be don.
- 2340 Whiche unto yow I wil declare anon.
First, I have cast with strong and mighty hond
For to ravysche som lady of that land
Of heyghe estat, and make no taryng.
And myghtily into Troye hir bring.
- 2345 Maugre her myght, for this conclusioun:
That ye may have restitucioun
Be eschange of hir that ye desyre so.
And hereupon schal be no long ado,
I you behete, for al the Grekis strong.
- 2350 And for that I schal yow nat prolonge,
I wil yow seyn excludyng every dout
How this avis schal be brought aboue:
First, how that I schal this purpos fyn
The goddis han thorugh her power devyne
- 2355 Schewed unto me be revelacioun:
For theruppon I had a visioun
But late agoon, as I ley and slepe.
- pertain to
put down
overcome
fear
advise
*Providing it be to your
undertaking*
get back again
determined
carry off
delay
Despite; resistance
promise
expelling
design
accomplish

Book 2

- | | | |
|------|---|------------------------|
| | Unto the whiche, yif ye taken kepe, | <i>heed</i> |
| | Ye may not faile nor be in no dispere | <i>despair</i> |
| 2360 | To han recur of hir that is so faire, | <i>recovery</i> |
| | For whom ye have now so moche care. | |
| | And the maner hol I wil declare | <i>entire</i> |
| | Of this drem to your magnisfcence, | |
| | Yif it so be ye yeve wil credence | <i>If: give</i> |
| 2365 | To my tale; for I schal nat dwelle | <i>Point by point</i> |
| | Ceriously in ordre for to telle | |
| | The trouthe pleyn and no fable feyn | |
| | To yow that ben my lord most sovereyn. | |
| | First, yif that ye remembryen in your mynde, | |
| 2370 | This other day whan I was last in Ynde | |
| | By your avis and commaundement | |
| | For a mater whiche in your entent | |
| | Was specialy had in cherit , | <i>Was dear to you</i> |
| | As it is kouthe atwixe you and me, | <i>known between</i> |
| 2375 | Of whiche I tolke upon me the charge | |
| | In the boundis of that lond ful large, | |
| | The same tyme your desyre to sped — | <i>advance</i> |
| | Whan that Tytan with his bemys rede | <i>beams</i> |
| | From Gemmyny drof his chare of gold | <i>drove; chariot</i> |
| 2380 | Toward the Crabbe for to take his holde, | |
| | Whiche named is the paleys of Dyane, | |
| | The bente mone that wexe can and wane; | <i>curved moon</i> |
| | Whanne halwed is the sonnys stacion | <i>observed; sun's</i> |
| | Nighe the myddes of the moneth of Jun — | <i>Near</i> |
| 2385 | At whiche sesoun erly on a morwe, | |
| | Whan that Phebus to voide myghtes sorwe | <i>to do away with</i> |
| | Doth Pirrous bys waya ageyn up drawe | <i>chariot</i> |
| | And Aurora estward doth adawe, | <i>awake</i> |
| | And with the water of hir teris rounde | |
| 2390 | The silver dewe causeth to abounde | |
| | Upon herbis and on floures soote | |
| | For kyndely norissyng bothe of crop and rote; | |
| | Then out I roos of my bedde anoon | |
| | Ful desyrous on huntyng for to goon, | |
| 2395 | Priked in hert with lusty fresche plesance | <i>Stirred</i> |
| | To do to Love some due observaunce | |

Troy Book

	And Lucyne that day to magnifie, Which callid is lady of venarie; And duely oure rydis to obaerve, Cithera and hire for to serve,	<i>the moon of the chase</i>
2400	I and my feris, oure hertis to releve, Cast us full til it drowe to eve, In the forest to pley us and disport And plesauntly us to recomfort,	<i>Cytherea (Venus) companions</i>
	As it longeth to love of lustines. For thilke day to Venus the goddes Isacrid was by ful gret excellencie, With gret honour and due reverence	<i>Determined; darkness fell pertains</i>
2405	Doon unto hir, bothe of on and alle;	<i>Dedicated</i>
2410	And on a Fryday this aventure is falle, Whan we gan hast us to the wodis grene In hope that day som game for to sene, With gret labour rydying to and fro,	<i>one</i>
	Til we hadde ful many buk and do	<i>buck and doe</i>
2415	By strengthe slaw, as we myght hem fynde, The hert ichasid with houndis and the hynde Thorugh the downys and the dalys lowe, Til brighte Phebus of his dailes bowe	<i>slain</i>
	Amyd the arke was of meridien.	<i>Hart hunted: hind</i>
2420	Whan his hemys ful hore wern and schene, And we most besy wern upon the chas, Than me byfil a wonder divers cas.	<i>dales</i>
	For of fortune it happed sodeynly, Whil I was severyd fro my company	<i>bright</i>
2425	Sool be myself among the holtis hore To fynde game desyrous evermore, Or I was war, thorugh thilke and thinne, A ful gret hert I sawe afore me renne	<i>alone; grey (aged) woods</i>
	Doun by the launde and the walys grene	<i>run</i>
2430	That I in soth myghtee nat sustene, He was so swyft, for to nigh hym ner; Albe that I priked my courser	<i>glade</i>
	Nighe to the deth thorugh many sondri schaw,	<i>Although: spurred</i>
	Out of my sight so fer he gan withdrawe,	<i>thickets</i>
2435	For al that ever that I sewen myght,	<i>follow</i>

Book 2

- That I anoon lost of hym the sight
 In a wode that Idia bare the name.
 And I so feyn gan wesen of that game,
 And myn hors on whiche I dide ryde,
 2440 Fomyng ful whit upon every syde
 And his flankis al with blood disteyned —
 In my pursute so sore he was constreyned
 With my sporis, a sharp and dyed rede —
 After the hert so piked I my stede
 2445 Now up, now doun, with a ful besy thought;
 But my labour availed me right nought,
 Til at the last among the bowes glade
 Of aventure he caught a plesaunt slade,
 Ful smothe and pleyn and lusty for to sene
 2450 And soft as welwet was the yonge grene —
 Wher fro myn hors I alight as faste
 And on a bowe I his reyne cast,
 So feynt and maat of werynes I was
 That I me laide doun upon the gras,
 2455 Upon a brink, schortly for to telle,
 Besyde a river and a cristal welle.
 And the water, as I reberse can,
 Like quiksilver in his stremys ran,
 Of whiche the gravel and the brighte stoon
 2460 As amy gold ageyn the sonne schon.
 Wher right anon for verray werynes
 A sodeyn sleep gan me so oppresse
 That fro tyme that I first was born
 I never was aslepe so toform;
 2465 And as I ley I hadde a wonder swenvene.
 For methought highe doun fro hevene
 The wynged god wonderful of cher,
 Mercuryus, to me dide appere,
 Of whom I was first somdel aferde;
 2470 For he was girt with his crokyd swerde,
 And with hym brought also in his honde
 His sleepy yerde, pleyant as a wonde,
 With a serpent goyng enviroun.
 And at his fete also lowe adoun
- weary became
discolored
driven
By chance; reached; dell
velvet
exhausted; weariness
bank
true weariness
dream
Mercury
somewhat
equipped
stick; wand
around

Troy Book

2475	Me sempte also that ther stood a cok, Singyng his houris trewe as any clok. And to the mouthe of this god Mercurie Wer pipes sette that songe wonder merye. Of whiche the soote sugred armonye	<i>It appeared to me</i>
2480	Made in myn eris swiche a melodye That me sempte tho in myn avis I was ravaished into paradys. And thus this god, divers of liknes, More wonderful than I can expresse,	<i>sweet</i> <i>ears</i> <i>opinion</i> <i>carried off</i> <i>strange in appearance</i>
2485	Schedewd hymself in his apparence Liche as he is discribed in Fulgence, In the book of his <i>Mythologier</i> , Wher be rehersed many poyses And many liknes, liche as ye may se.	<i>Fulgentius</i> <i>Mythologies (see note)</i> <i>poetic narratives</i> <i>symbolic meanings</i>
2490	And for to take the moralité, His longe yerde, right as is a lyne, Whiche on no syde wrongly may decline, Signifieth the prudent governaunce Of discret folke that thorugh her purviaunce	<i>long stick, tree</i>
2495	Cast a perel or that it befallie; And his pipes, loude as any schallie, That thorugh musik ben entuned trewe Betokeneth eke, with many lusty hewe, The sugred dites by gret excellencie	<i>Foresee peril before</i> <i>shown (instrument like oboe)</i>
2500	Of rhetorik and of eloquence, Of whiche this god is sovereyn and patroum; And of this cok the soote lusty soun That justly kepereth the houris of the night Is outerly th'avise inward sight	<i>Signifies also</i> <i>sweet verses</i> <i>rhetoric</i>
2505	Of swiche as voide by waker diligencie Oute of her court slouthe and negligence; And his swerd, whiche croketh so ageyn, That is nat forget nor ymade in veyn, Is to revoke to the righte weye	<i>sweet lively sound</i>
2510	Swiche as wrongly fro trouthe do surveye; And the serpent, whiche that I of tolde, Whiche wrinkled is, as ye may beholde, Upon the yerde and aboute goth.	<i>absolutely the guide for insight</i> <i>such; vigilant</i> <i>curves</i> <i>bring back</i> <i>go astray</i> <i>coiled</i>

Book 2

- | | | |
|------|--|-----------------------------|
| 2515 | Signefieth that falshede wood and wroth
Lith in aweyt by many sleighty weyc,
With his gynnes trouthe to werreye.
And this god, of eloquence kynge,
Brought with hym eke in his commyng
Cithera, whom loveres serve, | <i>mad; angry</i> |
| 2520 | Juno, and Pallas, that callid is Minerve.
And this Venus, her legis to delite,
Aboute hir hed hadde dowes white,
With loke benigne and eyen deboneyre,
Ay flikeryng with snowy wyngys fayre, | <i>deceits; attack</i> |
| 2525 | For to declare schortly in sentence
By the dowes verray innocence
Of hem in love that but trouthe mene,
And that her grunde schulde honest be and clent,
Itokenyd is, clerly be witnes, | <i>followers</i> |
| 2530 | Without soylling or any unclennes;
And the fairnes of the roses rede,
That in somer so lustyly do sprede
And in wynter of her colour fade,
Signyfieth the hertly thoughtis glade | <i>doves</i> |
| 2535 | Of yonge folkis that ben amerous,
Fervent in hope, and inly desyrous,
Wham love gynneth in her hertis flour
Til longe proces maketh hem to lour
With the wynter of unweldy age. | <i>eyes mild</i> |
| 2540 | That lust is pallid and dullid with the rage
Of febilnes whan somer is agoon,
As folkys knowe, I trowe mo than on; | <i>inwardly</i> |
| | And therfor Venus fleteth in a se
To schewe the trowble and adversite | <i>look dull and feeble</i> |
| 2545 | That is in love and his stormy lawe,
Whiche is beset with many sturdy wawe,
Now calm, now rowe, whoso taketh hede,
And hope assailed ay with sodeyn drede.
And next Venus, Pallas I behelde, | <i>feeble</i> |
| 2550 | With hir spere and hir cristal schelde
And a raynbowe rounde aboue hir hed,
That of colour was grene, blew, and red; | <i>weakened; onslaught</i> |
| | | <i>floats</i> |
| | | <i>wave</i> |
| | | <i>rough</i> |
| | | <i>shield</i> |

Troy Book

- And aform bir, as I can discryve,
Sche growyng had a grene fresche olyve; olive tree
2555 And therupon with his browes fowle
In the brawnches I sawe sitte an owle.
And first the scheld of Pallas the goddes
Signified, as I can expresse,
In vertu force, by manly highe diffience virtue strong
2560 Agryns vices to maken resistance; Against
And his spere, scharp and kene grounde,
By just rygour was forged to confounde destroy
Hem that be false and to putte abake;
And for that mercy schal medle with the wrak, mingle; vengeance
2565 The schaft in soth schave was ful pleyn, scraped smooth
List merciles that right ne wrought in veyn; Lest
And after werre to make a ful reles
Ther was the olyve that betokneth pea;
The owle also, so odyous at al, blue
2570 That songis singeth at festis funeral
Declareth pleyaly the fya of every glorie
Is only deth, who hath it in memorie;
And the raynbow grene, red, and pers
Signifieth the changis ful divers mixed; woe
2575 That ofte faille in werre and bataille,
Now to wynne and sodcymly to faille,
Now stable as blew, chaunging now as grene.
For Pallas pley is alwey meynt with tene.
And alderlast, as I have in mynde, last of all
2580 With hir nymphes Juno cam behynde,
Whiche of custom, as Fulgence tellis,
Abide in flosis and in depe wellis.
And this Juno, as poetis seyn,
A mayden is and of frute bareyn; offspring
2585 And the pecok to this fresche quene
Isacrid is with his fetheris scheme,
Splayed abrod as a large sail
With Argus eyen enprented in his tail. Spread our stamped
2590 Is the labour that men have for good,
The grete trouble and the besynes

Book 2

- That day and nyght thei suffre for ryches;
 That who that ever in this flodis rowe,
 Lat hym be war, for ay after the flowe
 2595 Of nature, right as it is dewe,
 Folwyng the mone ther mote an ebbe sewe; moon; must an ebb tide follow
 The moste drede is ay upon the falle,
 List Fortune the fresche fetheris pulle
 Of riche folke that schyne in gold so schene,
 2600 Sith sche of chaunge lady is and quene.
 And Argus eyen that ar seite behynde
 In sygard hertis be oft sythes blynde,
 Whiche nat adverte of goodis to the ende,
 That liche an ebbe sodeymly wil wende,
 2605 Whyche thei no thing consydren in her sight;
 For as the faire lusy fetheris bright
 Of a pecok unwarily falle away,
 Right so riches schortly at a day
 Wiln her maister sodeymly forsake,
 2610 Seyn adieu, and her leve take.
 And as Juno bareyn is of frute,
 Right so nakid, bare, and destitute
 Ar thes gredy hertis covetous,
 Whiche to gadre ben so desyrous
 2615 That in nothing can have sufficiunce;
 The fret of drede hem putte in swiche meschaunce. gnawing
 Ymagenyng that the world wil faille;
 And in her fere ageyn the wynd thei saille
 Till attonyng thei mote go ther fro.
 2620 And thus of good ay the fyn is wo,
 Namly of hem that so pynche and spare:
 For this no drede, as clerkis can declare,
 The frute of good is to spende large;
 And who is manful, set but litel charge
 2625 To parte frely his tresour in comounue,
 Whan he discretly seth tyme oportune.
 He hath no joye to put his good in mwe;
 For an hert that fredam list to sewe
 Of gentilnes taketh noon hed thereto.
 2630 And in this wyse, Pallas and Juno
- Lest
miserly
do not foresee the end
in no way
will
fear
end
are miserly and niggardly
he has no scruples
Aiding generosity

Troy Book

- With fresche Venus ben adoun descended,
Liche as I have schortly comprehended,
Under the guying of Mercurius,
Whiche unto me gan his tale thus.
- 2635 "Parys," quod he, "lifte up thin eye and se!
Loo, this goddesses here in noumbre thre,
Whiche fro hevene with her eyen clere
So diversly unto the appere,
- wonderfully
- 2640 Wern at a fest, as I the tellyn schal,
With alle the goddis above celestial
That Jubiter held at his owne borde.
- table
- 2645 Was non absent only save Discord;
And for dispit sche was not ther present,
To be avenged sche sette al hir entent
- 2650 And in hir wittes many weyes sought,
Til at the last evene thus sche wrought,
Of poetis liche as it is tolde:
- apple
- 2655 Sche toke an appli rounde of purid gold
With Greke lettiris graven up and doun
- 2660 Whiche seide thus, in conclusioun.
- given
- Withoute strife that it were yove amou
To the fairest of hem everychon.
- 2665 And of Discord this lady and goddes,
As sche that is of debat maistres,
- mistress
- 2670 Hath this appli, passyng of delit,
Brought to this fest, of malis and despit.
- out of
- 2675 And cast it doun among hem at the bord
With deyvious chere, spekyng not a word;
- 2680 But on hir weye faste gan hir hiye.
- devious
- 2685 And sodeynly so privē gret envie
- basten
- 2690 Into the court this appli hath in brought,
So gret a werre and swiche a contek wrought
- dissension
- 2695 In the hertis of this ilke thre
That after long may not staunched be;
- extinguished
- 2700 Among hemself so thei gan disdeyn
Whiche in bewte was most sovereyn
- 2705 And whiche of hem hath best title of right
For to conquerre this bornyd appli bright.
- burnished
- 2710 And first thei gan thus for bewte strive,

Book 2

- 2670 That for rancour her hertis almost ryve
To wit of right who schuld it first possede —
Loo, yit envye regneth in womanhede,
That on is fayrer than another holde;
For eche woman of hir kynde wolde
- 2675 Have on som part pris above another;
In eche estat, in sooth it is noon other.
And eche of hem in her owne avis
Hath joye in bewte for to han a pris;
For non so foule doth in a myroure prye
- 2680 That sche is feir in hir owne eye.
But liche a fool he hymself doth quite
That awmber yelwe cheseth for the white.
A gowndy eye is deceyved sone,
That any colour cheseth by the mone;
- 2685 For som colour is with fir made fyn,
And som encresid with spicis and with wyn,
With onymenis and confeccions;
And on nyght by false illusiouns
Somme appere wonder fresche and faire,
- 2690 That loke dirke a daylight in the eyre.
Ther is no pref but erly by the morwe
Of swiche as nede no bewte for to borwe
But as Nature hath hirsilf disposed.
Therfore fastyng, or boystis ben unclosyd,
- 2695 Make thi choyse, liche as bit Ovide,
Whan every drogge and pot is set axyde,
List that thou be, after his sentence,
Deceyvid lightly by fals apparence;
For nowadayes swiche craft is ful rife.
- 2700 And in this wyse thus began the stryf
Betwixe Juno, Venus, and Pallas
That be descendid for this soleyn caas,
By on assent, towching her bewte,
The dom therof committed unto the.
- 2705 I speke to the, that callid art Parys,
And holdyn art right prudent and right wys;
Be avysed how thi dom schal fyne;
For thei ne may to nor fro declyne
- split
possess
- preeminence
- opinion
place of honor
peer
- behave
prefers to
bleared
moon
- air
proof
- boxes [of cosmetics] are opened*
- bids
drug
lest
- unexpected happening
one
- you; Paris
- judgement shall end*

Troy Book

- But obeie, alle, by oon assent
Withoute strif to thi jugement.
But herke, frist, or that thou procede,
Of eche of hem whar schal be thi mede;
Considerre aright, and take good hede thereto:
Yif thou the appil graunte unto Juno,
Sche schal the yef plente of riches,
Highe renoun, of fame eke worthines,
With habundaunce of gold and of tresour,
And do the reise to so highe honour
That thou allone alle other schalt excelle
For thi guerdoun, liche as I the telle.
And yif to Pallas, goddesse of prudence,
The liste the fyn conclude of thi sentence
That sche may lady of the appil be,
For thi mede sche schal assure the
That of witte and of sapience
Thou schalt hooly han the excellencie,
And of wisdam and discreciooun,
To discerne by clernes of resoun;
Also fer as Phebus cast his light,
Ther schal nat be a more prudent knyght,
Nor in this world, sith that it began,
Of just report a manlier man,
Nor to thi name noon equipolente.
And yif to Venus of trew and cleane entent
The list to graunt in conclusioun
Of the appil to have pocessioun,
The fresche goddes that sit so highe above
Schal the ensure to have unto thi love
The fairest lady that is or was tofore
Or in this world ever schal be bore;
And in Grece thou schalt hir knyghtly wynne.
Now be avised or that thou begynne
Justly to deme and for nothing spare."
And I anoon gan loken up and stare,
Gretly astoned what me was best to do,
Til at the last I spake Mercurye to,
And seide, certeyn, that I ne wolde there
- first, before
reward (bribe)*
- give you*
- reward*
- You wish*
- reward; you*
- clarity*
- By right account
equal in value*
- ensure that you have*
- before
judge*
- bewildered*

Book 2

- Yevel no dom but thei naked were,
So that I myght have fully liberté
2750 Everyche of hem avisely to se
And comysderen every circumstaunce
Who fairest wer unto my plesaunce
And goodliest, to speke of womonhede,
And after that to my doom procede.
2755 And thei anoon, as ye have herde me seie,
To my desyre mekely gan obeie
In al hast to don her besy cure
Hem to dispoule of clothing and vesture,
Liche as the statut of my dom hem bonde:
2760 In a poynt, thei nolde it not withstonde
That I myght have ful inspeccioune
Of forme and schap and eche proporcional
For to discerne, as I can remembre,
Avisely by ordre every membre
2765 And thanne at erst to jugen after right.
But whanne that I of eche had a sight,
I yaf to Venus the appil right anoon.
Because sche was fairest of echon
And most excellyng, sothly, in bewté,
2770 Most womanly and goodly on to se,
As I dempte pleynly in my sight.
For the stremys of hir eyen bright
Lliche glade and egal evene of light
Wern to that sterre that schewith toward nyght,
2775 Whiche callid is Esperus so schene,
Venus hirsilf, the fresche lusty quene.
The whiche anon, this heavenly emperesse,
After my doom, of hertly highe gladnesse,
That of the appil sche hooly hath the glorie
2780 And wonyn hit justly by victorie
Rejoysched hit more than I can telle,
That sche hir feris in bewté dide excelle.
And sche in hast, of trewe affeccioun,
Concluded bath fully for my guerdoun,
2785 Ful demurly, lowe and nat alofte,
To Mercurye with sobre wordis sofie.
- Give no judgment unless
carefully
was
judgment

exert themselves
Themselves to strip; garments
obliged
refuse

at first
gave; immediately

to look upon
judged
(see note)
Equally

Hesperus; bright

gained
companions
reward

Troy Book

	Devoide bothe of doublnes and slosithe, Liche hit behest holde wil his trouth. And sodeynly without more injurye	duplicity promise wrong
2790	Thei disapered, and the god Mercurie Streight to hevene the righte weye toke; And I anon out of my slepe awoke. Wherof, my lord, whom I most love and drede, Yif ye adverte and wysly taken hede	consider
2795	That this behest, affermyd in certeyn, Was unto me assured nat in veyn Of goodly Venus, liche as I have tolde. Wherfore, I rede ye ben of herte bolde Me for to sende with stroag and myghty hond	promise confirmed advise
2800	Withoutte abood into Grekis lond After the forme that I have yow seyde. And, I hope, ye schal be wel apayde.	delay
	Whan I have sped, as Venus hath behight, And hom retourned with my lady bright:	satisfied promised
2805	So schal ye best, me list nat speke in veym, Beschaunge of hir your suster wynne ageyn, Whom Thelamoun withholden hath so yore. Lo, this is al; I can seye you no more Towching th'effect booly of myn avis."	<i>I do not wish to speak</i> <i>By exchanging</i> <i>for so long</i>
		wholly

[After Paris recounts his dream, Deiphobus speaks in favor of sending him to capture a prisoner to exchange for Hesione, but Helenus, who has the power of prophecy, warns that Troy will be destroyed if Paris is sent. Troilus then speaks in favor of the expedition, urging the Trojans not to rest idly nor to presume to know God's hidden intents. The parliament recesses, and when it resumes the next day the mission is confirmed, despite further warnings by Pentheus and Cassandra. In May, Paris sets out with 3,000 knights and 22 ships. Along the way he happens across Menelaus who is sailing to visit Nestor, but the two proudly sail past each other, neither deigning to greet the other. Paris arrives at the harbor of Cythera, an island sacred to Venus (lines 2810-3434).]

- 3435 Now in this ile of passyng excellencie
Ther was a temple of gret reverence
That bileded was of olde fundacion
And most honoured in that regioune
Thorughoute the lond bothe fer and ner —

Book 2

- 3440 The feste day ay from yer to yet,
 Liche as it fil by revolcioun,
 Repeyryng theder of gret devocioun,
 In honour only of Venus the goddes,
 Whom the Grekis with al her besynes
 Honoured most of every maner age
 With gifites bringyng and with pilgrimage,
 With gret offeryng and with sacrificye,
 As usid was in her paynym wyse.
 For in this phane, as thei knele and wake
 With contrit hert and her prayer make,
 The statue yaf of every questioun
 Pleyn answer and ful solucion,
 With cerymonyes to Venus as thei loute;
 Of everything that thei hadde doute
 Thei hadde ful declaracioun.
 And thus the Grekis upon Cytheroun
 Halwyn this fest with riche and gret array,
 With rydis due, as serforthe as thei may,
 In hope fully the better for to thrive.
- 3450 And of fortune, whan he dide aryve
 Upon the lond by aventure or cas,
 The same tyme this feste halwed was
 Of many Greke commyng to and fro
 From every cost that to the temple go
 On pilgrimage her vowes to acquyte,
 Of the place the reliques to veytie.
 And whan Paris dide this espie,
 He gadred out of his compayne
 The worthiest that he chesen may;
- 3460 And to the temple he taketh the right waye
 Ful wel beseyn and in knyghtly wyse,
 And dide his honour and his sacrificye
 Ful humblyly to the Grekis liche;
 With many nowche and many jouwel riche,
 With gold and silver, stonyys and perré
 He spendeth ther, liche to his degré,
 And quit hym manly in his oblacions;
- 3470 And devoutly in his orisouns
 by nearly repetition
 Returning
 their
 observed; pagan custom
 temple; keep vigil
 bow
 on the island of Cythere
 Observe
 to the extent that
 chance
 country
 fulfill
 visit
 cleas
 precious stones
 prayers

Troy Book

- He hym demeneth, that joye was to se. *behave himself*
- 3480 Now was Parys of passyng gret bewte
Amonges alle that ever werne alyve:
For ther was non that myght with hym strive, *contend*
Troyan nor Greke, to speke of semlyhede,
Wonder fresche and lusty, as I rede,
- 3485 And in his port ful lik a gentil knyght. *bearing*
Of whos persone for to han a sight
Thei gan to prese bothe nyghe and fere,
So ryally he had hym in his gere, *royally*
And coveyte of highe estat and lowe
3490 What he was gretly for to knowe; */they/ desire*
And of his men thei aske besely
Fro when he cam and the cause why
Of his comyng, enquiryng on by on.
But prudently thei kepte hem everychon,
- 3495 That nothing was openly espyed
In her answere; so thei han hem guyed *conducted themselves*
That everything kepid was secrē;
Everyche of hem was so avise; *cautious*
Albe that somme oppenly declare
3500 What that he was and ne list not spare
But tolde pleymly the cause of his commyng
And how Priam, the stronge myghty kyng,
His fader was, most royal of renoun.
And how he cam also for Exyoun. *Hesione*
- 3505 Thus eche of hem gan with other rowne *whisper*
At pryme face whan he cam to towne.
And therupon wer ymagynatyf,
Sore musyng and inquisytf,
Eche with other be suspiciooun
- 3510 Demyng therof liche her opiniooun, *most readily*
And rathest thei that nothing ne knewe,
As folkis doa of thinges that be newe.
And whiles thei of this mater trete
In sondry wyse amoneghe her wordes grete, *novel*
- 3515 The fame of hem gan anonoon atteyne
To the eris of the Quene Eleyne,
Nighe besyde in that regioune.

Book 2

- And whan sche herd be relacions
 And by report of hem that cam bytwene,
 3520 This faire Eleyne, this fresche, lusty quene,
 Anon as sche the sothe undirstood
 Withoute taryng or any more abood
 Sche hasteth hir to this solempnité,
 The fresche folke of Frigye for to se — *Phrygia*
 3525 Wel mor, God wot, in hir entencioum
 To se Parys than for devocioun.
 Under colour of holy pylgrymage
 To the temple sche taketh hir viage
 With gret meyné and ryal apparaille,
 3530 Parys to sen for sche wil nat faille.
 But, O alias, what lusty newe fyre
 Hath hir hert enflawmyd be desyre
 To go to vigiles outhier to spectaclis!
 Noon holynes to beryn of myraclis
 3535 Hath mevid hir, that ther schal befallie;
 But as the maner is of women alle
 To drawe thedir, platly to conclude,
 Where as thei be sure that multitude
 Gadirid is at liberté to se,
 3540 Wher thei may finde opportunyté
 To her desyre, ful narwe thei awaite,
 Now covertly her eyne for to baite
 In place wher as set is her plesaunce,
 Now prively to have her daliiance
 3545 Be som sygne or castyng of an eye
 Or toknes schewyng in herte what thei drye,
 With touche of bondis stole among the pres,
 With arm or foot so cache up in her les
 Whom that hem list, albe he fre or bonde,
 3550 Of nature thei can hym holde on honde —
 Ageym whos sleight availeth wit nor myght:
 For what hem list, be it wrong or right,
 Thei ay achieve, who seyth ye or nay,
 Ageym whos lust diffende him no man may.
 3555 Thus Guydo ay of cursid fals delit
 To speke hem harme hath caught an appetit

Troy Book

- Thoroughoute his boke of wommen to seyn ille,
That to translate it is ageyn my wille.
He hath ay joye her honour to transvere;
- 3560 I am sory that I mote reherser
The felle wordis in his boke yfounde.
To alle women I am so moche bounde:
Thei ben echon so goodly and so kynde,
I dar of hem nat seyen that I fynde
- 3565 Of Guydo write thoroughout *Troye Book*;
For whan I radde it, for fer myn herte quoke;
And verrailly my wittis gosse faille,
Whan I therof made rehersaille.
- Liche his decert lat Guydo now be quit;
- 3570 For ye schal here anon how that he chit
The Quene Eleyne, for cause that sche went
With devote hert hir offring to present
To the temple of Venus the goddes;
- 3575 Thus, word by word, he seith to hir expres:
"O mortal harme that most is for to dredel!
A, fraude ycast be sleight of wommanhede!
Of every wo gynnyng, crop, and rote,
Ageynges whiche helpe may no bote.
- 3580 Whan lust hath dryve in her hert a nail,
Ay dedly venym sueth at the tail,
Whiche no man hath power to restreyne;
Recordre I take of the Quene Eleyne
That hooce brent, alias, in hir desires
- 3585 Of newe lust to dele with straungeris
Whom sche knewe nat me never saw aforne,
Whertherough, alias, ful many man was lorn,
Of cruel deth embracid in the cheyne
Withoutte pitie. Now, sey, thou Quene Eleyne,
- 3590 What gost or spirit, alias, hath mevid the
Sool fro thi lord in swiche syalte
Oute of thin house to gon among the pres?
Whi were thou wery to live at home in pes
And wentist out straungeris for to se,
- 3595 Takyng noon bed unto thin honeste?
Thou schust a kepte thi closet secrely
- speak against
must
cruel
As he deserves; required
chided
beginning, root, and branch
be remedy
follows
burned body
associate with
lost
Alone
crowd
peace
have stayed in; room

Book 2

- And not have passed out so folly
 In the absence of thi lorde, alias?
 Thou wer to wilful and rakil in this cas
 To sen afor what schuld after swe;
 3600 For al to sone thou wer drawe out of mwe,
 That koudist nat kepe at home thi boundis.
 Thou wentist out as hare among houndis
 For to be caught of verray wilfulnes,
 And thi desyre koudist not compesse;
 3605 For thou thi lust list nat to refreyne.
 O many woman hath kaught in a treyne
 Her goyng ouate swiche halwes for to seke;
 It sit hem bet hem silven for to kepe
 Clos in her chaumbre and felen occasioune:
 3610 For never schip schulde in pereil drown,
 Nor skatre on rok, nor be with tempest rent,
 Nor with Karibdis devourid nor yschen,
 Nor gon to wrak with no wedris ille,
 Yif it wer kepte in the havene stille.
 3615 For who wil not occasioune eschewe
 Nor dredith not pereil for to swe,
 He most among of necessite,
 Or he be war, endure adversite;
 3620 And who can nat hir fot fro trappis spare,
 Lat hir be war or sche falle in the snare:
 For harme ydon to late is to compleine.
 For yif whilom the worthi Quese Eleyne
 Hirsilven had kepte at home in clos,
 3625 Reported yit, grene, fresche, and newe;
 Whos chaunce unshappi eche man oughte rew,
 That cause was of swiche destruccioun
 Of many worthi and confusioune
 Of hir husbonde and many other mo
 3630 On Grekis syde and on Troye also,
 In this story as ye schal after rede."
 And so this quene, as fast as sche may spede,
 To the temple hath the weye nome
 Ful rially; and whan that sche was come
- too; hasty
foresee; follow
hiding
restrain
control
trap
salts to seek
temptation
shatter
Charybdis; destroyed
weathers
if; harbor
pursue
Before
foot; avoid
Let; before
would not have been; reputation
taken

Troy Book

- 3635 Ful devoutly withinne Cytheroun,
Made unto Venus his oblacoun
In presence and sight of many on,
With many jewel and many riche stoon.
And whan Parys hadde this espied. *offering*
- 3640 To the temple anon he hath hym hyed
Ful thriftely in al the hast he myght;
And whan that he hadde first a sight
Of the goodly, faire, fresche quene,
Cupidis dart, that is whet so kene. *hastened
worthily*
- 3645 Or he was war, harbe hym markid so
That for astonyed he nist what to do,
So he merveileth his gret semlynes,
Hir womanhed, hir port, and hir fairnes:
For never aforne wende he that Nature *sharpened
Before; aware*
- 3650 Konde have made so faire a creature;
So aungillyk sche was of hir bewte,
So femynyn, so goodly on to se
That he dempte, as by liklymes,
For hir bewte to be som goddes. *thought*
- 3655 For his hert dide hym ay assure
That sche was no mortal creature;
So heavenly faire and so celestial
He thought sche was in party and in al
And considereth ful avisely *judged*
- 3660 Hir seturis in ordre by and by
Ententify withinne in his resoun,
Everything by good inspeccoun:
Hir golden her lik the schene stremys
Of fresche Phebus with his brighte bemyss. *hair; bright*
- 3665 The goodlyhed of hir fresche face,
So replevished of bewte and of grace,
Evene ennewed with quiknes of colour
Of the rose and the lylle flour,
So egaly that nother was to wyte *full*
- 3670 Thorugh noon excesse of moche nor to lite.
Withinne the cerchyng of hir eyen bryght
Was paradys compassid in hir sight,
That thorugh a brest the bewte wolde perce. *contained*

Book 2

- And certeynly, yif I schal reherse
 3675 Hir schap, hir forme, and feturis by and by,
 As Guydo doth by ordre ceryously,
 From hed to foot, clerly to devise,
 I han non Englysche that therto may suffyse;
 It wil nat be — oure touge is not lyke.
- I want flouris also of rethorik
 3680 To sue his florischyng or his gey peymture,
 For to discribe so fayre a creature;
 For my colours ben to feble and feyst.
 That nouther can ewewe wel nor peint;
- Eke I am nat aqueintid with no mwe
 3685 Of alle nyne: therfore I me excuse
 To you echon, nat al of negligence
 But for defaut only of eloquence,
 And you remitte to Guydo for to se
- How he discriveth bi ordre hir bewte;
 3690 To take on me it were presumpcoun.
 But I wil telle how Parys up and doun
 Goth in the temple, and his eye cast
 Toward Eleyne, and gan presen fast,
- As he that brent hote in Lovys fyre,
 3695 That was enflawmed gretly be desyre.
 And oft he chaungeth countenaunce and chere,
 And ever he neith to hir ner and nere,
 Idarted thorugh with hir eyen tweyne.
- And ageynward the fresche Quene Eleyne
 3700 As hote brent in herte pryvely.
 Albe no man it outward koude espie;
 For sche thought sche had never afor
 Of alle men that ever yet wer born
- Sey non so fair nor like to hir plesance;
 3705 On hym to loke was hir sufficiaunce.
 For in the temple sche toke hede of right nought
 Bet to compasse and castyn in hir thought
 How sche may catchen opportunité
- With hym to speke at good liberte:
 3710 This holly was al hir besynes.
 For hym sche felt so inly gret distres

Troy Book

	That ofte sche chaungeth countenaunce and bewe.	color
	And Venus hath marked hem of newe	
3715	With hir brondes fired by fervence And inflawmed be sodeyn influence, That egaly thei wer brought in a rage.	ardor
	And save the eyen atwen was no message:	equally
	Eche on other so fixe hath cast his sight	steadily
3720	That thei conseive and wisten anon right Withinne hemselfe wat her herte ment. And nere to hir ever Parys went	knew
	To seke fully and gote occasioune That thei myght by fel relacioun	
3725	Her hertis conceit declare secrely.	thought
	And so bifel that Paris neightheth nyghe	moves nearer
	To the place wher the Quene Eleyne Stood in her se, and ther atwen hem tweyne	seat
	Thei broken out the somme of al her hert	revealed; their
3730	And yaf issu to her inward smerte.	suffering
	But this was don, list thei werne espied,	lest; discovered
	Whan the peple was most occupied	
	In the temple for to stare and gase,	gaze
	Now her, now ther, as it wer a mase.	maze
3735	Thei kepte hem clos, that no worde asterte;	might escape
	Ther was no man the tresoun myght adverte	perceive
	Of hem tweyn ne what thei wolde mene;	
	But at the last, Paris and this quene	
	Concluded han with schort avisement	
3740	Fully the fyn of her bothe entent	object of their malice
	And sette a purpos atwix hem in certeyn	
	Whan thei cast for to mete ageyn.	plan
	But list men had to hem suspiciooun.	
	Thei made an ende withoute more sermoun	
3745	And depart, albe that thei wer lothe.	
	And sobirly anoon this Paris goth	
	Out of the temple, his hert in every part	
	Wounded thoroughout with Lovys fyre dart;	
	To his schippis he holt the righte way.	he went directly

Book 2

[Paris gathers his men, and that night they rob the temple sanctuary of its jewels, killing all who oppose them and carrying off many Greeks as slaves. Paris goes to Helen, who accompanies him to his ship without a struggle. He then returns to plundering the island and sails back to Troy. Priam prepares a feast in honor of Paris's return. Helen meanwhile grows distraught as she realizes how isolated she is from her family and homeland. Paris comforts her and proposes to marry her. Helen accepts the fate the gods have prepared for her. Paris ceremoniously leads Helen into Troy, guiding her horse by the reins. The next day they are married in Pallas's temple. At the marriage feast, Cassandra foretells the destruction of Troy and names Helen as the cause. To end Cassandra's disruption, Priam casts her in prison. While the Trojans enjoy their good fortune, Menelaus hears word of the sack of the island, the slaughter of its defenders, and the abduction of his wife. Nestor sends for Agamemnon, Menelaus's brother, to comfort him (lines 3750–4336).]

- "O brother myn, what wo, what hevynes,
What dedly sorwe thus inly may oppres
Your knyghtly hert or trouble youre manhede,
4340 More furiously ywis than it is nede; certainly
For though that right requerid outerly
Yow for to sorwe and had cause why,
Yet, me semeth, by juste providence
Ye schulde lightly dissymble youre offence: feigne; grievance
4345 Sith eche wiseman in his adversit  Since
Schulde feyne cher and kepen in secre
The inward wo that bynt hym in distresse,
Be manly force rathest ther compesse bound
The sperit of ire and malencolie, By; contain
4350 Where the peple it sonest myght espie.
It is a doctrine of hem that be prudent
That, whan a man with furie is torent, torn apart
To feyne chere till tyme he se leyser
That of vengaunce he kyndle may the fer; fire
4355 For sorwe outeschewid, yif I shal nat feine, outwardly visible; lie
Whoso take hede, it doth thinges tweyne:
It causeth frendis for to sighe sore,
And his enymyes to rejoische more.
Thi frende in hert is sory of nature;
4360 Thin enemy glad of thi mysaventure.
Wherfore in hert, whan wo doth most abounde,
Feyne gladnes thin enemy to confounde confuse

Troy Book

- And schewe in cher as thou roughtist nought
Of thing that is most grevous in thi thought. *appearance as if you did not care*
- 4365 And wher thou hast most mater to compleyne,
Make ther good face and glad in port the feine;
For into teris, though thou al distille
And rende thisilfe, as thou woldest the spille,
It helpith nat to aleggen thi grevaunce: *bearing; dissemble*
dissolve
tear apart; kill yourself
alleviate
- 4370 For nouther honour nor pursut of vengaunce
With sorwe makyng now ben execut —
Though it last ay, ther cometh thereof no frut.
Men seym how he that can dissymbile a wrong,
How he is slighe and of herte stronge: *may be carried out*
conceal
- 4375 And who can ben peisible in his smerte,
It is a tokene he hath a manly herte
Nat to wepen as wommen in her rage,
Whiche is contrarie to an highe corage. *peaceful; sorrow*
great spirit
- 4380 Be no menys to worshipship to attayne;
Lat us with swerde and nat with wordis fight;
Oure tonge apese, be manbod preve oure myght:
Word is but wynde, and water that we wepe;
And though the tempest and the flodis depe *honor; gain*
- 4385 Of this two encresen everemo,
Thei may nat do but augmente oure wo;
And to oure foon, therof whan thei here
Bothe of oure dool and of oure hevy chere,
Al is to hem bat encres of joye. *sorrow*
- 4390 Wherfore, brothir, a while dothe acoye
The cruel torment that byndeth yow so sore;
For in proverbe it hath ben said ful yore
That the prowes of a manly knyght
Is preved most in meschef, and his myght: *calm*
- 4395 To ben assured in adversite,
Strongly sustene what wo that it be,
Nat cowardly his corage to submitte
In every pereil, nor his honour flitte
Thorugh no dispeire, but hopen alwey wel *waver*
despair
- 4400 And have a trust, trewe as any stel,
T'acheven ay what he take on honde.

Book 2

- For finally I do you undirstonde
 That of hymself who hath good fantasie
 To sette upon and putte in jupartie
 What that befallie (hap what happe may).
 Takyng what chaunce wil turnen on his play,
 The syn of whiche gladly is victorie,
 Thei feile selde of the palme of glorie.
 And tyme is now, to spekt in wordis fewe,
 O brothir myn, manhood for to schewe,
 To pluk up herte and you to make strong:
 And to venge your damages and youre wronge,
 We schal echon help and leye to honde —
 Kynge, dukes, and lordis of this londe —
 And attonys done oure besynes,
 I you behete, your harmys to redresse.
 And in dispit of whom that evere us lette,
 We schal us logo and oure tentis sette
 Evene in the felde afore Troye toun
 And leyne a sege to her distruccioun,
 Albe herof I sette as now no day.
 But, brothir, first, in al the haste we may,
 Lete make lettis, withoute more sermoun,
 To alle the lordis of this regioune,
 Of this mater touching youre vilanye,
 To come togidre and schape remedie —
 This is th'effect of al that I can seyn.”

[Menelaus follows Agamemnon's advice and dispatches letters to his kinsmen and allies. Achilles, Patroclus, Diomede, and others come to his aid. In open parliament they agree to be governed by Agamemnon. In the meantime, Helen's brothers, Castor and Pollux, take it upon themselves to avenge her abduction and set forth for Troy. A storm destroys their ship at sea and all hands drown, except the two brothers; one was sent to heaven and the other to hell, though some poets make up the story that they were made into stars. Dares the Phrygian, who passed between the camps during times of truce, wrote descriptions of all the principal characters; he says the following about Criseyde (lines 4428–4676).]

And overmore, to tellen of Cryseyde
 Mi penne stumbleth, for longe or he deyde
 My maister Chaucer dide his diligence

Troy Book

- 4680 To discryve the gret excellence
Of hir bewte, and that so maisterly,
To take on me it were but highe foly
In any wyse to adde more thereto;
For wel I wot, anoon as I have do,
4685 That I in soth no thanke disserve may
Because that he in writyng was so gay —
And but I write, I mote the trouthe leue
Of *Troye Boke*, and my mater bieve,
And overpassee and nat go by and by,
4690 As Guydo doth in ordre ceryously.
And thus I most don offenciouſ
Thorughe negligence or presumpcioun:
So am I sette evene amyddes tweyme!
Gret cause have I and mater to compleyne
4695 On Astropos and upon hir envie
That brak the threde and made for to dye
Noble Galfride, poete of Breteyne,
Amonge oure Englisch that made first to reyne
The gold dewedropis of rhetorik so fyne,
4700 Oure rude langage only t'enlwmyne.
To God I pray that He his soule have.
After whos help of nede I moste crave
And seke his boke that is left behynde
Som goodly worde therin for to fynde
4705 To sette amonge the crokis lyms rude
Whiche I do write; as by similitude
The ruby stant, so royal of renoun,
Withinne a ryng of copur or latoun,
So stant the makynge of hym, douteles.
4710 Among oure bokis of Englische pereles:
Thei arn ethe to knowe, thei ben so excellent;
Ther is no makynge to his equipotent;
We do but halt, whoso taketh hede,
That medle of makynge, withouten any drede.
4715 Whan we wolde his stile counterfet,
We may al day oure colour grynde and bete,
Tempere oure azour and vermyloun:
But al I holde but presumpcioun —
- know
truth
*unless I write a book; depart
shorten*
point by point
between the two
rain down
*crude, rough lines
comparison*
brass alloy
*easy to know
equal in value
limp*
Mix / with oil

Book 2

- | | | |
|------|--|---|
| | It folweth nat; therfore I lette be, | <i>It does not follow as a consequence</i> |
| 4720 | And first of al I wil excuse me
And procede as I have begonne
And thorugh his favour certeyn, yif I konne,
Of <i>Troye Boke</i> for to make an ende;
And ther I lefte ageyn I wil now wende | |
| 4725 | Unto Cryseyde; and though to my socour
Of rethorik that I have no flour
Nor hewes riche, stonys nor perré —
For I am bare of alle coriouste
Thorough crafty speche to embroude with her sleeve — | <i>jewels</i>
<i>arfulness</i>
<i>embroider</i> |
| 4730 | Yet for al that, now I wil not leve
But ben as bolde as Baiard is, the blynde,
That cast no peril what wey that he fynde;
Right so wil I stumble forthe on hede
For unkonyng and take no better hede, | <i>foresees no trouble</i>
<i>rashly</i>
<i>lack of skill</i> |
| 4735 | So as I can, hir bewte to discribe.
That was in sooth of alle tho on lyve
On the fayrest, this Calchas daughter dere;
Therto of schap, of face, and of chere.
Ther myghte be no fairer creature | <i>One of</i> |
| 4740 | To highe nor to lowe, but mene of stature —
Hir sonnysche her, liche Phabus in his spere,
Bounde in a tresse, brighter thanne golde were,
Doum at hir bak, lowe down behynde,
Whiche with a threde of golde sche wolde bynde | <i>Too tall</i>
<i>hair; sphere</i>
<i>wire</i> |
| 4745 | Ful ofte sythe of acustummaunce;
Therto sche hadde so moche suffisaunce
Of Kyndes wirke withouten any were,
And save hir browes joyneden yfere,
No man koude in hir a lake espien. | <i>Nature's; doubt</i>
<i>except that; joined together</i>
<i>fair discover</i> |
| 4750 | And, ferthermore, to speken of hir eyen,
Thei wer so persyng, heavenly, and so clere,
That an herie ne myght hymself stere
Ageyn hir schynynge, that thei nolde wounde
Thoraghout a brest, God wot, and biyonde. | <i>govern</i> |
| 4755 | Also sche was, for al hir semlynes,
Ful symple and meke and ful of sobirnes,
The best norissched eke that myghte be. | <i>beauty</i>
<i>educated</i> |

Troy Book

	Goodly of speche, fulfilde of pitē.	companion
	Facundious, and thereto right tretable,	Eloquent; capable of discussion
4760	And, as seith Guydo, in love variable — Of tendre herte and unstedfastnes He hir accuseth, and newfongilnes.	fond of novelty

[Dares tells how the King of Persia, a tall, fat, red-headed man with warts on his face, came to aid the Greeks; and then he turns to the Trojans, describing Priam and Hector before coming to Troilus (lines 4763-4860).]

	But Troylus schortly yif I schal discryve,	describe
	Ther was of hert non manlier on lyve	
	Nor more likly in armys to endure:	prevail
	Wel woxe of heughte and of good stature,	grown
4865	Yong, fresche, and lusty, hardy as a lyoun, Delivere and strong as any champion,	Agile
	And perigal of manhood and of dede	worthy
	He was to any that I can of rede	
	In doring do, this noble worthi knyght,	derring-do
4870	For to fulfillie that longeth to a knyght. The secunde Ector for his worthines	
	He callid was and for his highe prowes	
	Duryng the warre, he bare hym ay so wel;	
	Therto in love as crewe as any stelle,	
4875	Secré and wys, stedefast of corage,	heart
	The mosie goodly also of visage	
	That myghte be, and benigae of cher.	gracious
	Withoutte chaunge, and of on hert entere.	sincere
	He was alwey feithful, just, and stable,	
4880	Perseveraunt, and of wil immutable	
	Upon what thing he onys set his herte,	
	That doublines myght hym nat perverte;	duplicity
	In his dedis he was so hool and pleyn;	
	But on his fooun, the sothe for to seyn,	against his foes; truth
4885	He was so fers thei myght him nat withstonde	
	Whan that he hilde his bloody swerde on hond:	held
	Unto Grekis deth and confusiooun,	
	To hem of Troye help and protecciooun.	
	And his knyghthod schoortly to acounte,	

Book 2

- 4890 Ther myght in manhood no man him surmounte
Thorough the worlde, though men wolde seke
To reknen al, Troyan nouther Greke,
Noon so namyd of famus hardynes.
As bokis olde of hym bere witnes;
4895 Excepte Ector, ther was nat swiche another.

excel

nor

[Dares continues his portraits with descriptions of Paris, Aeneas, Antenor, and other warriors and with descriptions of the Trojan women — Hecuba (man-like in appearance but the true example of femininity), Andromache, Cassandra, and Polyxena. These are all he described at this point, and I shall hurry on to the story of the war. In February, the Greeks assemble their ships at Athens. My author, Guido, gives a catalogue of which heroes came and how many ships they brought with them. Agamemnon calls a council and advises that Apollo be consulted at Delos. The Greeks send Achilles and Pirithous, and an explanation of the origin and history of idolatry is offered. Apollo tells Achilles that after ten years the Greeks shall conquer Troy and slay Priam's family. At that moment, Calchas, sent by Priam to consult the god, also appears, and he is advised not to go back to Troy but to join the Greeks. Returning to Athens, Achilles conveys the god's prophecy, and the Greeks accept Calchas. At the feast that Priam holds the next day, Calchas advises the Greeks to strike immediately. They set out in fair weather, but a storm soon strikes and Calchas uses his powers to assuage it. He explains that Diana must be appeased; she is angry at their setting out without first sacrificing to her. Putting in at Aulis, Agamemnon prepares to sacrifice his daughter, Iphigenia, in the temple, but Diana sets a hart in her place. The Greeks reach the boundaries of Troy and destroy the castle Sarobona, before landing at Tenedos, six miles from Troy. The Greeks lay siege to Tenedos and conquer it by force of their numbers. Agamemnon convokes the lords and kings to distribute the plunder according to their merits, and he addresses them as a body (lines 4896–6516).]

- "Sirs," quod he, "ful worthi of degré,
Of verray right and nécessité
We be compelled, bothe highe and lowe,
6520 With al oure myght, liche as ye wel knowe,
To redresse a thing that is amys:
For thorough the world, as it reportid is,
We ben of force, of power, and of myght,
Of worthines in every wighties syght
6525 Most renomed and most worshipable,
And idempte and juged for most able
Of alle peuples, and likliest to stonde

wrong

person's
honorable
thought

Troy Book

- For to performe what we take on honde,
Who that evere grucceth or seyth nay.
undertake
complains
- 6530 Yit me semeth, yif it be to your pay,
Thilke power most is acceptable
unto goddis and lenger stondeth stable
That is devoide of surquidie and pride;
For it is kouthe upon every syde,
arrogance
known
- 6535 In eche lond, bothe of oon and alle,
How many harmys and grevis han befallen
Thorough rancour only, pride and wilfulnes,
So importable, as I coude expresse,
That thorough pride is ther don offence;
unbearable
- 6540 The highe goddis make resistance
To alle tho that be surquedous,
Whiche is a vice so contrarius
That it may in no place abide.
And in good feith, manhood is no pride:
excessively proud
- 6545 For who that hath any acqueintaunce
Outher by frenschip or by alyaunce
With a prowde man, to be confederas
With hym in herte, of highe or lowe estat,
He nedis muste, whatever that he be,
Aateful
damage
- 6550 To many other of necessité
Be lothsom first, enmy, and contraire;
For nothing may a man so moche apaire
As pride, in soth, in highe or lowe degré.
Wherfore, I rede pleynly how that we
tear
- 6555 This foule vice oute of our hert arrace,
That our quarel may have the more grace;
And specially that oure dedis alle
Conveied ben, however that it falle,
Be rightwesnesse more than volunté:
remain
- 6560 For yif trouthe oure sothfast guyde be,
Us to directe by his rightful lyne,
Than oure quarel schal ay in honour schine
And contune eke in ful felicité.
And ferthermore, this knownen alle ye.
- 6565 How we ar come for to do vengaunce
With oure frenschip and oure alliance

Book 2

- Upon Priam for wrongis don of olde
 By hym and byse, as I have ofte tolde;
 And hereupon we han his grunde itake,
 And some of his maked to awake
 With manful honde, and his castellis strong
 Ibete doum, that stonden have so longe.
 And take there the riches that we founde,
 And slawe his men with many blody wounde,
 And harmys mo don in his contré
 That I wot wel, yif her enmyté
 Was unto us gret and moche afore,
 I dar seie now it is in double more;
 That yif that thei avenged myghte be
 On us echon, anon ye schulde se
 Her gret ire, so cruel and so huge.
 Ben execute withoute more refuge.
 And yit, in sooth, I wote thei han espied
 Oure beyng here; though we be nat askried
 Of hem as yit, I dar seyn outerly
 Thei are wel war that we ar faste by;
 And overmore, this wote I wel also,
 Of the harmys that we han hem do,
 The whiche as yit ben but fresche and grene,
 Yif thei wer strong and myghti to sustene,
 A werre on us anon thei wolde gynne.
 And yit the cité whiche thei ben inne
 Is wallid strong and tourid rounde abouthe,
 That thei wene fully, ouse of doute,
 With the meyné that thei have gadrid inn
 Of her allies, that we schal nat wynne
 Of hem but smal in werre nor in strif:
 For he in sothe hath a peerogatyf
 And avaantage, that in his contré
 Hymself diffendith; namly, yif that he
 Be stuffid strong of frendis hym beside
 And of allies, where he doth abyde;
 Like as the raven with his fetheres blake
 Withinne his nest wil ofte tyme make
 Ageyn the faukon — gentil of nature —
- captured
- Demolished
- slain
- if their
- carried out; remedy
- truth; know
- challenged
- moreover
- if
- defended by towers
- think
- troops
- truth; privilege
- supplied
- Against

Troy Book

	Ful harde diffence whiles he may dure, Or that he be venquissched and outrailed. And yit som while the faukon is delaid, Whils the raven besyde his nest doth fle	as long as he can Until; overcome
6610	Withinne his covert at his liberté; As every foule is foward to arrest For to be daunted in his owne nest. And yit this wordis to you I mat sey	fly shelter threatening; seize overcome
	In any wyse to putten in affray	to alarm
6615	Youre knyghtly hertis, so manly and so stable, Nor that to you it schulde be doutable, But the Troiens that we schal confounde And her cité, in whiche thei habounde,	destroy
	Pleinly distroie, although that it be strong.	
6620	And thei and alle that ben hem among Schal finally consume be with deth. Thorugh Grekis swerde yelden up the breth. But the cause, withouten any drede,	
	Why I seye thus is that ye take hede	
6625	For any pride or presumpciooun To adverte in youre discreciooun So prudently that resoun in this nede For any hast may oure bridel lede	notice
	And so ordyn, or we hennes wende,	go hence
6630	That laude and pris aftir in the ende May be reported, as I have devised: For many man that hath nat ben avised In his pursut, for lak of providencie	praise; worthiness explained thoughtful
	To sen toorn in his advertence	consideration
6635	What schulde fallie, to deth it hath him broght: Swiche wilful hast wer good to be thought Of us aforn be examynacioun And wel decut by revolucioun	ripened by thought (see note)
	Of thingkyng ofte, that we nat repente.	
6640	And first remembrih how that Priam sente To us but late only for Exoun, That is yit holde of Kyng Thelamoun, Whiche was of us withoute avisement	reflection
	Undiscretly denied by assent;	

Book 2

- 6645 Whiche hath to us be non avauntage
But grounde and rote of ful gret damage.
For yif that we thorough wys purviaunce
Of hir had maked delyveraunce,
The harmys grete hadde ben eschewed,
6650 That aftir wern of Parys so persewed
In the temple of Cytherea,
That bilded is beside Cirrea.
The tresour gret also that he hadde,
And jowellis that he with hym ladde
6655 Thene to Troie, and the gret riches,
The slaughtre of men, and the hevynes
That yit is made for the Quene Eleyne
Thoroughoute Grece, and the grete peyne
Of Menelay — al had ben unwrought,
6660 Yif we hadde seyn this in oure thought
Wisely aforn and Exyoun restored.
Than had nat the harmys be so morid
On us echon in verray sothfastnes,
Nor spent oure labour so in ydernes,
6665 Tresour nor good wasted so in veyn,
Nor come so fer for to fecche ageyn
The Quene Eleyne with costis importable,
Withoute harmys, now ineschuable:
And for al this yit ne wite we
6670 Whether to joye or adversite
The thing schal turne that we be aboute,
Sith ofte sithe dependent and in doute
Is fatal thing, unsiker and unstable;
And fro the gynnyng ofte variable
6675 The ende is seyn. Fortune can transmewe
Hir gery cours, and therfore, to eschewe
The harmys likly possible to falle,
My conseil is, here among yow alle,
Upon travail travail to eschewe
6680 In this mater or we ferther swe:
To Priamus withouten any more
To sende first ageyn for to restore
The Quene Eleyne, as right and resoun is,
- all would not have been done
increased
unbearable
unavoidable
know
Since often times
change
fickle; avoid
occur
before; pursue

Troy Book

- And other harmys don eke be Parys,
6685 Aftir his trespass and offendicoun
Justly to make restitucion.
Than may we alle in worship and honour
Retournen hom withoute more labour,
Yif thei assent to don as we require;
6690 And oure axyng yif hem list nat here
But folily of her wilfulness
Refusen it, than oure worthines
Is double assured on a siker grounde,
By juste title Troyens to confounde. certain
6695 With thinges two we schal ben underpight:
First oure power, borne up with our right,
Schal for us fight our quarel to dareyne,
In balaunce to weye atwixe us tweyne
To fyn that we schal be more excusid; to settle by combat
6700 For thei toforn han wilfully refusid
Oure just proffers made to hem afore; earlier
And we schal be thorugh the world, therfore,
Withoute spot of trespace or of blame,
Of mysreport in hyndring of our name, proposals
6705 Wher thei of foly schal ynoted be
Of wilful wodnes, plainly, wher that we
Schal stonde fre oure power for to use;
And every man schal us wel excuse,
Though that we doon execucion. slandering
6710 Be takyng vengaunce for her offendicoun
Of man and childe, of ech sect and age,
That schal of deth holde the passage
And be the swerd withouten mercy pace,
Oon and other — ther is no better grace. sex
6715 But yit toforn, I conseil taketh hede
That ye to hem alle mesour bede:
This bold I best and most sikernes;
And werketh now be good avisenes
Among yourself, and no lenger tarie." under; pass
moderation offer
caution

[Ulysses and Diomede are chosen to carry Agamemnon's message to Troy, and they present the Greek demands with a rudeness calculated to offend Priam. Though himself driven to

Book 2

anger, Priam restrains his men, who wish to punish the messengers on the spot. After the ambassadors return, Agamemnon sends Achilles and Telephus to secure provisions from the island of Mysia. During the ensuing battle Telephus prevails on Achilles to spare the mortally wounded King of Mysia, Teuthras, who names Telephus as his heir because Telephus's father, Hercules, originally helped him secure the kingship. The book next recounts the kings and lords who come to the aid of Troy: Dares says that 32,000 knights and lords, besides those of India, flocked to Priam's city. King Palamedes, delayed earlier by illness, joins the Greeks at Tenedos. Diomedes urges that the Greeks attack Troy immediately. When the Greeks arrive in force the next day, the Trojans sally forth to oppose their landing. The Greeks have no choice but to fight or be thrown back into the sea. Battle rages back and forth with terrible slaughter. First one side and then the other holds the advantage as heroes like Hector and Achilles enter the battle at decisive points and subsequently retire. At length, the Greeks are able to land their main force. Agamemnon decides on a place to establish the Greek camp, oversees the fortification, and sets a watch to guard the camp while his men rest in their tents before Troy (lines 6720-8702).]

And thus eche thing disposid as it ought,
I wil procede to telle how thei wrought,
8705 Ceriously withoutyn and withinne,
With youre support the thridde boke begynne.arranged
In due order

Book 3

- Whan Aurora, with hir pale light,
 Under the mantel of the mirkē nyght
 And the custyn of her hewes fade
 Ischrouidid was in the dirke schade,
- colors
- 5 Abasched rody, as I can diffyne,
 Only of fer that is femynyne.
 Foraschamyd durste nat be seyn
 Because sche had so longe abedde leyn
- blushing red; say
fear
Greatly ashamed
- 10 With fresche Febus, hir owne chose knyght,
 For whiche sche hidde hir sothly out of sight
 Til his steede that callid is Flegonte
 Enhasted hym above oure orizonte;
- Phoebus: chosen
truly
Hastened; horizon
- 15 And Appollo with his bemyis clere
 Hath recounforted hir oppressid chere —
 This to seyne, aftir the dawemyng.
 Whan Titan was in the est rysyng.
- soothed her troubled mood
- 20 Of his hete atempre and right softe
 Her emyspery for to glade alofte —
 The same hour the Troyan champion,
 Goverour of werris of the toun,
- mild
hemisphere
Commander in chief
- 25 Worthi Ector, whiche in the cite
 Next Priam had of alle sovereintē
 The toun to guye be knyghtly excellencie,
 For his manhood and his sapience
- direct
wisdom
- 30 Of Troyan knyghtes lord and eke cheffeyn,
 Whiche bath commaunded in a large gleyn,
 To highe and low, he exceptyng noon,
 Kynges, princes, and lordis everychow,
- Who
- 35 The same morwe for to mette ifere,
 In hir array to moustre and appere,
 Like as thei were of name and of estate,
 Besyde a temple whilom consecrate
- together
gather for inspection
- To the goddes that callid is Dyane.

Book 3

- Moste honoured in that riche fane — temple
35 Ther to arraye hem, in al the haste thei can.
Lik the devis of this knyghtly man. To the likyn

[Hector supervises the arming of all the Trojans and sets the order of battle. He divides the forces into nine divisions, each led by his legitimate and natural brothers in addition to foreign kings. He assigns a rearguard to Priam, with special orders to stay between the main troops and the city. The women of Troy watch from the walls as the troops move forward (lines 37-535).]

- And of Grekis furthe I wil yow telle,
Yif so be ye list abide a whyle, If; wish
For now most I my fordullid stile greatly daffid stylas
Agyen direcute to Agamenoun.
- 540 Wel may I make an exclamacioun war
On ignoraunce, that stant so in my light,
Whiche causeth me with a ful cloudy sight
In my makynge to spoken of the wesse.
For lak of termys I mote nedis erre
545 Connynghly my wordis for to sette;
Cruel Allecto is besy me to lette,
The nyghtes daughter, blindid by dirknes,
Be craft of armys the trouthe to expresse
In ordre due a feld to discryve.
- 550 And Chaucer now, alias, is nat alye
Me to reforme or to be my rede
(For lak of whom slougher is my spede).
The noble rethor that alle dide excelle;
For in makynge he drank of the welle
555 Undir Pernaso that the Musis kepe,
On whiche hil I myghte never slepe —
Onnethe slombre — for whiche, alias, I pleyne.
But for al this, ther is no more to seyne.
Though my wede be nat polymyte,
- 560 Colours, forthe I wil endyte
As it cometh evene to my thought,
Pleinly to write how the kyng hath wrought,
The manly knyght, gret Agamenoun,
Lyk as the Latyn maketh mencioune.

Troy Book

- 565 What! Trowe ye that he in his entent
Was founde slouge outher negligent
On Grekis half his wardis for to make?
Nay, nay, nat so; for hym list to wake
That tyme more, soothly, than to slepe.
570 Ful lik a kyng that day the feld to kepe.
Nor negligence myght his herte sade,
For in that day I fynde that he made
Six and twenty wardis by and by,
So wel devised and so prudently
575 That no man myght amende his ordinance.
And of the first he yaf governaunce
To the manful noble Patroclus
That with hym ladde (myn auctour telleth thus)
Mirmidores, so myghti and so stronge,
580 With alle the folke that to Achilles longe,
Besyde thilke that wern of his meyne
Whiche that he brought out of his contré
At his comyng to the sege of Troye;
And he rood furthe with hem on his woye
585 Into the feld and made no delaye.
Now fille it so on the same day
That Achilles kepte hym in his tente
And for seknes that day oute ne wente;
For his lechis made hym to abstene,
590 For his woundes fresche wern and grene
That he kaught on the day tofore,
Whiche for to hele of her akyng sore
He be counseil kepte hym silfe cloos
And from his bed that day nat ne roos,
595 In hope only the bettre to endure
Whan that he was restored unto cure.
But alle his men he toke to Patroclus,
Whiche was in armys passyngly famus
And be discent come of gret kynrede,
600 And was also — of hym as I rede —
Habundauant of gold and of riches,
And fer comendid for his gentilles,
And hadde a name of highe discreciooun.
- Do you know*
divisions
be wished
/make/ his heart indifferent
arranged
belong
those: retain
way
physicians; withhold himself
unhealed
before
removed
health
transferred to
Generous
widely praised

Book 3

- Now was ther evere swiche affeccioun
 605 Of entere love, trouthe, and feithfalnes,
 So gret desyre and inward kyndenes,
 Besy thinkyng, and so gret fervence,
 So moche frenedeschip and thoughtful advertence,
 So huge brennyng, passyng amerous,
 610 Betwixe Achilles and this Patroclus
 That her hertis were lokkid in o cheyne.
 And whatsoever, if I schal nat feyne,
 The ton hath wrought, as brother unto brother.
 In hert it was confermyd of the tother:
 615 For wil and godys bothe were commune,
 And to the deth thei evere so contune —
 Withoute chaunge her love so abood.
 And Patroclus furthe amonge hem rood
 Into the feld with Myrmidones.
 620 And in his tent abideth Achilles.

[Agamemnon, like Hector, disposes his troops in divisions led by heroes and kings. The Greeks move forward, with their banners and devices signaling their burning desire for battle, and they confront the Trojans. Patroclus leads the first division in place of Achilles, whose physicians prevail on him not to take the field because of the wounds he suffered the day before (lines 621–743).]

- The first, asondre but a litel space,
 745 Began to approche with al her ful myght;
 And Hector tho lik a doughty knyght
 Formest of alle on the side of Troye.
 The ire of whom no man myght acoye
 But lik a lyoun in his hungri rage.
 750 Issed oute, furious of visage.
 Toward Grekis on his myghti stede,
 That with his sporis made his sides blede:
 His knyghtly hert so inly was totorn
 Of mortal ire. And as he rood toforn,
 755 Brennyng ful hote in his malencolye.
 The whiche thing whan Grekis gan espie,
 Patroclus withoute more abood
 Of surquedie afore the wardis rood

Troy Book

- 760 Oute al toforn, in bothe hostis sight,
 For to encontre pleinly, yif he myght.
 With worthi Hector whan he him saw afer,
 And as right lyne as is diameter,
 Rood unto hym in his hatful tene;
 And with a spere scharpe grunde and kene
765 Thorughoute his schelde, of envious rage,
 He smote Hector withoute more damage,
 Except only that the bed of steele
 That was toforn, forged and whet ful wele,
 Thorough plate and maille myghtely gan glace,
770 But to the skyn for no thing myght hit trace;
 Albe it cam of passyng violence,
 Yit to Hector it dide noon offence,
 Oute of his sadel onys hym to flitte.
 For though that he sturdely hym hitte,
775 He myghte nat bakward bow his chyne
 Nor on no parti make hym to enclyne;
 But fatally to his confusoun
 This myghti man, this Troyan champion,
 In his ire ay brennyng more and more,
780 Upon hym the hate frat so sore,
 Leste his spere, myn auctor writeth thus,
 And with a swerd rood to Patroclus,
 Avised fully that he schal be ded,
 And furiously gan hamen at his hed,
785 And rof hym doun — ther was no maner lette —
 Into the brest thorough his basenet,
 As seith Guydo, with so gret a peyne
 That with the stroke he partid hym on tweyne.
 His mortal swerde whettid was so kene
790 That Patroclus myghte nat sustene
 Upon his hors bat fil doun to grunde,
 As he that caught his laste fatal wounde,
 Beyng present his knyghtes everychon.
 And delyverly upon hym anon
795 Worthi Hector from his steede adoun
 Discendid is lik a wode lyoun,
 Of hatful ire brennyng as the fire.

before all

as straight as the line of diameter

rage

sharpened

penetrate

in no way; cut through

Although

momentarily; shift position

bend

rain

consumed

Left

Determined

aimed a blow

cut; hindrance

headpiece

sharpened

quickly

mad

Book 3

	Havinge in hert inly gret desire	
	To spoilen hym of his armure anoon,	<i>strip</i>
800	In whiche ther was ful many riche stoon, Bothe of rubies and saphiris Ynde:	<i>blue</i>
	For thilke daies, plenly as I fynde, Kynges, lordis, and knyghtes (this no nay)	
	To bataille went in her best array.	
805	And soothly Hector, whan he first gan se The multitude of stony and perré	<i>jewelry</i>
	On Patroclus, so orient and schene,	<i>bright and shining</i>
	Upon his arme he hynghe his horse rene,	<i>rein</i>
	The menewhile whil he of hool entent	<i>All the while</i>
810	To cacche his praye was so dilligent Of covetyse in ther alder sightes,	<i>prey</i>
	Til Merioun with thre thousand knyghtes Armed in stede rounde abouthe hym alle	<i>sight of all</i>
	Is sodeynly upon Hector falle,	
815	The dede cors of Patroclus to save, That his purpos Hector may nat have	<i>dead body</i>
	At liberté the riche kyng to spoille,	<i>plunder</i>
	Whiche caused hym in anger for to boille.	
	To whom the kyng callid Merion,	
820	Irous and wood, seide among echon:	<i>among them all</i>
	"O gredy lyoun, O wolle most ravenous,	
	O hatful tygre, passyng envious	
	Of avarice, O beste insatiable	<i>insatiable</i>
	And of desire soothly unstaunchable,	
825	Upon this pray thou schalt the nat now fede;	<i>prey</i>
	Go elliswhere to swe for thi mede:	<i>seek after your reward</i>
	For truste well, in conclusioun,	
	Fifti thousand to thi distructioun,	
	Of oon entent, plenly wil nat faille	
830	Thin hatful pride attynys for to assaille!"	<i>at once</i>
	And sodeynly with speris scharpe whetis	<i>side</i>
	On every half thei goane hym besette,	
	Maugre his force, his myght, and his manhede,	<i>Despite</i>

Troy Book

- 835 Enforcyngh hem t'arevid him his stede.¹ So that
That sothfastly of gret violence was compelled (see note)
He constreyned, for al his strong diffence,
As seith Guydo, to falle upon his kne;
But thorough his myght and magnanymyté,
He of manhood hath his hors recarid recovered
840 And among Grekis is so moche assurid
In his strenghe and his grete myght
That he recarid lik a worthi knyght
His stede ageyn amiddes alle his foen.
And right as lyne he rood to Merion,
845 Ful desyrous avengid on hym to be regained
In his furye of hasty cruelté;
For therupon was sette al his delit,
That in his mortal bloody appetit,
In verray soth, he hadde hym slaw anon.
850 Save that the kyng which callid was Glacon Except that
Cam to rescue hym with Kyng Theseus
And his sone that hight Archilagus,
As I have tolde, Merion to rescue.
And thre thousand knygthes gan hym swe,
855 Ful assentid attonis in bataille pursue
For lyf or deth Hector to assaille.
In await unwar on hym to sette.
But al this whyle with whom that ever he mette,
With his swerde he kylleth and bare doun.
860 That finally ther gaymeth no taunsoun; no price paid
For any Greke that durst wyt hym mette
At departyng felte ful unsweate:
He made a weye aboute hym everywhere,
That thei fledde hym as the deth for fere,
865 For where he rod he made a path ful pleynt.
And as I rede, to Patroclus ageyn fear
He is repeired to spoille hym, yif he myght,
Amyd the feld in the Grekis sight,
As he that wolde his praye nat lightly lete,
870 returned
prey; abandon

¹ Exerting themselves to rob him of his steed

Book 3

- | | | |
|-----|---|----------------------------|
| 870 | Til Ydwme cam, the worthi Kyng of Crete,
With two thousand clad in plate and maille,
Worthi knyghtes, Hector to assaille
Whyles that he was so desirous,
As I have tolde, to spoille Patroclus, | <i>Idomeneus</i> |
| 875 | And new ageyn to his confusoun,
Lyk as I fynde, cam Kyng Merion;
And or Hector myghte taken hede,
Thei of force refren hym his stede,
That soothly he (ther was noon other bote) | <i>deprived
remedy</i> |
| 880 | Compellid was for to fight on fote.
And of knyghthod his herte he reswmeth;
And with his swerde abouthe hym he conswmeth
Al that withstandid, bothen hors and man; | <i>took heart again</i> |
| 885 | And furiously this Troyan knyght began
Armys, leggis, schuldris, by the boone,
To hewen of amyd his mortal foon.
That Grekis myght aforn him nat sustene | <i>bone
off</i> |
| 890 | And, as I rede, that he slowe fiftene
Of hem that were besy hym to take,
And swiche a slawghter he gan among hem make,
That thei ne durste abide aforn his face. | |
| 895 | And Merion in the silfe place
This menwhile toke up Patroclus
With hevy chere and face ful pitous; | <i>All the time</i> |
| | And on his stede he leide it hym beforne;
And to his tent anon he hath it born,
Alwey Grekis in her cruel mood | |
| | Aboute Hector, furious and wood,
Felly abood, fightyng upon fote. | <i>Cruelly</i> |

[*The Greeks continue their furious assault on Hector, but the Trojans rush to his support and force the Greeks to retreat. Hector remounts his horse and resumes his slaughter of the Greeks (lines 900–75).*]

For thilke day the lyoun pleyed he,
Upon Grekis his manhood for to haunte;
For he her pride so mortally gan daunte
That thei hym fled, whereso that he rood.

Troy Book

- 980 Makynge al hoot the stremys of her blood
Endelonge to renne upon the grene,
Til the tyme the duke of grete Athene
That callid was whilom Menesteus
With thre thousand knyghtes ful famous,
Of whiche he was bothe lord and guyde,
The feld hath taken upon the lefte side,
For a deceyt, in ful secre wyse,
Where Troylus was with the folke of Fryse
Whiche hath that day, whoso liste to seke,
990 By his knyghthod kyld many Greke.
Liche a tigre gredy on his pray,
Troylus bar hym al the longe day,
Sleynge of Grekis many worthi knyght.
And while that he was besiest in fight
995 Ageyn his soon with Kyng Antipus
And the kyng that highte Alcanus,
Upon Grekis elyche fresche and newe,
Makynge her sydes al of blody hewe,
By oon assent, this thre thorough her manhede —
1000 And specially uppon his baye stede
Whersoever that this Troylus rood,
Every Greke that his swerd abood
Sodeinly he made for to sterre.
Thorough her platis so depe he dide kerfe.
1005 And this contuneth til duke Meneste
Of Troylus sawe the grete cruelte
And the slawghtre that he on Grekis made —
Of hasty ire, with face pale and fade,
Hent a spere and threwe it in the reste
1010 And Troylus smet evene amynd the breste
So sternely that maugre his renoun
To the erthe anon he bare hym doun
In the myddis of his mortal soon
That cruelly hym besette anoon
1015 And him to treyne leide out hoke and laas
Rounde aboute in maner of compas,
With spere and darte and swerdis forgid bright.
But he hymself diffendith like a knyght,
- At full length on*
commander
wants
prey
foes
was called
alike
met
die
car
continuer
dim
(He) seized
smote
despite
foes
Who
snare; line

Book 3

- With gret manhood his honour to avaunce,
 1020 Albe his lif was honged in balanc
 Where he stood and felte ful unsweate,
 In poynt of deth amone the horse fete,
 With gret awaite of duke Meneste
 How this Troylus myght have take be
 1025 Of mortal hate castyng in his thought,
 At meschef take that he eskape nought.
 On every half he was so beset
 With swerdis rounde, kene gronde and whette,
 Allone, alas, mortally bestadde;
 1030 Thei sesid hym, and furthe thei han hym ladde,
 Til Miseres, a worthi knyght of Troye.
 Gan to crye as he stood in the woye,
 Forabassched, in right furious wyse:
 "O ye noble worthi men of Fryse!
 1035 Manly knyghtes, ay preved in the feld,
 Most renomed bothe with spere and scheld,
 Considereth now unto your highe fame
 And adverteth the glorie of youre name,
 How this day thourgh youre negligencie,
 1040 By the power and myghti violence
 Of the Grekis Troylus is itake
 Sool in the feld. For ye han hym forsake,
 That schal rebounde to youre alder schame:
 For ye in sooth gretly are to blame,
 1045 Yif he that is of worthimesse flour
 Be take of Grekis for lak of socour,
 That, but yif ye taken hasty wreche,
 Schamful report your honour schal speche
 Perpetually and seide therof amys
 1050 In youre defaute that Troylus taken is,
 Whiche named be so worthi and famus."
 And with that word the Kyng Alcamus
 Of malencolye felte his herte rye,
 And in his ire hent a spere blyve.
 1055 And prikyng after enhasteth what he might,
 Til he of hem plainly had a sight
 That besy wern Troylus for to lede.

Troy Book

- And he ful knyghtly sittynge on his steede
Ran oon thorugh, that he fel doun ded;
1060 And eft ageyn, pale and no thing red,
In his rancour no lenger wolde lette,
But a Greke, the firste that he mette,
Thorugh the body smette he with a spere,
That men myghte se the poynt afere.
1065 By brest and plate thorugh the scholder-bos,
That to the grunde he fel doun ded anoon.
And therwithal the worthi Freses alle
Cam flokmel doun and on Grekis falle
So myghtely that, maugre her diffence,
1070 Thei sette upon with so gret violence
That Troylus is from al daunger fré;
And thorugh her knyghtly magnanimyté
Thei maden hym to recure his steede.
And specially helpyng in this nede
1075 Was Zantipus, the stronge manly kynge.
Whiche of disdeyn at his incomyng
On Meneste gan his spere grate,
And thorugh his scheld, mail, and thikke plate,
So sore he smot that this Menestee
1080 Had be ded, nadde his armour be;
Whiche for ire gan to tremble and schake
That Troylus was from his hondis take
And eskaped to be prisoner,
Dispit his berd and maugre his power.
1085 Wherfor he gan of hasti boote envie
On his knyghtes furiously to crye
That wer so myghti, renomed, and stronge,
To peynen hem for to venge his wronge
Upon Troyens, to mete hem in the face.
1090 And thei in hast gan myghtely embrace
Her scharpe speris, grunde for to bite,
And felly foyme, and togidre smyte.
For tho began the grete mortal werre:
The fire brast out, schene as any sterre,
1095 On basenettis and her platis bright,
That thorugh the feld flawmeth the light;
- not at all
binder*
- come through*
- by companies
despite*
- fortitude
regain*
- strike*
- had not
Who*
- In spite of anything he can do*
- exert themselves*
- lay hold of*
- thrust*
- bright
helmets*

Book 3

- To lyf nor deth thei toke tho non hede;
And doum the playn, bothe in lengthe and brede,
The wardis gan proudly to avale; divisions; descend
1100 And with lokis of envie pale,
Thei aproche and assemble ifere, together
In hate brennyng that no man may stere, control
And gan hurtle with spere, swerd, and darte,
And mortally upon every parte
1105 The slaughter gan gretly for to cewe. was greatly to be regretted

[As the wholesale battle begins, *Hector kills many Greeks and the Trojans seize the advantage. When he advances alone in the fray, the Greek King Theseus, moved by admiration and his sense of gentility, warns him not to risk his life foolishly. Hector later returns the noble gesture by prevailing on the Trojans to allow Theseus to escape. Nestor arrives with more Greek troops, but Aeneas advances from Troy with reinforcements. As Aeneas and Ajax fight, Ulysses joins the battle, driving back the Trojans and nearly killing Paris, who is rescued by Troilus. Hector eventually calls on Priam to commit the reserves, and he fights Ajax. Greek and Trojan heroes ride to each other's rescue, and in the battle Hector confronts King Merion, who rescued Patroclus's body after Hector had slain him (lines 1106–1888).]*]

- And as I rede, amyd of his victorie
1890 Hector mette under a tentorie tent
Amonge Grekis Merious the Kyng,
To whom he spake withoute more tariyng:
"O thou traytour, the hour aproceth faste,
For thou art come soothly to thi laste;
1895 Thi fatal day hath his cours ironne.
For truse wel, or wearling of the sonne before the setting
I cast pleinly to quite the thi mede to repay you
And with my swerd in haste thi blood to schede:
For thou so bolde were on me today
1900 To lettyn me of my riche praye hinder me from; prey
At the spoilyng of Kyng Patroclus — plundering
That for cause thou were presumptuous Because
Me to distourbe, thou schalt anon be ded."
And doum he sterte, and smote of first his hed, off
1905 And hym to spoille also gan hym haste;
But Meneste cam on hym as faste,

Troy Book

- Whan he behilde traverse at his bake,
And with a spere, in whiche was no lake,
Smot hym in with grete violence.
- 1910 Withoute sight, or any adverstence
Of worthi Hector, or any takynge hede,
The wounde of whom sore gan to blede.
But out he went and made it faste bynde;
And Meneste stale aweye behynde.
- 1915 Nat in purpos sothly, yif he may,
To mete Hector of al that ilke day.
But whan that he was ybonde sore,
His wounde staunche that it bled no more,
More furious than evere he was toforn.
- 1920 Repeired is, with anger al totorne
(So ay the ire on his herte fret),
That he bar doun al that evere he met,
Sleth and kylleth — he was so mercyles —
Alle tho that put hemself in pres
- 1925 Or hardy wern with hym for to mete.
For in his boke lik as wris Daret
For verray soth and in the stori seith
(Yif it be so that men may yeve feyth
And credence of possibilite,
- 1930 As in Guydo clerly ye may se),
Aftir that he caught his lattre wounde,
Finally Grekis to confounde
(So as it is affermed in certeyn),
A thousand knygthes with his hond wer slain,
- 1935 Withoute hem tho that I spak of rath.
And newe alweye he gan his swerd to bathe
In Grekis blod, that sodeinly thei be
So overlayn thorugh his cruelte
That Greke was noon, of highe nor lowe estat,
- 1940 That he ne was awshaped and amaat
Of his knyghthod and manly excellencie:
For ther was non to make resistence
Nor utterly that durste take on honde
Of al that day Hector to withstande.
- 1945 And as it is made also mencioune,
- from behind*
- warning
- had it bound up*
- was dressed so that*
- Returned*
- gnawed*
- combat
- Dares*
- give
- destroy*
- just now*
- overwhelmed*
- amazed and stupified*
- utterly; undertake*

Book 3

	Thilke day Kyng Agamenoun,	<i>That same day</i>
	As seith Guydo, cam nat in the felde;	
	For causes gret his presence he withheldde	
	On Grekis side, that al goth upsdoun:	<i>goes badly</i>
1950	Hector on hem so pleyneth the lyon	
	That to her tentes thei fled for socours.	<i>relief</i>
	And thei of Troye, proudly as victours,	
	Sued aftir by tracis of her blood;	
	And ther thei wan tresour and gret good,	
1955	And spoiled hem in ful gret distresse	<i>Followed</i>
	Of her armour and of her richesse,	<i>possessions</i>
	And felle on hem or that thei were ware,	<i>plundered</i>
	And home to Troye al the good thei bare.	
	For finally that day with meschaunce	<i>before; ready</i>
1960	Grekis had be brought unto outraunce,	
	Withouture recure in soth for everemore;	<i>rain</i>
	On every parte thei were beleyn so sore	<i>remedy</i>
	Thorugh the manhood of Hector and the myght,	<i>set upon</i>
	With helpe of many other worthi knyght,	
1965	That so felly ageyn Grekis wrought:	<i>cruelly</i>
	For to swiche meschef pleinly thei hem brought	
	That nadde ben her owne pitous slouthe,	<i>were it not; sloth</i>
	Of pride only and of foly routhe,	<i>pity</i>
	Thei had of hem at her voluntē	
1970	That day for evere hadde the sovereymē	
	And recured thorugh her highe renoun	<i>obtain</i>
	Lordschip of hem and domynacioun,	
	Whiche schuld have taste and be contynuel,	
	Victoriously and perpetuel	
1975	Have endurid; save cruel Fate	
	Is redy ay with Fortune to debate	<i>contest</i>
	Ageyn thinges that gygne in welfulnes,	
	To make hem fyne ay in wretchednes	
	Thorugh her envious disposicioun	
1980	Of sodeyn chaunge and revolucioune	
	And unwar tournyng of hir false whele,	<i>unforeseen</i>
	That wil nat bide whan a thing is wele —	
	Allas, frell, devoide of sikernesse.	
	The cause was dymmed with dirknesse.	<i>changeable; certainty</i>

Troy Book

- 1985 That hath Troyens thorough false oppinioun
Iblended so in her disresioune
And specially fordirked so the sight
Of worthi Hector, the prudent manly knyght,
To sen aforn what schuld after swē,
Blinded obscured
- 1990 Be good avis the meschef to eschewe
That folwid hem at the bak behynde.
Allas, thei wern wilfully made blynde
The same day, whan thei wer set softe
Be victorie on the hille alofte,
follow
prudence; trouble; avoid
- 1995 That thei nat koude of negligence se
The aftersaf of her felicité,
So put abak was her adverstence
For lak of resoun and of highe prudence:
For thei her hap han voided and her grace,
consequences
attention
- 2000 That presently were sette afore her face.
For in a man is nat commendable
Yif Fortune be to hym favourable
And blaundischinge with a forhede clere
To smyle on hym with a plesaunt chere,
chance; emptied
If
- 2005 Only of favour for to help hym oute,
Whan he in meschef is beset aboute,
Yif he refuse his hap of wilfulness,
Fortune avoidyngs thorough unkyndnes
Whan sche mynystreth to hym of hir grace:
out of
uncharitableness
- 2010 Another tyme he schal bir nat embrace,
Whan he hath nedē to his helpe at al,
To socour hym or he cacche a fal;
But rather than for his ingratitude
Frowardly with mowes hym delude,
grasp
- 2015 Whan he best weneth stond in sikernes.
Fortune is ay so ful of brotulnes,
Remewable, and redy for to flitte
Hir welful hour that who list nat amyte
With hir favoar for to ben allied,
Perversely; derisive grimaces
thinks to; certainty
frailty
- 2020 Another tyme it schal be denied,
Whan he wer levest finde hir favourable:
For in some hour, sothly this no fable,
Unto som man sche graunteh his desires,
Fickle; take away
wish to consent
most glad to find

Book 3

- That wil nat after in a thousand yeres,
2025 Paraventure, onys condiscende
Unto his wil nor his lust hym sende,
As it hath falle this day unhappily
To worthi Hector that so wilfully
Wrought of hede Grekis for to spare,
- Fatally whan thei were in the snare,
For he of hem like a conqueroure,
With victorie, triumphe, and honour
Might have brought, thorugh his highe renoun,
The palme of conquest into Troye toun.
- 2035 Whiche he that day refusid folly.
For as he rood, this Hector, cruelly
Amonge Grekis slowe and bar al doun,
Casually he mette Thelamoun,
I mene Ajax, nyghe of his allye,
- 2040 That of hate and cruel boot envie
To Hector rood, like as he were wood,
Albe to hym that he was nyghe of blod;
Yit for al that, this yonge lusty knyght
Dide his power and his fulle myght
- 2045 Withoute feynyng to have born hym doun
(Whos fader hight also Thelamoun,
That hym begat, the stori telleth thus,
Of Exioun, suster to Priamus).
And this Ajax, flouryng in yonge age,
- 2050 Fresche and delyver and of gres corage,
Sette on Hector of knyghtly highe prowes;
And as thei mette, bothe in her wodnes,
On her stedis, this manly champions,
Everyche on other lik tigers or lyons
- 2055 Begam to falle, and proudly to assaille,
And furiously severe plate and maille —
First with speris, longe, large, and rounde,
And afterwande with swerdis kene grunde.
And fightyng thus longe thei contune,
- 2060 Til it befyl of cas or of fortune,
Tokne or signe, or som apparence,
Or by Naturis kyndly influence,
- By chance; agree
desire
happened
Took care
slain; overthrown
near (to him) in kinship
Yet
overcome
Resone
fury
these
continue
happened by*

Troy Book

- Whiche into hertis dothe ful depe myne,
Namly of hem that born ben of o lyne.
Which cause was, paraunter, of this tweyne,
Naturelly her rancour to resreyne,
And her ire for to modefie —
Only for thei so nyghte were of allye,
Unwist of outhir and therof unsure,
Til thei wer taughte only of Nature:
For naturally blod wil ay of kynde
Draw unto blod, wher he may it fynde,
Whiche made Hector kyndly to adverte
To be mevid and sterid in his herte,
Bothe of knyghthod and of gentilnes,
Whan he of Ajax sawe the worthines,
Spak unto hym ful benygnely
And seide: "Cosyn, I seye the trewely,
Yif thou list Grekis here forsake
And come to Troye, I dare undirtake
To thin allies and to thi kynrede
Thou schalt be there withouten any drede
Ful wel receyved, in party and in al,
Of hem that ben of the blood royal
Sothly discendid and byest of degré,
That is of right schal suffise unto the,
And kyndely be to the plesaunce
For to repeire to thin alyaunce —
To gentil herte sith nothing is so good
As be confederid with his owne blood;
For I conceyve be the worthines,
Whiche Nature doth in the expresse,
Of Troyan blood that thou arte descendid,
Whiche of Grekis long hath be offendid:
Wherfore I rede to leve hem outherly."
And he answered ageyn ful humblye
That, sithen he of berthe was a Greke,
And was of youthe amonge hem fostered eke
From the tyme of his nativité,
And taken had the ordre and degré
Of knyghthood eke amongis hem aforn.
- penetrate
lineage

kinship
Unknown to

nature

turn his attention

to you
if; wish
promise

you
return; kinmen

joined
perceive
you

advise; altogether

also

Book 3

- And, over this, bounde was and sworn
 To be trewe to her nacioun
 (Makymg of blood noon excepcion),
 2105 He swore he wold conserven his beheste; *keep his promise*
 And to Hector he made this requeste:
 That yif that he of manful gentilnes
 Wolde of knyghthood and of worthines
 Shewe unto hym so gret affeccions
 2110 To make hem that wer of Troye toun
 Only withdrawe Grekis to pursewe, *stop pursuing*
 And fro her tentis make hem to remewe,
 And resorte ageyn unto the toun,
 Of knyghtly routhe and compassioun,
 2115 Withoute assailyng or any more affray *same*
 Made on Grekis for that ilke day.
 Sith unto hem ought inowgh suffice
 That of the felde, in so knyghtly wyse,
 Thei were of manhood fully possessours
 2120 And of her fomen finally victours,
 Lyk as toforn fully is diffinyd. *described*
 To whos requeste Hector is enclyned
 (Allas the while) of hasty wilfulness
 And made anoon withoute avysenes
 2125 Mid the felde a trumpet for to blowe,
 Wherby Troyens fally myghte knowe
 That be his wil thei schulde hem withdraw
 Afir the custom, pleynly, and the lawe,
 And the usaunce, bothe nygh and ferre,
 2130 Amongis hem that ben expert in warre,
 Whan thei were mooste fervent for to fight,
 Upon Grekis for to preve her myght,
 And had hem chacid lowe to the stroade,
 That thei wer weyke of power to withstande: *shore*
 2135 For thei of Troye, alle of o desire, *one*
 Gan setyn on with schot of wylde fire
 To brenne hir schippis and of highe meschaunce
 Finally to putte hem at outraunce.
 And so thei had, this the verray trouthe, *to rain*
 2140 Nadde Hector had upon hem routh, *they would have*
If Hector had not compassion

Troy Book

- Makynge Troyens repeire to the toun
Ungraciously, to her confusioune,
As the story schal aftir speccifie.
For tho he putte, alias, in jupartē
- 2145 Life and deth, whiche myght have be sure,
The whiche ageyn thei nevere schal recure.
Thei han mater to compleyne sore;
For fro that day, farewel for everemore
Victorie and laude fro hem of the toun,
- 2150 To hem denyed by disposicioun
Of mortal fate, whiche was contrarie —
In this mater me liste no lenger tarie.
For thei of Troye ben entrid her cytē
And schet her gatis for more suretē;
- 2155 For of that day, lyk as made in mynde,
This was the ende, in Guydo as I fynde —
Thei wende have do paraunser for the besse.

[The Trojans are prepared to renew battle the next day, but the Greeks ask for an eight days' truce, during which they bury their dead and Achilles constructs a tomb for Patroclus and for Protesilaus. The Trojans tend to their wounded, while Priam mourns for his natural son Cassandra, whom he buries in a rich tomb in the temple of Venus. During the funeral rite, Cassandra prophesies the fall of Troy (lines 2158-2237).]

- In whiche thing, whan that Cassandra
Withinne hirsilfe considered and beheld
- 2240 And saw up offrid his helm and his shield,
His swerd also, and unto Mars his stede.
Of inward wo sche felt hir herte blede,
Herynge the noise and the pitous crye,
The tendre weeping and sorwyngg outlierly
- 2245 Of hem of Troye, and the lamentacioun
Whiche for her frendis, thorughoute al the toun,
Thei gan to make, that wer slawe afore.
With sodeyn rage her herte was totore,
So inwardly sche myght hir nat restreyne
- 2250 Furiously to cryen and compleine,
And seide, "Alias" ful ofte and "Wellawey":
"O woful wrecchis that ye be this day."

return
Unfortunately; destruction

might have been secure
recover

praise

shut

stain before
torn

Book 3

- Unhappy eke and graceles also,
Infortunat and inly wobego!
- 2255 How may ye suffre the grete harmys kene
Whiche ye ar likly herafter to sustene
Durynge the sege in this toun beloke,
Seynge your soon, redy to be wroke,
Aboute you, beset on every side.
- 2260 To be vengid on youre grete pride?
I wot right wel ye may hem nat eschewe,
That thei ne schal unto the deth pursewe
You everychon, besegid in this place,
Withoute mercy, pitē, or any grace.
- 2265 Alias, alias, whi nil ye besy be,
Ye woful wrechis schet in this citē,
With the Grekis for to seken pes,
Or the swerd of vengeance merciles
On highe and lowe do execuciou?
- 2270 And or this noble, worthi, royal toun
Eversid be and ybrought to nought,
Why list ye nat consideren in your thought
How the modres with her childre smale
In stretis schal, with face ded and pale,
- 2275 Lyn mordred here thorugh Grekis cruelitē
And yonge maydenes in captivitē
Bewepen schal in myserie and in wo
Her servytude; and this toun also,
So famous ryche — alias, it is pitē —
- 2280 With Grekis fire schal distroyed be
In schort tyme, sothly this no were.
Eleyne of us, alias, is bought to dere,
Sith for hir sake we schul everychon,
Pore and riche, I excepte noon,
- 2285 An ende make woful and pitous:
The ire of hem schal be so furious
Upon us alle, ther is noon other mene
Sauf only deth us to go betwene."
- 2290 This was the noise and the pitous cry
Of Cassandra that so dredfully
Sche gan to make aboute in every strete
- too
wretched
- shut up
avenged
besieged
- know
- will you not
shut
- Before
- Overthrown
do you not wish
- doubt
- means
to mediate between us

Troy Book

- Thorugh the toun, whomever sche myght mete,
Lyk as sche had ben oute of bir mynde.
Til Priamus faste made hir bynde
2295 And schettyn up — it was the more roughith;
Sche was nat herde, albe sche seide trougth:
For nouther wisdam nor discrecion,
Counsel nor wit, prudence nor resoun,
Trouth nor rede — withouten any lye —
2300 Nor the spirite of trewe proficye,
Availleth nat nor al swiche sapience
In place wher ther is noon audience.
For be a man inly nevere so wys
In counseillynge or in hyghe devys.
2305 In werkynge outhir in eloquence,
Eche thing to sen in his adverstence
Or it be falle, afor in his resoun,
Amyd the eye of his discreccoun,
Yet for al this (it is the more dool),
2310 Withoute favour he holde is but a fool:
For unfavored, wyndam availleth nought
Nouther trouth, how dere that it be bought,
Liche as Cassandra for al bir wyse rede
Dispised was, and taken of noon hede
2315 Of hem of Troye, to her confusoun,
But cruelly ythrown in prisoun,
Where a whyle I wele leve hir dwelle
And of Grekis furth I wil you telle.

had her bound
pity
truth

prophecy

advice

foresight

Before

(see note)

sorrow

is thought

advice

destruction

[In the Greek camp, King Palamedes complains about the selection of Agamemnon as their leader, but others intervene to mollify him for the moment. When battle resumes, Achilles and Hector fight one another, and then in succession Diomedes and Troilus, and Menelaus and Paris confront each other. When Prothenor, Achilles's cousin, tries to attack Hector from behind, Hector cuts him in two. Hungry for vengeance, Achilles tries to rally the Greeks for an attack on Hector, but Hector and the Trojans drive the Greeks from the field and return to Troy in glory. The Greek chieftains meet to consider what they should do about Hector (lines 2319-2666).]

Whan Esperus, the faire brighte sterre,
Ageynes eve caste his stremys ferre

far

Book 3

- | | | |
|------|--|--|
| 2670 | And in the weste rathest gan appere,
Whan the twylyght with a pale chere,
In maner morneth the absence of the sonne
And nyght aprocheth with his copis donne,
The same tyme whan Titan toke his leve
That clerks calle crepusculum at eve — | <i>most readily did</i>
<i>dark copes</i>
<i>dusk</i>
<i>intermediate</i>
<i>is called; midpoint</i>
<i>mixed</i> |
| 2675 | Whiche is nat ellis but the mene light
Of Phebus absence and the dirke nyght,
And twylight batte (for it is a mene
Of day and nyght, departinge hem betwene,
Fully souther but of bothe meynt, | |
| 2680 | Or the hevene be clustryd and depeynt
With brighte sterres in the evenyng —
At whiche tyme Agamenoun the Kyng
For his lordis sodeinly hath sent
To come anon echon into his tent. | <i>Before; painted</i> |
| 2685 | And whan thei wern assemblid alle yfere,
Triste and hevy with a sorful chere,
Thei gan the slaughter of Hector to compleine,
Affermyng playnly thei myght never ateyne
Unto victorie while he were on lyve: | <i>at once each one</i>
<i>together</i>
<i>Sorrowful</i>
<i>lament</i> |
| 2690 | Wherfore thei gan to conspire blive
The deth of hym in many sondry woye
Echon concludyng, while he wer in Troy,
It was nat likly Grekis for to wynne;
For he alone of hem that were withinne | <i>at once</i> |
| 2695 | Was chef diffence and protectioun,
And sovereynly upholder of the toun,
Her myghty castel and her stronge wal,
And unto Grekis dedly fo mortal:
For thei ne myght his grete force endure | |
| 2700 | Nor never aright ageyn her foos be sure,
He stondyng hool (thei seide) in no degré
Nor whil he floureth in felicité.
Wherfor, echon of oon entenciouen,
Thei condiscende to this conclusiouen: | <i>each one being</i>
<i>agree</i> |
| 2705 | That be som sleight of awain lying,
Whan he were most besy in fightymge
Amongis hem in meschef or diassesse, | <i>ambush</i> |

Troy Book

- That Achilles do his besynes
With al his myght unwarly him to assaille,
That hym to slen for no thing that he faille.
And Grekis alle gan her prayer make
To Achilles for to undirtake
Of this emprise fynally the swt,
Thorugh his manhood that it be execut —
The hasty deth of her mortal foo.
And Achilles withoute wordis moo
Her requeste assenteth to performe
And to her lust gan holly hym conforme.
Fro that tyme late hym be war, I rede.
To be to hasty this journé for to spedē,
Upon Hector his power for to kythe,
List Fortune awronge hir face writhe,
To loke on hym with a foward chere.
Hym to bringe unto the hondis nere
Thorugh sort or hap. of Hector, folilly
To put his lif of deth in jupasty.
List unto hym it happe evene lyche
To falle hymselfe in the same dyche
That he for Hector compassid hath and shape:
For it is wonder yif that he eskape,
Sith Hector hadde withouten any drede
As brennyng ire and as grete hatrede
To Achilles his deth for to purvey,
Yif he hym founde or in place sey
Convenient for execucion.
I trow ther schuld hym gayne no raunsoun,
Nor other mede his herte to quyete,
But only deth, whan so that thei mete:
This the ende and fyn of this mater,
As in this boke after ye schal here.
And thus Grekis maked han an ende
Of her counsell, and anoon thei wende,
Everyche of hem, hom to her loggyng,
And toke her rest til the morwenyng.
- without warning
slay; in no way
pursuit
more
Their
wishes
combat
show
Lest; wrongly; turn away
unfavorable face
jeopardy
alike
planned
if
Since
reward
their dwellings

Book 3

[Hector leads the Trojans out, eager to finish the fight. In the individual confrontations, Hector battles Agamemnon and Achilles, Diomedes and Aeneas resume their hatred, and Menelaus wounds Paris. When Thoas and Achilles fight later in the day, Hector is wounded but is able to cut off half of Thoas's nose. Thoas is captured and carried off to Troy. Paris shoots Menelaus with a poison arrow. After the surgeons care for his wound, Menelaus returns to battle and finds Paris unarmed. Aeneas intervenes and sends Paris back to Troy as the Trojans force the Greeks back to their camp before retiring. On the next morning, Priam calls his counselors to him (lines 2745-3102).]

	Til on the mowe that the rowes rede Of Phebus cartē gonē for to sprede	red beams
3105	Aforn his upriste in the orient.	chariot
	At whiche tyme Kyng Priamus hathe sent For swiche as werne with him moste prevē	rising
	And of his counseille inwardly secrē; And specialy he sente for be name	such; intimate
3110	For worthi Hector, that grettest was of fame, For Paris eke, and for Dephebus,	also
	And for Troylus, freshe and desirous,	eager
	For Anthenor, and for Pollydamas, And for the Trojan called Eneas:	
3115	For he that day cast him nat to goon Into the felde to mete with his soon.	meant
	And whan thei wern to his paleis come, The lordis han the righte weye nome	
	Unto the kyng withinne his closet;	came directly
3120	And whan the hussher hath the dore shet, And everyche hadde liche to his degré	inner chamber
	His place take and his dewe see, This worthi kyng, as made is mencious,	asher; shat
	Gan to declare his hertis mocious,	according
3125	And his menyngē aforn hem specifie, And seide: "Sirs, in whom I moste affie,	appropriate seat
	To yow is knowe how Kyng Thoas is here	
	In this citē taken prisoner,	trust most
	And is as yet beloken in prisoun	known
3130	Whiche evere hath be unto Troye town An enmy gret, unto his power,	Who
	And us offendid bothe fer and nere	

Troy Book

	In many wyse (albe we litel reche)	take little notice
	As fer as he his force myghte streche;	
3135	And now with Grekis cam to sege our toun,	beseige
	As he that wilneth oure distruccioun,	
	And thereupon hath done his besynes:	
	Wherfore, of doom and of rightwysnes,	judgment
	Bothe of resoun and of equitye,	
3140	I seie pleynly, as semeth unto me,	
	So that it be to yow acceptable	Providing
	And that ye think my counsel comendable,	
	Liche as he hath caste oure deth and shape,	
	I holde rightful that he nat eskape	
3145	But that of deth he resseyve his guerdoun.	receive; reward
	For right requereth and also good resoun,	
	That deth for deth is skilful guerdonyng,	reasonable reward
	Unto my wit, and right wel sittynge:	appropriate
	Seth your avis pleynly in this cas."	State
3150	And first of alle tho spake Eneas	
	And seide: "Lord, so it be noon offence	
	To youre highnes to yeve me audience,	give
	Thorugh supporte here of hem that be ful wys,	
	I shal reberse pleynly my devys,	
3155	What is to werken as in this matere:	explain; advice
	Me semeth first, my lege lorde so dere,	
	That youre noble, royal excellencie	
	Consydre shulde, with ful highe prudence,	
	In every werke and operacion	
3160	To caste aforn, in conclusioun,	foresee
	The final ende that may after swe;	follow
	For to a wysman only is nat dewe	necessary
	To se the gynnyng and the endyng noct,	
	But bothe attonis peisen in his thought	
3165	And weien hem so justly in balaunce	at once contemplate (weigh)
	That of the fym folwe no repentaunce.	weigh
	Whi I seie this and platly whi I mene	
	Is for that ye oughten for to sene	
	How Kyng Thoas is oon the principal	
3170	Amonge Grekis and of the blood royal,	from the outcome
	Yif ye considre descendid as be lyn:	express my opinion

Book 3

- Wherfore, yif he have thus foule a fyn
 To be slawe while he is in presoun,
 It myght happen, in conclusoun.
 end
 slain
- 3175 That ye and yours that thereto assente
 Hereafterwarde sore to repente.
 I preve it thus: that yif by aventure
 Or fortune, that no man may assure,
 Some of youre lordis were another day
 3180 Of Grekis take, as it happe may.
 Or of youre sonys, so worthi of resoun,
 Or of kynges that ben in this toun,
 Trusteth me wel that swiche gentilnes
 As ye schew to hem in her distres
 3185 Thei wil you quyte, whan in cas semblable
 Fortune to hem thei finde favorable,
 The whiche no man constreyne may nor bindre.
 Wherfore, my lorde, have this thing in mynde:
 For yif Thoas, of short avisement,
 3190 Shal nowe be ded thorough hasty jugement,
 Another day Grekis wil us quyte,
 And of rigour make her malis byte
 On some of youris, whoevere that it be,
 And nouther spare highe nor lowe degré,
 3195 Though he were paraunter of youre blood;
 The whiche thing, for al this worldis good
 It myghtie falle that ye nolde se.
 Wherfore I rede, lete Kyng Thoas be
 Honestly keped in prisoun
 3200 Lyche his estate stille here in this toun,
 Lest, as I seide, that another day
 Somme lorde of youris, as it happe may,
 Casuually were take of aventure:
 Be eschaunge of hym ye myghte best recure
 3205 Withoute strif youre owne man ageyn.
 In this mater I can no more seyn,
 But finally this is my fulle rede."
 To whiche counseil Hector toke good heede,
 And for it was accordyng to resoun,
 3210 He hit commendith in his oppinoun.
- demonstrate (the point)
- By; taken
- sach
- return
- reflection
- repay
- ill will bite
- by chance
- would not want to see it happen
- advise
- According to his social rank
- Lest
- By chance
- By; recover
- advice
- because
- praises

Troy Book

- But Priam, evere of oo entencioun,
Stode alweie fix to this conclusioun,
Pleinly affirmynge: "Yif Grekis may espie
That we this kyng spare of genterye,
3215 Thei wil arrete it cowardye anoon,
That we dar nat venge us of oure foon
For verray drede, havyng noon hardines
Nor herte nouther to do rightwissnes;
Yet, nevertheles, after youre assent
3220 That he shal leve, I wele in myn entest
To youre desire fully condescende."
And of this counseil so thei made an ende
Withoute more, save Eneas is go
And Troylus eke and Anthenor also
3225 Into an halle, excellynge of bewte,
The Quene Eleyne of purpos for to se,
With whom was eke Eccuba the Quene,
And other ladyes goodly on to sene,
And many mayde that yonge and lusti was.
3230 And worthi Troilus with this Eneas
Dide her labour and her besy peyne
For to confortre the faire Quene Eleyne,
As sche that stood for the werre in drede;
But for all that, of verray wommanhede
3235 Thilke tyme with al hir herte entere,
As she wel loude, maked hem good chere,
Havyngo of konnyng iuly suffisaunce
Bothe of chere and of dalyaunce.
And Eccuba, beyng in this halle
3240 Verray example unto women alle,
Of bounte havynge sovereyn excellencie,
In wisdom eke, and in eloquence,
Besoughte hem tho wonder wommanly
And counsaillde eke ful prudently,
3245 For any haste, bothe nyghe and ferre,
Avisely to kepe hem in the werre,
And nat juparte her bodies folily,
But to adverte and caste prudently
In diffence knyghtly of the toun,
- because he is noble*
attribute
- agreement*
- also*
- pleasing*
- The same*
- skill*
mood; conversation
- goodness*
- coateasly*
risk
consider

Book 3

- 3250 Hem to governe by discrecion:
 She spake of feith and koude no thinge feyne.
 And thanne of hir and after of Eleyne
 Thei toke leve and no lenger dwelle
 But went her wey.

in no way

[*The Greeks mourn their losses, and during the night a high wind blows down the tents in their camp. But the damage is repaired by dawn, and Achilles leads their forces into the field, where he kills the giant Hupon. The centaur Epistrophus, a skilled archer, slays many Greeks, but he is killed by Diomede. During the fighting Achilles and Hector meet again and Antenor is captured by the Greeks. In the next day's battle, the Trojans suffer many losses and must retire to the city. In the morning, the Greeks send Ulysses and Diomede to Priam to ask for a three months' truce, which everyone in Priam's council, except Hector, endorses. During the truce, it is agreed to exchange Thoas for Antenor (lines 3255–3663).]*

- | | | |
|------|---|----------------------------------|
| 3665 | And while the trewe dide thus endure,
Thei fil in trete and in comwynnge
Of Anthenor and Thoas the Kyng:
That Anthenor delyvered shulde be
For Kyng Thoas to Troye the cité
And Thoas shulde to Grekis home ageyn. | <i>truce</i> |
| 3670 | Only be eschaunge, as ye han herde me seyn,
Oon for another, as it accorded was.
And in this while the byshope, he, Calchas,
Remembred hym on his daughter dere
Callid Cryseide, with hir eyen clere, | <i>negotiation; conversation</i> |
| 3675 | Whom in Troye he had lefte behynde
Whanne he wente, as the boke makith mynde:
For whom he felte passingly gret smert,
So tenderly she was set at his heire
And enprentid, bothe at eve and morwe. | <i>exchange</i> |
| 3680 | And chefe cause and grounde of al his sorwe
Was that she lefte behynde hym in the toun
Withoutte confort or consolacion,
As he caste, soothly in his absence
And specially for his grete offence | <i>grief</i> |
| 3685 | That he hath wrought ayens hem of Troye;
And as hym thought, he never shulde han joye
Til he his daughter recurred hath ageyn. | <i>war left</i> |
| | | <i>against</i> |
| | | <i>recovered</i> |

Troy Book

- Wherfore Calchas, the story seith certeyn,
In his wittes many weies caste *mind*
- 3690 Howe that he myght, while the trew doth laste,
Recure his daughter by som maner way; *Regain*
And as I fynde, upon a certeyn day
In his porie wonder humbly,
With wepyng eye, wente pitously *appearance*
- 3695 In compleymyng, of teris al bereymed.
(Whos inwardre wo sothly was nat feined);
And on his knees anoon he falleth doun
Tofore the grete Kyng Agamenoun, *Before*
Besechynge hym with al humilité,
- 3700 Of verray mercy and of highe pité.
With other kynges sittinge in the place,
To have routhe, and for to don hym grace,
And on his wo to have compassioune,
That he may have restitucioun *return*
- 3705 Of his daughter whom he loved so,
Preyinge hem alle her dever for to do, *to do their best*
That thorugh her prudent medyacioun
For Antenor that was in her prisoun
With Kyng Thoas she myght eschaunged be.
- 3710 Yif that hem liste of her benignyté *If; kindness*
To his requeste goodly to assente.
And thei him graunte; and forthe anoon thei sente
To Kyng Priam for to have Cryseide
For Calchas sake; and therwithal thei leide
- 3715 The charge for his wonder specially *duty*
On hem that wente for this embassatrie *embassy*
To Troye toun and to Kyng Priamus,
To whom Calchas was so odyous,
So hateful eke thoroughoute al the toun
- 3720 That this reporte was of him up and doun:
That he a traytour was and also false,
Worthi to ben enhonged be the halse *neck*
For his tresoun and his doublenes.
And, overmore, thei seiden eke expresse
- 3725 That he disserued hath be right of lawe
Shamfully firste for to be drawe *drawn*

Book 3

	And afterward the most orrible deth That he may have, to yeldem up the breth Liche a treytour in as dispitous wyse	horrible
3730	As amy herte can theske or devyse, Everyche affermynge as by jugement That deth was noon ffullly equipolent	pitiless
	To his deserte nor to his falsenes, As yoage and olde pleinly bar witnes,	equivalent
3735	Concludynge eke for his iniquite That thei wolde assent in no degré Unto nothiage that myght his herte plesse	appropriate punishment
	Nor of Cryseide, for to don hym ese, Thei caste nat to make delyveraunce —	
3740	Lever thei hadden to yeve hym meschaunce, Yif thei hym myght have at goode large. But finally th'effecte of al this charge	<i>They would prefer; disaster at liberty</i>
	Is so ferforthe dryven to the ende	<i>effort</i>
	That Priamus hath graunted sche shal wende	
3745	With Kyng Thoas — shortly, ther is no more — Unto his fader for Daungh Anthenor:	<i>Lord</i>
	Whoevere gruche, the Kyng in parliament	
	Hath theruppon yove jugement	<i>given</i>
3750	So outherly it may nat be repellid; For with his worde the sentencoe was asselid	<i>completely; rescinded</i>
	That she mot parte with hir eyen glade.	<i>conformed</i>
	And of the sorwe pleinly that she made	<i>must; bright</i>
	At hir departyng heraftir ye shal here,	
	Whan it ageym cometh to my matere.	
3755	The trew afferyd, as ye han herd devise, On outher side of hem that wer ful wyse	
	And ful assentid of hem everychon	
	Til thre monthes come be and goon,	
	Liche as I rede, on a certeyn day,	
3760	Whan agreeable was the morwe gray, Blaundisshinge and plesant of delit,	
	Hector in herte caughte an appetite	
	(Like as Guydo liketh for to write)	
	The same day Grekis to vesite	
3765	Ful wel beseyn and wounder richely	<i>good looking</i>

Troy Book

- With many worthi in his company,
Of swiche as he for the nonys ches.
And to the tent first of Achilles,
I fynde, in soth this worthi Troyan knyght
3770 Upon his stede toke the weie right,
Ful liche a man, as made is mencoun.
Now hadde Achilles gret affeccioun
In his herte bothe day and nyght
Of worthi Hector for to han a sight:
3775 For never his lyve by non occasioune
He myght of hym han non inspeccioune
Nor hym beholde at good liberte;
For unarmyd he myght him never se.
But wonder knayghtly bothe in port and chere
3780 Thei had hem bothe as thei mette in fere
And right manly in her countenaunce,
And at the laste thei fille in dalyunce.
But Achilles firste began abreide
And unto hym evene thus he seide.
3785 "Hector," quod he, "ful plesynge is to me
That I at leiser natid may the se.
Sith I of the nevere myght have sight
But whan thou were armyd as a knyght;
And now to me it schal be ful grevous,
3790 Whiche am to the so inly envious,
But thou of me — ther is no more to seyne —
Be slaien anon with myn hondis tweyne:
For this in soth wer hoolly my plesaunce,
By cruel deth to take on the vengaunce;
3795 For I ful ofte in werre and eke in fight
Have felt the vertu and the grete myght
Of thi force thorugh many woundis kene,
That upon me be ful fresche and greze
In many place be shedyng of my blood.
3800 Thou were on me so furious and wood,
Ay compassyng to my distruccioen:
For many a mail of myn haberion
Thi sharpe swerd racid hathe asonder
And cruelly severed here and yonder.
- such; occasion chose
bearing and mood
together
conversation
cry out
without armor
thee
you
mad
contriving
habergeon (shirt of mail)
cut

Book 3

- 3805 And mortally, as I can signes shewe,
My platis stronge percid and ihewe;
And myn harneis, forgid bright of stèle,
Might nevere assured ben so wele,
In thin ire whan thou liste to smyte, cut
armor
- 3810 That thi swerd wolde kerfe and bite
Into my fleshe ful depe and ful profounde,
As shewith yit be many mortal wounde
On my body, large, longe, and wyde
That yit appere uppon every syde wished
- 3815 And day be day ful sore ake and smerte.
For whiche thing me semeth that myn herte
Enbolleth newe, now whan I the se, swell
Of highe dispit avengid for to be —
So am I fret of envious rage consumed
- 3820 That it may never in my brest aswage
Til the vengaunce and the fatal sat
Of cruel deth be on the execut. diminish
And of o thing moste is my grevaunce,
Whan I have fully remembraunce pernix
- 3825 And in my mynde considre up and doun —
How thou madist a divisoun
Of me, alias, and of Patroclus.
So young, so manly, and so vertuous.
Whom I loved, as it was skyl and right, reasonable and just
- 3830 Right as myself with al my ful myght,
With as hol herte and inly kyndenes
As any tonge may tellen or expres.
Now hast thou made a departisoun
Of us that werne by hool affeccion affection
- 3835 Iknæt in oon of hertly allyaunce.
Without partynge or disseveraunce —
So utterly oure feithful hertis tweyen
Elacid werne and lokkid in o cheyne,
Whiche myghte nat for noon adversité separation
Joined
separation
absolutely
Fastened together
- 3840 Of lyf nor deth assonder twynned be,
Til cruelly thou madest us departe,
Whiche thorugh myn hert so inwardly darte
That it wil never in sooth out of my thought. severed
pierce

Troy Book

- 3845 And trust wel, ful dere it shal be bought
The deth of hym and be no thing in were,
Paraventure or endid be this yere:
For upon the only for his sake
Of cruel deth vengaunce shal be take.
I the ensure, withouten other bond;
3850 Yif I may lyve, with myn owne bond
I shal of deth don execucion,
Withoute abood or long dylacion.
For right requereth withouten any drede
Deth for deth for his final mede;
3855 For I myselfe theron shal be wroke,
That thorugh the world herafter shal be spoke
How Achilles was vengid of his foo
For Patroclus that he loved so.
And though that I be to the envious
3860 And of thi deth inly desirous.
Ne wyte me nat, ne put on me no blame;
For wel I wote thou arte to me the same,
And haste my deth many day desyred,
And therupon inwardly conspired:
3865 And thus shortly, as atwen us two,
Ther is but deth withoute wordis mo;
Wham Fortune hath the tyme shape,
I hope fally thou shalt nat eskape —
Truse noon other, I seie the outerly."
- 3870 To whom Hector nat to hastely
Answerid ageyn with sobre countenaunce,
Avised wel in al his daliaunce,
As he that was in no thing rekeles;
And evene thus he spake to Achilles:
- 3875 "Sir Achilles, withouten any faille
Thou aughtest nat in herte to mervaille
Though with my power and my faille myght,
With herte and wylle, of verray due right
Day be day I thi deth conspire.
- 3880 And ever in oon compasse it and desire,
And do my labour erly and eke late
To pursue it by ful cruel hate.

*do not doubt it
before*

*assure
if*

waiting

*reward
avenged*

you ill willed

*reproach
know*

*Considered
in no way*

conspire

Book 3

- Thou oughtest nat to wondren in no wyse
 But fully knowe, by sentence of the wise,
 3885 In no maner, whoso taketh bede,
 Of rightwysnes it may nat procede
 That outhir I or any other wight
 Shulde hym love that with al his myght
 My deth pursuweth and destruccoun,
 3890 And over this, to more confusoun,
 Hath leide a sege abouthe this cite
 On my kynrede and also uppon me,
 And therupon felly doth preswme
 With mortal hate of werre to conswme
 3895 Us everychon. Iwis, I can nat fynde
 In myn herte, as by lawe of kynde,
 Swiche on to love of right nor equite
 Nor have hym chere sothly in no degré:
 For of werre may no frendlybede
 3900 Nor of debate love aright procede;
 For sothly love moste in special
 Of feithfulnes hath his original,
 In hertis joyned by convenience
 Of oon accord, whom no difference
 3905 Of doublenes may in no degré,
 Nouther in joye nor adversité,
 For lyf nor deth assounder nor dissevere;
 For where love is, it contuneth evere;
 But of hate al is the contrarie.
 3910 Of whiche sothly from hertis whan thei varie,
 Procedeth rancour, at eye as men may se,
 Debat, envye, strife, and enmyté,
 Mortal slaughter, bothe nyghe and ferre,
 Moder of whiche in sothfastnes is werre,
 3915 The fyn wherof, longe or it be do,
 Severith hertis, and frendship kut atwo,
 And causeth love to be leide ful lowe.
 But for al this, I wil wel that thou knowe
 Thi proude wordis, in herte nor in thought,
 3920 In verray soth agaste me right nouȝt;
 And yif I schal ferthermore oustreke
- person
who
destruction
cruelly
nature
love
strife
source
Of one accord
duplicity
sunder
continues
as men may plainly see
result: long before it is gone
frighten
break out [into speech]

Troy Book

	Without avaunte the trouthe for to speke, I seie the plenly, hennes or two yere, Yif I may live in this werris here	boast
3925	And my swerde of knyghthod forthe achieve, I hope in soth so mortally to greve The Grekis alle, whan I with hem mete,	harm
	That thei and thou shal fele fal unswele, Yif ye contynewe and the werris haunt:	feel pursue
3930	I shal your pride and surquedie adaunte In swiche a wyse with myn bondis two That, or the werre fully be al do,	arrogance subdue
	Ful many Greke sore shal it rewe. For wel I wote of olde and nat of newe	all done
3935	That ye Grekis gadred here in on Of surquedie are fonned everychon, Only for want of discretion	together infatuated
	To undirtaken of presumpcioun So highe a thing — a sege for to leyn —	seize
3940	And youresilfe to overcharge in veyn With emprises whiche, withouten fable, Bene of weight to you importable,	overburden lie
	And the peis of so gret hevynes That finally it wil you alle oppres	too heavy burden
3945	And youre pride avalen and encline, The berthen eke enbowe bak and chyne And unwarly cause you to falle	bear down
	Or ye have done, I seie to oon and alle. And, overmore, be fal in suretē —	send downwards; overthrow
3950	Thou, Achilles, I speke unto the — That fatal deth first schal the assaille Toforn thi swerde in anything availle	bend down
	Ageynes me for al thi worthines.	suddenly
3955	And yif so be that so gret hardines, Corage of wil, vigour, force, or myght	desperate courage
	Meven thin herte be manbod as a knyght	settle by combat
	To take on the, as in dorynge do.	
	For to darreyne here betwene us two	
	Thilke quarel, howso that befalle,	
3960	For the whiche that we striven alle,	

Book 3

- | | | |
|------|---|-------------------------|
| | I wil assent plenly to juparte
Til that the deth oon of us departe.
Ther is no more but that thes lordis here,
Kynges, princes wil accorde ifere | <i>risk</i> |
| 3965 | That it be do fully be oon assent
And holde stable of heric and of entent,
Within a felde only that we tweyne,
As I have seide, this quarel may dareyne
And it finyshe, be this condicioun: | <i>together</i> |
| 3970 | That yif it hap thorugh thin highe renous
Me to venquyshe or puttem at outraunce,
I wil you maken fully assuraunce
That firsate my lord, Priamus the Kyng,
Shal unto Grekis in al maner thing, | <i>settle by combat</i> |
| 3975 | With septre and crowne, holly him submitte
And in a point varie nouther flitte,
Fully to yelde to youre subjectioun
Al his lordshippe withinne Troye toun; | <i>nor waver</i> |
| 3980 | And his legis in captivit 
Shal goon her weye oute of this cit 
And leve it quit in youre governaunce,
Withoutte strif or any variaunce.
And hereupon to maken suret , | <i>liege lords</i> |
| 3985 | To devoyde al ambiguit 
Tofore the goddis be othe and sacramente
We shal be swore in ful good entent;
And, overmore, oure feith also to save,
To assure you in plegge ye shal have | <i>do away with</i> |
| 3990 | The menewhile to kepe hem on your syde
At youre chois hostagis to abide
From Troye toun, of the worthieste
That ye liste chese and also of the beste,
So that ye shal of no thing be in were | <i>sworn</i> |
| 3995 | Of al that evere that I seie you here.
And, Achilles, withoutte wordes mo,
Yif that thou liste accorde ful thereto
That I have seide, thin honour to encresse,
To make this werre sodeinly to sesse | <i>pledge</i> |
| | That likly is for to laste longe | <i>nobiest</i> |
| | | <i>please</i> |
| | | <i>in no way; doubt</i> |

Troy Book

- 4000 Betwene Troyens and the Grekes stronge.
Thou shalt nat only with honour and with fame
Thorughoute the world getyn the a name
But therwithal — and that is nat a lyte — *little*
Thorugh thi knyghthod so many man profite
- 4005 That fro the deth shal eskape alyve
And to his contré hol and sounde aryve
That likly arn by cruel aventure
For to be ded, yif the werre endure.
Come of, therfor, and late nat be proloigned,
- 4010 But lat the day atwen us two be joyned,
As I have seide, in condicioun,
Yif in diffence only of this toun
I have victorie by fortune on the,
I axe nat bat anoon that ye *immediately*
- 4015 Breke up sege, and the werre lete,
And suffreth us to lyven in quiete,
Into Grece hom whan ye ar goon."
To the whiche thing Achilles anom,
Hoot in his ire and furious also.
- 4020 Brennyng ful hote for anger and for wo,
Assentid is with a dispitous chere; *pitiless*
And gan anoon to Hector dresse him mere;
And seide he wolde delivere him ousterly
Fro poynt to point his axyng by and by; *turn to
commit himself*
- 4025 And therin made noon excepcion,
But of hool herte and entencion
His requeste accepted everydel,
And, as it sempte, liked it right wel. *seemed*
And for his parte, he caste a glove doun
- 4030 In signe and tokene of confirmacion
For lyfe or deth that he wil holde his day
Ageyn Hector, hap what happen may,
Unto the whiche Hector lilly sterre
And toke it up with as glad an herte *whatever may happen
quickly leapt*
- 4035 As evere dide yit man or knyght
That quarel toke with his foo to fight.
Ther can no man in soth aright devyse
How glad he was of this highe emprise. *describe
undertaking*

Book 3

- 4040 Of whiche the noise and the grete soun
 Ran to the eris of Agamenous;
 And he anoon cam down to her tent
 With alle the lordis of his parlement
 Where Achilles and Hector wern ifere,
 To wit her wille as in this matere:
 4045 Wher thei wolden assessen finally
 To putte the quarel ful in juparty
 Of outhar part atwene these knyghtes tweyne,
 As ye han herde, it fully to darayne.
 And with o vois Grekis it denye
 4050 And seide thei nolde of swiche a companie
 Of kynges, dukis, and lordis eke also
 Bothe life and deth juparten atwene two
 Nor to the course of Fortune hem submisste,
 That can hir face alday chaunge and flitte.
 4055 And some of Troye, in conclusioun.
 Juparte nolde her lyves nor her toun,
 In the hondis only of a knyght
 To putten al in aventure of fight.
 Priam except, whiche soothly in this caas
 4060 Within hymself fully assentid was
 Pleinly to have put and set in juparté
 Holy the honour of his regalye,
 Supposynge ay, as maked is memorie,
 That Hector shuld have had the victorie
 4065 Of this emprise, yif it he toke on honde,
 But for Priam myghte nat withstande
 Ageyn so many of oon entencioune
 That were contrarie to his oppinioun,
 Bothe of Grekis and on Troye side,
 4070 He helde his pes and lete it overeslyde.
 And so the Grekis parted ben echon;
 And Hector is from Achilles goon
 Home to Troye, where I him leve a while,
 Whiles that I directe shal my stile
 4075 To telle of Troylus the lamentable wo,
 Whiche that he made to parte his lady fro.
 Alias, Fortune, gery and unstable
- together
know
hazard
settle by single combat
would not
fame
of a single knight
Entirely: kingship
undertook
pass
writing instrument
because he had to part from
fickle

Troy Book

- And redy ay to be chaungable
Whan men most triste in thi stormy face. trust
4080 Liche her desire the fully to embrace,
Thanne is thi joye awye to turne and wrythe,
Upon wrechis thi power for to kithe. draw away
Upon wrechis thi power for to kithe. show
Record on Troylus that fro thi whel so lowe
By fals envie thou hast overthrowe. Remember; wheel
4085 Oute of the joye which that he was inne,
From his lady to make him for to twynne
Whan he best wende for to have be surid.
And of the wo that he hath endured
I muste now helpe hym to compleyme. separate
4090 Whiche at his herte felt so gret a peyne,
So inward wo, and so gret distresse,
More than I have konnyng to expresse;
Whan he knew the partyng of Cryseide,
Almoste for wo and for peyne he deyde thought; pledged
4095 And fully wiste she departe shal
By sentence and jugement fynal
Of his fader, yove in parlement. knew
For whiche with wo and torment al torrent,
He was in point to have falle in rage, given
4100 That no man myght apese nor aswage
The hidde peynes which in his breste gan dare; torn up
For lik a man in furie he gan fare
And swiche sorwe day and nyght to make,
In compleyninge only for hir sake. ready to go mad
4105 For whan he sawe that she schulde awei,
He lever had pleinly for to deye
Than to lyve behyade in hir absence:
For hym thought, withouten hir presence
He nas but ded — ther is no more to seine. ease; soothe
4110 And into terys he began to reyne,
With whiche his eyen gonue for to bolle,
And in his breste the sighes up to swolle
And the sobbyng of his sorwes depe,
That he ne can nat but rose and wepe. hidden; dark
4115 So sore love his herte gan constreyne;
And she ne felt nat a litel peyne. behaved
preferred; die
was nothing except; say
weep
swell
cry
distress

Book 3

- But wepte also, and pitously gan crye,
 Desyring ay that she myghte dye
 Rather than parte from hym oute of Troyt.
- 4120 Hir owne knyght, hir lust, hir lives joye,
 That be hir chekis the teris doun distille,
 And fro hir eyen the rounde dropis trille,
 And al fordewed han hir blake wede;
 And eke untressid hir her abrod gan sprede,
- trickle
flow
wetted through; clothes
her hair
soot
- 4125 Like to gold wyr, forrent and al totorn,
 Iplukked of, and nat with sheriis shorn.
 And over this, hir freshe rosen hewe,
 Whilom ymeint with white lilies newe,
 With woful wepyng pitously disteyned.
- mixed
discolored
bedewed
- 4130 And like herbis in April al bereyned
 Or floures freshe with the dewes swete,
 Right so hir chekis moiste wern and wete
 With cristal water, up ascendingyng highe
 Out of her breste into hir heavenly eye;
- 4135 And ay amonge hir lamentacion,
 Ofte sithe she fil awone doun.
 Dedly pale, fordymmed in hir sight,
 And ofte seide: "Allas, myn owne knyght,
 Myn owne Troylus, allas, whi shal we parte?
- Many times
made dull
- 4140 Rather late Deth with his spere darte
 Thorugh myn hert, and the veynes kerwe,
 And with his rage do me for to sterwe.
 Rather, allas, than fro my knyght to twynel!
 And of this wo, O Deth, that I am inne,
- die
part
- 4145 Whi nyl thou come and helpe make an ende?
 For how shulde I oute of Troye wende,
 He abide, and I to Grekis goon.
 Ther to dwelle amonge my cruel foon?
 Allas, allas, I, woful creature,
- go
go
foes
- 4150 Howe shulde I ther in the werre endure —
 I, wreche woman, but myself alone
 Amonge the men of armys everychon!"
 Thus gan she cryen al the longe day;
 This was hir complaint with ful gret affray.
- outburst
approached
- 4155 Hir pitous noyse, til it drowe to nyght,

Troy Book

- That unto hir hir owne trewe knyght,
Ful triste and hevy, cam agynnes eve,
Yif he myght hir counforte or releve.
But he in soth hath Cryseide founde
4160 Al in a swowe, lyggyng on the grounde;
And pitously unto hir he wente
With woful chere, and hir in armys hent,
And toke hir up; and than arwen hem two
Begam of new swiche a dedly wo
4165 That it was routhe and pitē for to sene:
For she of cher pale was and grene
And he of colour liche to ashes dede;
And fro hir face was goon al the rede
And in his chekis devoide was the blod,
4170 So wofullly atwente hem two it stood.
For she ne myght nat a worde speke,
And he was redy with deth to be wreke
Upon hymselfe, his nakid swerd beside;
And she ful ofte gan to grounde glide
4175 Out of his armys, as she fel awowne;
And he hymself gan in teris drowne.
She was as stille and dowmb as any ston;
He had a mouthe, but wordis had he non;
The weri spirit flikerit in hir breste
4180 And of deth stood under arreste,
Without meinpris soothly as of lyf.
And thus ther was, as it sempte, a strif,
Whiche of hem two shulde firste pase;
For deth portreied in her outhir face
4185 With swiche colour as men go to her grave.
And thus in wo thei gan togidre rave,
Disconsolat, al the longe nyght,
That in gode feith, yif I shulde aright
The processe hool of here bother sorwe
4190 That thei made til the nexte morwe.
Fro point to point it to specifie,
It wolde me ful longe occupie
Of everythinge to make mencioum,
And tarie me in my translacioun,
- sad; toward
swowe; lying
took
such
emptied
avenged
slip
in custody
rason
seemed
pass away
talk wildly
course: both their sorrows
relate in detail
delay

Book 3

- 4195 Yif I shulde in her wo procede.
But me semeth that it is no nede,
Sith my maister Chaucer heraforne
In this mater so wel hath hym born
In his *Boke of Troylus and Cryseyde* Since
- 4200 Whiche he made longe or that he deyde,
Rehersinge firste how Troilus was contrarie
For to assendyn up on Lovis steire,
And how that he, for al his surquedie,
After becam oon of the compayne anwilling
- 4205 Of Lovis folke for al his olde game,
Whan Cupide maked hym ful tame
And brought him lowe to his subjeccioun
In a temple as he walked up and doun,
Whan he his ginnes and his hokis leide traps
- 4210 Amyd the eyen cerclid of Cryseyde.
Whiche on that day he myghte nat asterte:
For thorugh his brest percid and his herte,
He wente hym home, pale, sike, and wan.
And in this wise Troylus first began round eyes
- 4215 To be a seruaunt, my maister telleth thus,
Til he was holpe aftir of Pandarus.
Thorugh whos conforte and mediacion
(As in his boke is maked menacioun)
With gret labour firste he cam to grace escape
- 4220 And so contuneth by certeyn yeris space,
Til Fortune gan upon hym frowne,
That she from hym must goon oute of towne
Al sodeynly and never hym after se.
Lo, here the fyn of false felicité! continues
- 4225 Lo, here the ende of worldly brotilnes,
Of fleshly lust! Lo, here th'unstabilnes!
Lo, here the double variacioun
Of wordly blisse and transmutacioun — worldly
- 4230 This day in myrthe and in wo to morwe —
For ay the fyn, alias, of joie is sorwe!
For now Cryseyde with the Kyng Thoas
For Anthenor shal go forthe, alias,
Unto Grekis and ever with hem dwelle.

Troy Book

- 4235 The hoole story Chaucer kan yow telle,
Yif that ye liste — no man bet alvye —
Nor the processe halfe so wel discryve.
For he owe Englishe gilde with his sawes,
Rude and boistous firste be olde dawes,
That was ful fer from al perfeccioun
4240 And but of litel reputacioun.
Til that he cam and thorugh his poetricie
Gan oure tonge firste to magnifie
And adorne it with his eloquence:
To whom honour, laude, and reverence
4245 Thorughoute this londe yove be and songe,
So that the laurer of oure Englishe tonge
Be to hym yove for his excellencie,
Right as whilom by ful highe sentence,
Perpetually for a memorial,
4250 Of Columpna by the cardynal
To Petrak Fraunceis was yoven in Ytaille —
That the report nevere after faille
Nor the honour dirked of his name,
To be registered in the house of fame
4255 Amonge other in the higheste sete,
My maister Galfride, as for cheste poete
That evere was yit in oure langage,
The name of whom shal passen in noon age
But ever ylyche withoute eclipsinge shyne.
4260 And for my part, I wil never fyne,
So as I can, hym to magnifie
In my writyng pleynly til I dye;
And God, I praye, his soule bring in joie.
And where I lefte I wil ageyn of Troie
4265 The story telle and first how that Guydo
Within his boke speketh Troylus to,
Rebukyng hym ful uncurtesly
That he so sette his herte folili
Upon Cryseide, ful of doublenes:
4270 For in his boke as Guydo list expresse
That hir teris and hir compleymynge.
Hir wordis white, softe, and blaundysyng.
- no better man is alive*
course of events
gilded; tales
Unpolished; rough; days
- make greater in importance*
- given; song*
laural
given
meaning
- reputation; lack*
- Geoffrey*
- end*
glorify
- duplicity*

Book 3

- Wer meynt with feynynge and with flaterie
 And outward farsed with many a fals lye;
 4275 For under hid was al the variaunce,
 Cured above with feymed contenaunce,
 As wommen kan falsly teris borwe —
 In her herte though ther be no sorwe —
 Lik as thei wolde of verray trouthe deie.
- Thei can think oon and another seie,
 As a serpent under floures faire
 His venym hydeth, where he doth repaire —
 The sage aforne, the galle hid behynde,
 4280 As appropried is unto hir kynde
- To be dyvers and double of nature,
 Rathest deceyyng whan men most assure.
 For under colour everything thei wirke,
 The faire above, the foole in the dirke
 Thei hide so, that no man may espie;
- 4290 And though so be that with a woful eye
 Thei can outward wepyn pitously.
 The other eye can laughe covertly —
 Whos sorwes alle are temprid with allaiers.
 And her colour is meynt ever with raiers;
- 4295 For upon chaunge and mutabilite
 Stant hool her trust and her surete,
 So that thei ben sure in doublines
 And alwey double in her sikernes,
 Semysnge oon whan thei best can varie,
- 4300 Likest to acorde whan thei be contrarie:
 And thus thei ben variaunte in acorde,
 And bolest seme whan ther is discord.
 And Guydo seith how ther are fewe or noon
 That in her herte apaied is with oon;
- 4305 And yit thei can, be it to oon or tweyne,
 To thre or four, in her speche feyne
 Like as thei wern to oon and to no moo
 Hool in her love, for wele and eke for wo,
 That everyche shal of hymselfe deme
- 4310 That he be next, lik as it doth seme.
 And thus in hope stant eche of hem alle,
- mixed
seen from the outside staffed
- Concealed; appearance
borrow
- return
- Soonest; pledge their troth
- secretly
allays
mixed; streaks
- satisfied
- think

Troy Book

- The trewest ay redyest to falle;
Who serveth best, nexte to ben appaired:
And thus in chaunge al her love is feired.
4315 Farwel to morwe, though it be sure today;
Lat no man trust but cache whan he may;
The faire of chaunge lasteth over yere,
But it is soly for to byen to dere
Thilke tresour, whiche harde is to possede
4320 But fleeth aweye whan men therof most nede.
And yif it hap that no chapman be
(As seith Guydo), yit al day men may se
It shewed oute at large fenestrallis,
On chaumbres highe, and lowe doune in hallis,
4325 And in wyndowes eke in every strete;
And also eke men may with hem mete
At pilgrymages and obaciounes,
At spectacles in cytés and in townys
(As seith Guydo), and al is for to selle:
4330 But after hym I can no ferther telle.
And eke he seith in his sentament
Ther is no fraude fully equipollent
To the fraude and sleighty compassyng
Of a womman nor like in worshynge:
4335 For who that set al his feithfulnes,
Wenynge in hem to fynde stabillnes,
He shal hem fynde stedefaste as the mone,
That is in point for to chaunge sone.
Yif he be yonge, thei cast hym in a rage:
4340 Yif he be olde, he falleth in dotage;
"Wherfore, my counsell is to bothe two:
Cast of the bridel, and lightly lete hem go."
Thus tecbeth Guydo, God wot, and not I,
That hath delyt to speke cursidly
4345 Alwey of wommen thoroughout al his bok,
As men may se, whoso list to loke.
To hem he had envie in special,
That in good feith I am right wrothe with al
That he with hem list so to debate;
4350 For ire of whiche, the Latyn to translate
- injured*
involved
- market; long*
buy
- merchant*
- windows*
- offerings*
- judgment*
equivalent
contriving
- Thinking*
moon
- frenzy*
feebleness of mind
- off*
knows
- hatred*
angry
wished; quarrel

Book 3

- Inwardly myn herte I felte bledē,
Of bighē dispit his clāsis for to rede *sēntences*
That resownede, in conclusioun.
Only of malys to accusacioun
- 4355 Of this women — ful evel mote he thrive — *let him have bad fortune*
So generally her secte to discryve, *describe*
Whiche made nat, thorough indiscrecioun,
Of good nor badde noon excepcion.
He was to blame — foulē mote hym falle — *befall*
- 4360 For cause of oon for to hindren alle: *slander*
For I dar wel affermen by the rode
Ageyn oon badde ben an hundrid gode;
And though som oon double be and newe,
It hindreth nat to hem that be trewe. *cross*
- 4365 And be exampel, also, though he shewe *disparages*
That som oon whilom was a shrewe,
Thei that be gode take shal noon hede,
For it noon hindryng is to wommanhede,
Though two or thre can be double and feyne: *be duplicitous*
- 4370 For ther ageyn sothly at Coleyne
Of virgines, inly ful of grace,
Ellevene thousand in that holy place
A man may fynde and in oure kalendere
Ful many maide parfit and entere.
- 4375 Whiche to the deth stable wern and trewe,
For somme of hem with the rosen hew
Of martirdom the blisse of hevēne wonne;
And somme also, as bokis telle konne, *can*
With the lillye of virginitē
- 4380 And violetis of parfit chastitē.
Ascendid ben above the sterris clese
And the cercle of the nymthe spere, *(see note)*
Where joie is evere and gladnes eterne.
Wherefor in soth, as I can discerne,
- 4385 Though som clerkis of shrewis have myssaid,
Lat no good womman therof be myspaid:
For lak of oon, alle are nouȝt to blame,
And eke of men may be seide the same,
For to the trewe it is no repreſe,
- recognize
scoandrels; slandered
displeased
failing in one

Troy Book

- 4390 Though it so be another be a thefe;
For what is he the worse in his degré.
Though the tother be honged on a tre?
Nor unto wommen hindring is it noon, harm
Among an hundred though that ther be oon
4395 Of governaunce that be vicious. wicked
- For ther ageyn a thousand vertuous,
Yif that ye liste, lightly ye may fynde.
And though Guydo wrít thei han of kynde naturally
To be double, men shulde it goodly take
4400 And ther ageyn no maner gruoching make: complaining
Nature in werkynge hath ful gret power,
And it wer harde for any that is here
The cours of hir to holden or restreyne,
For she wil nat be guyed be no reyne, guyed; rein
4405 restrained from
To be coarted of hir due right.
Therfore, eche man with al his fulle myght
Shulde thanke God and take paciently;
For yif wommen be double naturelly,
Why shulde men leyn on hem the blame?
- 4410 For though myn auctor hindre so her name reprove
In his writinge, only of Cryseide,
And upon hir swiche a blame leide,
My counsell is, lightly overpassee
Wher he mysseith of hir in any place — slanders
- 4415 To hindre wommen outhere eve or morwe.
Taketh noon hede, but late him be with sorwe,
And skippeth over wher ye list nat rede,
Til ye come where that Dyomede
For hir was sent into Troye toun,
- 4420 Where ceriously is maked mencioune in due order
First how that she to hym delyvered was
For Anthenor and the Kyng Thoas;
And how Troilus gan hir to conveie
With many other to bringe hir on the weie;
- 4425 And after this how that Dyomede
By the weie gan hir bridel lede
Til he hir brought to hir fadres tent;
And how that Calchas in ful good entent

Book 3

- | | | |
|------|--|--|
| | Received hir, logged ther he lay, | lodged |
| 4430 | And of hir speche duryng al that day,
And al the maner hool and everydel.
Al is rehersid ceriously and wel
In Troilus Boke, as ye han herd me seym; | <i>recounted point by point</i> |
| | To write it este, I holde it wer but veyn. | again |
| 4435 | But Guydo seith, longe or it was nyght
How Cryseyde forsoke hir owne knyght
And yaf hir herte unto Dyomede
Of tendirnes and of wommanhede, | <i>before</i> |
| | That Troilus wexe in hir herte as colde,
Without fire as ben these asshes olde. | gave |
| 4440 | I can noon other excusacion
But only Kynedes transmutacion,
That is appropred unto hir nature,
Selde or never stable to endure. | <i>know; excuse</i>
<i>(see note)</i> |
| 4445 | Be experience as men may ofte lere.
But now ageyn unto my matere
I mut resort, though that I be ferre,
As I began to witten of the warre. | mast
war |

[After the truce, Hector leads the Trojans out to battle. He is wounded in the face, and the Trojans are thrown back before the walls of Troy, where Hector sees Helen, Hecuba, Polyxena, and the other women watching the battle. Fearing shame before them, he rallies the Trojans, cuts King Merion in two (he has earlier killed him by cutting his head off), and nearly kills Achilles. During the battle, Diomedes captures Troilus's horse, which he sends to Criseyde as a gift. Criseyde says she cannot refuse a gift from someone kind and generous to her in a strange place. Later Polydamas unhorses Diomedes and takes his mount to Troilus, who has been fighting on foot and is bathed in Greeks' blood. Hector again nearly kills Achilles. After this the battle rages for thirty days, during which the Greeks suffer many losses, six of Priam's natural sons are killed, and Hector is wounded. Priam asks for a six months' truce. He prepares the burial of his sons, and Hector recovers from his wounds. Diomedes meanwhile has fallen in love with Criseyde (lines 4449–4819).]

- | | | |
|------|--|----------------------|
| 4820 | And al that tyme sike laie Diomedes,
With Lovys dart woundid to the herte,
As he that felt inwardly gret smerte
Of woful sighes, wiche in his brest abraide
Ful ofte a day for love of Cryseyde; | sick
pain
rise |
|------|--|----------------------|

Troy Book

- 4825 For he was shake with a fevere newe
That causid him to be ful pale of hewe
And to wexe bothe megre and lene; grow
For pitously he gan hym to abstene
Fro mete and drinke and from al solace,
- 4830 As it was sene in his dedly face; lament
And ofte a day to hir he wolde pleyne
Of his disese and his mortal peyne.
Prelynge of grace that she wolde se
Upon his wo for to han pitē
- 4835 And of mercy for to taken hede
Of hir seruaunt, only of wommanbede,
Or pleinly elles — ther is no more to seie —
For hir sake he seide he wolde deye.
But konnyngly and in ful sleighty wyse, skillfully
- 4840 To kepe hym lowe under hir servyse.
With delaies she hilde hym forthe on honde
And maked hym in a were to stonde,
Ful unsur betwene hope and dispere.
And whan that grace shulde have had repeire state of uncertainty
- 4845 To putte hym oute of al hevynes,
Daunger of newe brought hym in distresse;
And with disdeyn to encresse his peine.
Of double were she brought hym in a treyme.
As wommen kan holde a man ful narwe, come to him
- 4850 Whan he is hurt with Cupides arwe,
To sette on hym many fel assales,
Day be day to putte hym in delaies,
To stonde unsur betwix hope and drede.
Right as Cryseyde lefte Diomede
- 4855 Of entent to sette hym more afire,
As this wommen kyndely desyre,
Whan thei a man have brought in a traunce,
Unevenly to hange him in balaunce,
Of hope and drede to lynke hym in a cheyne,
- 4860 Ay of the fyn unsure of bothe tweyne. ending
To dryve him forthe yeris hem to serve
And do no force wher he lyve or sterue:
This is the fyn of Lovis fyri rage. take no heed whether; die

Book 3

- 4865 And for she wolde have hym in servage,
She lokkid hym under swiche a keye
That he wot nat wher to lyve or deye; did not know
And in doute thus I lete hym dwelle,
And forthe I wil of the story telle
And to my mater eke resorte ageyn.

[After the truce ends, fighting renews for twelve days. Because of heat and infection, however, plague sweeps the Greek camp. Agamemnon must ask for another thirty days' truce, which Priam immediately grants (lines 4870-88).]

- 4890 Whan the moreyn and the woful rage plague
Of pestilence began for to swage abate
And the trews were wered ouse and goon,
The Grekes cast to mete with her soon planned
Upon a day in platis armyd clene
Whan Phebus shon with his bemys shene
4895 Ful plesauntly and gan to shede his lyght.
But, as I fynd, toforne the silfe nyght
Andronomecha, the feithful trewe wyf Andromache
Of worthi Hector, hym lovyng as hir lyf.
Be whom he had gote childre two,
4900 Wonder semly, and inly fair also — handsome
And Lamedonte callyd was the ton, the one
So yonge the tother that hit ne myghte goon the other
And Astronanza, I rede, that he hyght,
Feured wel, and passyng fair of sight,
4905 And, as Guydo listeth to endite, record
Of his moder at the pappis white
For verray yong that tyme was soukyng,
And with his armys hir brestis embrasyng,
And she that nyght, as made is mencioum,
4910 Hadde in hir slepe a wonder visioun; do not know; name
I not in soth what I may it nevene —
Outher a dreme or verrailly a swenvene,
Or fro above a revelacioun,
(As whilom had the Kyng Scipioun)
4915 Or a shewynge, outher an oracle,
Or of goddis a warnyng be myracle.

Troy Book

	For in sothnes slepyng as she lay,	truth
	Hir thoughte pleynly, yif the nexte day	
	Hector went his fomen for to assaille,	attack
4920	As he was wost, armyd in bataille,	
	That he ne shulde eskafen outerly,	
	In Fatis hondis to falle finally;	Fate's
	And, overmore, Antropos shal fyne	end
	For evermore his lyves thredre to twyne	car
4925	And shewe the force of hir felle myght,	term of life
	Whan the parodie of this worthi knyght	
	Aprochen shal withouten wordis mo,	
	Into the feld pleynly yif he go —	
	Of whiche astonyd, streit and short of breth,	astonished, winded and
4930	Wher as she lay, abreid upon the deth,	frightened
	And with a sige stinte for to slepe,	woke up
	And pitously braste oute for to wepe	burst
	For the constraint of hir hertly sorwe.	pressure
	And specially on the woful morwe,	
4935	Whan that she sawe this stok of worthines,	prepare
	As he was wost, manfully him dresse	steel burnished
	To armyn hym in stelle bornyd bright,	
	This Troyan wal, Hector, this worthi knyght,	
	She can no more bat at his fete fil doun.	fell
4940	Lowly declarynge hir avisoun,	
	With quakynge herte of verray wommanhede.	
	Whereof, God wote, he toke litel hede	
	But therof hadde indignacion.	
	Platly affermyng that no disreciououn	Plainly
4945	Was to trest in swiche fantasies	trust
	In dreymys shewid, glady meyst with lyes,	mixed
	Ful of japis and illusiouns,	tricks
	Of whiche pleynly the conclusiouns	
	Be nat ellis but folkis to delude,	
4950	Albe it so that this peples rude	
	Therin somwhile han affeccions	
	To juge and deme in her oppinioun	
	Diversly what thei may pretende,	
	And ofte falle and happen as thei wende,	
4955	And folweth like in conclusioun.	

Book 3

- For drede of whiche the lamentacioun
Encrese gan of Andronomecha,
And in hir swowe first she cried, "A,"
Seiying, "Alias, myn owne lord so dere,
4960 Your trewe wif, alias, whi syl you here,
Whiche of so feithful hool affeccioun
Desireth ay youre savacioun!"
- And up she roos deedly of visage; *deadly pale*
And like a womman caught with sodein rage
- 4965 To Kyng Priam and Ecuba the Quene *Hecuba*
In haste she wente, hirsilfe to bemene,
And of hir wyfly heerte, trewe as stele,
Ceriously declarid everydele *Point by point*
Hir pitous dreme, whiche thorough oracle
- 4970 To hir only, be devyne myracle.
Ishewed was thorough Goddes puruyaunce; *Shown; foresight*
And tolde hem eke the final ordinaunce
Of Fortunes fals disposicioun,
Fully purveied to destruccioun
- 4975 Of hir lord withoute more delay,
Into the felde yif he go that day.
Wherfore, she preieth with a dedly hewe
Unto the kyng of mercy for to rewe,
Upon hir wo to have compassioune,
- 4980 For to ordeyne by discrecioun
Of his lordship and sovereinté
That hir lord nat destroyed be
Of rekleshede nor of wilfulness;
And with that worde of verray kyndenes,
- 4985 In whom was ay so moche love founde, *in a faint*
Tofore the quene aswowne fil to grunde
And seide, "Alias" with a ful pale chere,
"Helpe in this cas, myn owne moder dere,
Of wommanned and routhe doth me grace,
- 4990 That my lord into the feld ne pace *go*
And doth your dever of moderly pitie *duty*
Benignely and goodly for to se
To his knyghthod and his highe prowes,
For to restreyne his renomed noblesse,

Troy Book

- 4995 Thilke day to handle spere nor shelde,
Nor that he go armyd into the felde."
And bothe tweyne assente for the beste
And condescende unto hir requeste,
Finally accordyng into oon *agree*
- 5000 That whan the wardis wer redi everychon
On issinge oute, and Troylus first of alle,
And Paris next, on Grekis for to falle,
And after hym the Troyan Eneas,
Kyng Sarpedoun, and Pollydamas, *divisions*
- 5005 Kyng Eroys, and Kyng Epistrophus,
And eke the kyng ycalled Forcius,
In plate and mail everyche armed clesse;
And alderlaste cam Kyng Philomene
With alle the kynges and lordes of renoun
- 5010 That in diffence comen of the toun,
With the Grekis knyghtly to debate. *contend*
- And Priamus soithly to the gate
Conveied hem at her oute goyng,
And sette her wardes, this noble worthi kyng,
Ful prudently thorough his sapience, *placed their divisions*
- 5015 And after yaf hem congé and licence
Upon Grekis for to kythe her myght,
Ageynes whom ful redy for to fight
Her somen wern with royal apparaille
- 5020 Amyd the feld abidyng the bataille.
But Priamus in this menewhile,
Lyke as Guydo remembrith in his stile,
For thilke fyn that ye han herd me seyn
To worthi Hector repeired is ageyn. *returned*
- 5025 Hym contermaundynge that he ne shold gon
Thilke day to fight ageyn her foon.
For whiche thing of highe dispit he brent,
Whan that he sawe other lordis went
Oute at the gate and he allone abood; *ordering*
- 5030 For whiche he wexe furious and wood.
Hooly the cause arrestynge to his wif,
That was of cherte so tendir over his lyf,
Puttinge on hir fully the occasioun *burned*
- gave them permission*
make known their
- grew; mad*
ascriving

Book 3

- 5035 Of his abidynge that day in the toun,
In prejudise of his worthines
And disencresse of his highe prowes.
And list thorough tongis to his highe estat,
Thorough fals report it were derogat,
He caste anoon of a ful knyghtly herte
To the detriment of
diminution
lest
derogatory
- 5040 For lyf nor deth it shuld him nat asterte
Withinne the feld that day to be founde,
Though it so wer with many mortal wounde
He shulde on pecis hewe be asoundre,
Upon the pleyn dismembrid here and yonder;
escape
- 5045 So hool in manhood was his herte sette
That he anoon withoute lenger leste
Ageyn to arme hym was ful diligent,
Agein the precepte and commandement
Of his fader, and rood forthe on his weie.
delay
- 5050 For fer of whiche, as she wolde deir,
His wif of newe crie gan and shouste,
And with hir pappis also hanging oute,
Hir litel childe in hir armys tweymer,
Afern hir lord gan to wepe and pleyne.
5055 Besechinge hym of routhe and pitie,
Yif he nolde to hir sorwe se,
At the leste for hir wifly trouthe
That he of manhood have in herte routhe
Upon hir child and on hir also.
Upon hir child and on hir also.
- 5060 Whiche that she bar in hir armys two,
And nat myght him fro criyng kepe,
Whan he sawe his woful moder wepe.
And knelyng down, unto hym she seide,
In hir sobbyng as she myght abreide:
burst out
- 5065 "Myn owne lorde have mercy now on me
And on this litel child whiche that ye se
So pitously afore you wepe and crye.
Have mercy lord on us or we deye.
Have mercy eke upon this cyte,
before
also
- 5070 Myn owne lorde. Have mercy or that we
By cruel deth passe shal echon,
For lak of helpe, alias, whan ye ar goon."

Troy Book

	This was the crie of Andronomecha, With whom was eke hir suster Cassandra, Eccuba, and faire Polycene, And Eleyne, the lusty freshe quene, Whiche alle attonys fellen hym beforne, With heer untressid and wepinge al totorn, And loude gan to crien in the place, Besechinge hym of mercy and of grace For thilke day to abiden in the toun And in his herte to have compassion On her compleint and her woful mone, Sith al the trust of the toun allone In hym abode and al the resistance: For ageyn deth he was her chef diffence; And in hym hooly was her affaunce, Her sureté, and her suffisaunce, In eché thing that hem myghte greve. And yif al this ne myght his herte meve For to abide, yit of goodlyhede Thei hym besought to her wommanhede He wolde enclyne his harded herte of stèle, That thei myght a litel drope sele Only of pité on her wo to rewe, That likly was to moren and renewe Finally to her distraccioun; For of the cité soothly and the toun His unhap were endeles ruyne.	Polyxena <i>Helen</i> <i>at once</i> <i>hair</i> <i>moan</i> <i>Since</i> <i>their</i> <i>faith</i> <i>injure</i> <i>bend</i> <i>increase and grow afresh</i> <i>misfortune would be</i>
5075		
5080		
5085		
5090		
5095		
5100		
5105		
5110		

Book 3

- | | | |
|------|--|---|
| | That she unethe myghte speke hym to,
So diffacid and ruful of hir sight
That by hir hewe knoweth hir no wight; | scarcely
disfigured; pitiable |
| 5115 | For lost she had bothe myght and strengthe,
And plat she fil to the grounde alengthe
Tofore the kyng, that routhe was to sene,
Besechynge hym of entent ful clene
Of his grace to consider hir wo: | flat; prostrate |
| 5120 | For but he help, Hector is ago.
And he, seinge hir faithful wommanhede,
At hir requeste caught anoon his stede,
And piked after, only for hir sake,
In so gret haste that he hath overtake | unless; dead (a genet)
seized
rode fast |
| 5125 | Worthi Hector withinne the cyté,
And bent his reyne with gret difficulté,
And maugre hym made him tourne ageyn
In swiche wyse he durst it nat withseyn,
Albe that he was ful lothe therto; | snatched
despite
dared; refuse
Although; unwilling |
| 5130 | So that by force and praiere also
From his stede he made hym alight,
The areste of whom eschewen he ne myght,
For he ne wolde ageyn his fader strive,
Albe that he felte his herte rive | halting; avoid
against
Although; split |
| 5135 | Of malencolie, and of hertly ire,
And of disdeyn newe sette afire.
So inwardly sterid was his blod
That like a tigre or a lyoun wood
That wer deprived newly of his praye. | scorn |
| 5140 | Right so firde he al that ilke day,
Or liche a bore that his tusshes whetted,
While the Grekis and thei of Troye mette,
Furiously walkyng up and doun.
And in diffence soothly of the soun, | mad
prey
acted
tacks sharpened |
| 5145 | Troylus first on his baye stede
Of aventure mette Diomede,
And ecche at other, surquedous of pride,
With sharpe speris gan togidre ryde;
And Guydo seith, withouten any dred, | <i>By chance</i> |
| 5150 | Oon or bothe had anoon be ded, | |

Troy Book

- Nadde Menelay knyghtly go betwene.
And after that in a furious tene,
He smet his hors in ful knyghtly wyse;
And Meryem, the myghty Kyng of Frise,
- 5155 Menelaus markid hath ful wel;
And with his swerd, ful sharpe ground of stel,
Unhorsid him and threwe him on the grene;
For he the strok ne myghte nat sustene.
This Menelay was on him so wood
- 5160 That it was likly, evene ther he stood,
With the lif he shulde nat eskape.
For the Grekis ful hastily hem shape
This Meriem, as ye han herde me seyn,
For to besette rounde aboue the pleyn
- 5165 And to sese hym by the aventaille *protective covering for lower face and neck*
On every part and cruelly to assaille,
Al destitut in this dredful cas.
But hym to helpe cam Pollydamas
- 5170 With his knyghtes and gan to neighen ner
Whan he hym sawe take prisoner;
And maugre alle that upon hym sette,
From her hondis Pollydamas him fette.
At whos reskus ther was so gret a strif
- 5175 That many on therfore lost his lyf:
For Grekis rather than he shulde eskape
From her hondis in that hasti rape
Caste hem pleynly that he shal be ded,
Fully in purpos to have hadde his hed —
- 5180 He stood of meschef in so gret disjoyn.
But hym to helpe evene uppon the point
Cam Troylus in, most knyghtly of aray,
And of his manhood made swiche affray
Amongis hem in reskus of this kyng
- 5185 That maugre hem at his incomyng
Delyvered was this worthi lord of Frise
From cruel deth, as ye han herd devyse.
But theruppon cam Thelamonius,
Proude in armys, and evere surquedous
- With thre thousand, ful worthi everychon;
- Had not
rage
- furiously
- drew near
- despite
took
rescue
many a one
- seizure
planned
- harm; peril
- wreaked such havoc
- despite
- arrogant

Book 3

- 5190 And he unhorseth Polydamas anoon
 Among his knyghtes and proudly bar him doun;
 But Troylus hath thorugh his highe renoun
 Mid of his fooun get hym his hors ageyn.
 But thei of Troye so sore were beleyn
 5195 On every half thorugh the Grekis pride
 That thei ne myght aforn hem nat abide:
 For newe and newe the hardy Achilles
 Assailed hem with his Mirmidores
 That thei compelled of necessité,
 5200 In meschef, wern maked for to fle
 Home to the walles and gates of the toun,
 To gret damage and confusoun
 Of her party that abak so goon.
 The whiche thing, whan Margariton
 5205 Behilde and sawe how the game goth,
 In his herte he gan to weare wroth
 And passingly for to have disdeyn;
 And as the story recordeth in certeyn,
 That he was bothe hardy and famus
 5210 And sone also unto Kyng Priamus,
 A noble knyght and of gret worthines.
 And whan he saw the meschef and distresse
 Of hem of Troye and how thei gan to fle,
 He caste anoon avengid for to be
 5215 Upon Achilles for al his grete myght,
 And ran to hym ful like a manly knyght,
 On horsebak for the townys sake,
 And hym enforseth Achilles to take
 Amyd the feld amonge his knyghtes alle.
 5220 But Achilles — alas, it shulde falie —
 That day hym slowe by cruel aventure,
 Wherborugh Troyens myghte not endure
 The feld to hold, but home gan hem hiye.
 And mortally to make noise and crie:
 5225 Firste, for the deth of Margaritoun,
 And for the pursut that Kyng Thelamon
 Made on the chaas thorugh his cruelté
 Home to the gatis of Troye the cité.

valor

In the middle; foes

assailed

each side

distress

grow angry

distress

*thought immediately
despite*

strives

hasten

pursuit

Troy Book

- That slow and kylded alweie as he rood,
5230 Albe that Paris manly hym withstanded
With his brethre that in baste wer born.
But for al that, her ground thei have lorn,
Lefte and forsake utterly the felde;
And home thei went and broughten on a sheldre
5235 The dede cors of Margariton;
And after that her gatis shette anon.
The whiche meschef, as Hector gan behold,
Of verray ire his herte gan to colde,
And seide platly withoute more delay
5240 He wolde avenge his deth the same day,
And made in haste his stede to be fet,
And up he stirte, and on his basenet —
Unwist the kyng, or who be lefe or loth
(Ther was no geym) — forthe anon he goth,
5245 Til he was passid the gatis of the toun,
More furious than tigre or lyoun;
At whos comyng, thikke as swarm of ben,
Toforn his swerd Grekis goane fles —
Thai thought it was tyme to withdrawe.
5250 And first, I fynde how that he hath slawe
Two worthi dukes, as he with hem mette,
That besy wern his weie for to lette:
The ton ycalled was Eurypalus,
And the other highte Hascydus.
5255 And so Troyens the feld ageyn han wonne,
And of newe manfully begonne
Grekes to sue, and folwen on the chaas.
And yit at meschef Daungh Pollydamas
The same tyme was of Grekis take;
5260 But Hector hath so born him for his sake,
Where as he sorest was beleyn.
And thorugh his knyghthod reskued him ageyn,
And put the Grekis in so gret distresse
Thorugh his manhood and his worthines,
5265 That whersoevere thilke day he rood,
His sharpe swerd he bathed in her blood —
He was so cruel and so mercyles.

Book 3

- But than a knyght called Leothydes
 Shope him anoon with Hector for to mete,
 5270 While he was mooste irous in his herte,
 And sette on hym ful presumptuously;
 But Hector tho, devoyde of al mercy,
 Anoon hym slow and threw hym in the feld:
 The whiche thing whan Achilles behelde,
 5275 The grete slaughter and the woundis wyde
 That Hector made upon every syde,
 He gan anon compassea in his herte,
 And up and doun casten and adverte
 How the Grekes never mow be sure
 5280 Ageyn her soon to fighten or endure
 Nor kepe a felde with hem for to stryve.
 Al the while that Hector were alyve.
 Wherfore, he shope and caste many weie
 Be what engyne Hector myghte deye,
 5285 At avaantage yif he myght hym fynde;
 And thereto eke Polyenes of Ynde,
 A worthi duke, was also of assent —
 Only for he of herte and hool entent
 In hope stood his suster for to wyve,
 5290 For love of whom he felte his herte ryve.
 And in hir grace better for to stonde,
 He caste fully for to take on honde
 This highe emprise, as I have yow tolde.
 But while that he was on him most bold,
 5295 Hector hym slow — ther was non other geyn;
 The whiche anoon as Achilles hath seyn.
 For ire he wexe in his herte as wood
 As boor or tigre in her cruel mood
 Upon Hector avenged for to be
 5300 And furiously on hym he gan fle.
 But Hector caught a darte sharpe grunde,
 And threw at hym, and yaf him swiche a wounde
 Thorughouse the theighe, upon outhier side,
 That in the feld he myghte nat abide,
 5305 But hym withdraw, and anoon is went
 With his men home unto his tent,

Troy Book

- And made anoon a surgeyn to bynde
His mortal wounde; and after, as I fynde,
Whan he was staunche and cessest for to bledē.
deadly
- 5310 In al hastē ageyn he toke his stede:
And liste he were of that wounde ded
Afterward, as it was grete drede,
He thoughte first avengid for to be
Upon Hector, yif he myght hym se.
if
- 5315 Of hap or sort, yif it wolde falle:
For hym thoughte, to his peynes alle
It were to hym the beste remedye
Of his honde yif he myghte dye;
For of his lyf he roughe nat a myte.
set no value
- 5320 Be so that he Hector myghte quyte
Deth for deth in conclusioun;
For that was hooly his entencioune,
Of his desire fully suffisaunce
By deth unwarily to yeven hym meschaunce.
without warning to give
- 5325 But al this tyme, Hector up and doun,
As he was wont, pleieth the lyoun
Amonge Grekis in many sondri place
And with his swerd gan hem so to enchase
That as the deth, where thei myght hym sen.
pursue
- 5330 Thei fledde afor hym like a swarm of ben:
For noon so hardy was hym to withsette.
And in this while, a Grekysh kyng he mette,
Were it of hap or of aventure,
The whiche in sooth on his cotearmure
beer
- 5335 Enbroudrid had ful many riche stoon
That yaf a light, whan the sonne shoon,
Ful bright and clere, that joie was to sene:
For perlis white and emeraudis grene,
Ful many oon, were thereinne set
confront
- 5340 And on the cercle of his basenet
And rounde enviroun of his aventaille
In velvet fret, al above the maille,
Safirs ynde and other stony rede,
Of whos array, whan Hector taketh hede,
Embrodered
- 5345 Towardis hym faste gan hym drawe.
gave
- surcoat worn over armor*
headpiece
face and neck covering
velvet adorned; mail
blue
dress; heed
approach

Book 3

- And firste, I fynd how he hath him slawe;
 And after that, by force of his manhede
 He rent hym up aforn him on his stede *dragged*
 And faste gan with hym for to ride
 5350 From the wardis a litel oute aside, *divisions*
 At good leiser pleynly, yif he may,
 To spoilen hym of his riche array, *if*
 Ful glad and light of his newe emprise.
 But out, allas, on fals covetyse. *plunder*
- 5355 Whos gredy fret — the whiche is gret pitē — *growing*
 In hertis may nat lightly staunchid be; *extinguished*
 The etyk gnaweth be so gret distresse *stimulus*
 That it diffaceth the highe worthines *dissfigures*
 Ful ofte sythe of thies conquerours *times*
 5360 And of her fame rent aweie the floors. *truly; belongs*
 Desyre of havynge in a gredy thought *pilfering*
 To highe noblesse soothly longeth nought;
 No swiche pelfre, spoillynge, nor robberie
 Apartene not to worthi chivalrye:
 5365 For covetyse and knyghthod, as I lere, *learn*
 In o cheyne may nat be knet yfere; *chain; knitted together*
 For kouthe it is that ofte swiche rayne *known; greed*
 Hath cause ben and rote of the rayne *root*
 Of many worthi — whoso liste take hede — *wishes*
- 5370 Like as ye may now of Hector rede *despoiling*
 That sodeinly was brought to his endyng
 Only for spoillynge of this riche kyng.
 For of desire to hym that he hadde,
 On horsebake ouse whan he hym ladde,
 5375 Reklesly, the story maketh mynde,
 He cast his shelde at his bak behynde,
 To welde hymself at more libertē,
 And for to han opportunytē *move*
 To spoilen hym, and for no wyght spare.
- 5380 So that his brest disarmyd was and bare:
 Except his platis ther was no diffence *armour*
 Agyn the strok to make resistance.
 Allas, why was he tho so rekeles,
 This flour of knyghthod, of manhood pereles,

Troy Book

- | | | |
|------|--|------------------------|
| 5385 | Whan that his fo al that ilke day
For hym allone in awayte lay.
Yif in meschef, of hate and of envie,
In the feld he myght hym oute espie,
This Achilles, cruel and venomous, | <i>same</i> |
| | 5390 Of hertly hate most malencolyous,
Whiche covertly havynge hym beside,
Whan that he saw Hector disarmyd ride,
He hent a spere, sharpe grounde and kene,
And of ire in his hateful tene | <i>If: harm</i> |
| | 5395 Al unwarily, or Hector myght adverte,
(Alias the whyle) he smote hym to the berte,
Thoroughoute the brest, that ded he fel down
Unto the erthe, this Troyan champiou,
Thorough negligence only of his shelde. | <i>grabbed</i> |
| | 5400 The deth of whom, whan Odemon behelde,
The worthi kyng myght hym nat restreyne,
But to Achilles rood with al his peyne,
And hit hym so myd of al the pres,
Maugre the myght of his Mirmidores, | <i>rage</i> |
| | 5405 That for ded, Guydo seith certeyn,
Of that wounde he fel gruf on the pleyn,
But his knyghtes on a sheld alofte
Thei leiden hym and caried hym ful softe
Unto his tent in al the haste thei can; | <i>carelessness</i> |
| | 5410 And there I leve this dedly wounded man,
Ful sore seke, til he may releve.
And after that, whan it drowe to eve,
Thei of Troye with gret reverence
Dide her labour and her dilligence | <i>troops</i> |
| | 5415 The dede cors to carien into toun
Of worthi Hector, whan Titan wente down.
And to the temple dolfully thei wende;
And of that day this was the woful ende —
I can no more — but thus the longe nyght | <i>Despite</i> |
| | 5420 In hevynes, as it was skil and right,
I wil hem leve and ageyn returne
To my mater to help hem for to morne.
But now, alias, how shal I procede. | <i>prone</i> |
| | | <i>Except that</i> |
| | | <i>leave: mortally</i> |
| | | <i>rise again</i> |
| | | <i>corpse</i> |
| | | <i>the sun</i> |
| | | <i>turn</i> |
| | | <i>proper</i> |

Book 3

- 5425 In the story, that for wo and drede
 Fele myn hond bothe tremble and quake,
 O worthi Hector, only for thi sake,
 Of thi deth I am so loth to write.
 O who shal now help me to endyte,
 Or unto whom shal I clepe or calle?
 Certis to noon of the Musis alle
 That by accorde singen ever in on
 Upon Pernaso, besiden Elycon,
 So angelik in her armonye
 That tonge is noon that may speefie
 The grete sweetnes of her goodly song;
 For no discorde is founden hem among,
 In her musik thei bene entunyd so.
 It syt hem sought for to help in wo
 Nor with maters that be with mournynge shent,
 As tragedies al totore and rent,
 In compleymynge pitously in rage
 In the theatre with a ded visage;
 To hem, alas, I clepe dar nor crye
 My troubled penne of grace for to guye,
 Nouther to Clyo nor Calliope,
 But to Allecto and Thesypone
 And Meagera that evere doth compleine,
 As thei that lyve evere in wo and peyne
 Eternally and in torment dwelle
 With Cerberus depe doun in helie,
 Whom I mote prale to be gracious
 To my mater, whiche is so furious.
 For to a whight that is compleymynge
 A drery fere is right wel sittynge,
 And to a mater meynt with hevynes
 Accordeth wel a chere of drerynes
 To ben allyed, as by unyté.
 Wherefore, helpe now, thou woful Nyobe,
 Som drery ter in al thi pitous peyne
 Into my penne dolfully to reyne;
 And helpe also thou cruel Yxioun
 And Belydes, that doth the boget goa;
- compose
call
Muses
- Parnassus; Helicon*
- describe
- brought into harmony
is not fitting for them
impaired
- call
guide
- must
frenzied
person; lamenting
and companion; appropriate
- mingled
face; sadness
joined
- Danaids; basket*

Troy Book

- | | | |
|------|--|-------------------|
| | And with thi stoon helpe thou, Zeriphus; | Siriphus |
| | And in thi river helpe eke Tantalus, | |
| 5465 | That for hunger hast so huge pyne, | |
| | This woful plaint helpe me for to fyne, | conclude |
| | Me to forthre doth youre besynes. | |
| | For now the stok and rote of worthines, | |
| | Of knyghtbod grounde, of manbod sours and wel, | |
| 5470 | That toforn alle bare aweie the belle | prize |
| | Of dorynge do, this flour of highe prowes — | |
| | And was exampel also of gentilnes, | desperate courage |
| | That nevere koude don amys nor seie. | |
| | Allas, Hector, allas, why shuldestou deie? | |
| 5475 | O cruel Parchas, why toke ye noon hede, | car |
| | So cruelly to twyne his fatal threde? | |
| | Ye were to hasty! Allas, why were ye so, | |
| | And namely the threde to breke arwo, | |
| | Thou Antropos, thorugh thi grete envie! | |
| 5480 | O Troye, allas, wel maist thou wepe and crie | |
| | And make a woful lamentacion | destruction |
| | Whiche hast of newe to thi confusoun | |
| | Loste thi diffence and thi stronge wal, | |
| | Thi berer up, thi sureté royal, | |
| 5485 | Be whom thin honour chefly was begonne. | |
| | Allas, allas, for now thi brighte sonne | |
| | Eclipsed is, and thou stanst desolat | |
| | Of al comfort and discounsolat; | |
| | Thi light is lost, and thou in diskenes | |
| 5490 | Iploungid art: for in sothfastnes, | |
| | Of alle worthi thou hast the worthiest | |
| | This day ylost and the knyghtlyest | |
| | That is, or was, or shal, I the ensure, | assure |
| | Bene evere born, while the world may dure. | last |
| 5495 | No wonder is though thou wepe sore | |
| | And day be day compleyme hym evermore | |
| | That was thi shield, bothe in joie and wo, | |
| | Whom thou were wont for to love so, | |
| | So tendisly with al thin hole herte | |
| 5500 | That it may nat lyghtly the asterte | lament |
| | To have hym evere in thi remembraunce, | escape |

Book 3

- Whiche was in soth thi ful suffisaunce.
 For, as Guydo maketh mencioum,
 Ther was no man dwellyng in the toon
 5505 That he ne had of verray kyndenes,
 For love of hym, as he wret expresse,
 His child more lef to have died in this cas
 Gladly
 Ourher his eyr — so wel beloved he was —
 If
 Yif the goddis, Fate, or destynē
 5510 Disposid had that it myght have be.
 Wommen also of every maner age
 Bene for his deth falle in swiche a rage,
 Thorough the cytē, aboute in every strete
 So crazed
 That with sobbyng and salt teris wete
 5515 And here torent for her dedly wo,
 Hair torn out; their
 Furiously rosse to and fro —
 So mortal was her adversitē
 Deadly
 That to beholde, alias, it was pitē.
 Yonge maydemes and matrones olde
 5520 Sobbe and sighe, and her festis folde,
 Clasp their hands
 And loude crie, and seide fynally:
 "Alias, now shal oure fadris cruelly
 In oure sight be slayen day be day!
 Alias the whyle, and no man shal seie nay!
 5525 Farwel oure helpe, now Hector is goon,
 In whom the surnes of us everychon
 Was wont to reste: now is he ded, alias."
 Of whom the body whan it caried was
 Into presence of Priamus the Kyng.
 5530 Anoon he lost the offys of spekyng,
 Capacity
 And gan hymselfe in salte teris drowne,
 And pitously therwith fil aswowne
 Upon the cors, cold as any stoon.
 Inly desyrous for to deie anoon
 5535 Withoute tariyng, on hym as he lay,
 Delay
 But that he was by force rent awey.
 His bretheren eke, whan thei token hed,
 Trist and pale, for sorwe wer nyghe ded
 Pulled
 And han hemselfe with rage al totorn,
 Sad
 5540 That never was, I trowe, seyn aforne

Troy Book

- Of brether yit swiche another care:
 For eche of hem with hymself gan fare
 As thei wolde have died on the cors;
 For of their lif platly thei yaf no fors.
 5545 But at the grunde with many swoghes sore,
 Liche wylde boris thei gan crye and rore,
 That routhe was her dedly wo to sene —
 An herte of stede myght it not sustene.
 What schal I seyn of Eccuba the Quene,
 5550 Or his suster, yonge Pollicene,
 Or Cassandra, the prudent and the wyse,
 Or of his wyf, the sorwe to devise,
 Whiche rent hemself in torment and in wo
 As finally thei wolde hemself fordo
 5555 By cruel deth, so thei wepe and waille —
 That yif I shulde make rebersaille
 To wryte her sorwes and her compleymynges,
 Her pitous sobbyng, throwes, and wepynges,
 The woful cries, and the pitous sounys,
 5560 Her drery pleyntis and lamentaciouns,
 And al her wo for to specific,
 A large boke it wolde occupie,
 Yiffe eche thinge I shulde in order telle —
 I trouwe it were to longe for to dwelle,
 5565 For any man and tedious to here.
 For many day after, as I lere,
 The wommen wepte afore the cors lyng.
 Hemself diffacyng in her compleynyng;
 That wonder was how thei myght endure
 5570 But that thei han it soothly of nature
 And of kynde for to wepe and pleyne;
 Thei sighte sore and into teris reyne,
 Til the tempeste of her woful rage
 May be processe lyte and lyte aswage.
 5575 And thus I leve hem sighte and sorwe make,
 This cely wommen in her clothes blake,
 Shroude her facis, and wypmed mourne in veyn,
 While I turne to my mater ageyn.
 To telle pleynly how Kyng Priamus

act

corpse

plainly; did not care

sighs

bears

Hecuba

Polyxena

describe

if

throes

list

If

think

learn

disfiguring

Except; are inclined; truly

dissolve into tears

hapless

Book 3

- 5580 In herte was inly desyrous
 To caste a weie in his entenciouſe
 The cors to kepe from corrupcioun.
 Whiche naturelly, but men take hede,
 Corrupte muste right of verray nede:
 devise
- 5585 For of kyndely disposicioun
 Ther may be made noon opposicioun,
 Above the gronda yif the body lie,
 That of resoun it mut putrefie;
 But yif crafte be above nature,
 unless
- 5590 Uncorrupte it myghte nat endure.
 Wherefore, the kyng shope him to ordene
 To preserve it hool fro thinges tweyne —
 From odour and abomynacioun —
 And therwith eke by crafty operacioun
 Unless art overcomes
- 5595 That in sight it be not founde horrible,
 But that it be lify and visible
 To the eye, as be apparence,
 Like as it were quyk in existence.
 What it cost the kyng wil spare nouȝt
 living
- 5600 But made anoon aforn hym to be brought
 The craftiest maisteres of the toun,
 Swiche as hadde moſte discrecioſe
 To parfume his axeynge coriouſly.
 And thei obeie his byddynge feithfully
 most skillful
- 5605 With al her wille and enter dillygence
 In the temple, moſte of reverence
 Of al the toun, whilom dedicat
 And of ful yore also consecrat
 To Appollo of olde fundacioun.
 complete
- 5610 Beside a gate stondynge of the toun,
 Callyd Tymbria in her Troyan tonge,
 As the story is bothe red and songe.
 And in this phane that I speake of here,
 Thei made firſte be the highe auter,
 long ago
- 5615 By gret devis, a litel oratorie
 Perpetually to be in memorie,
 Where was set a riche receptacle
 Made in maner of a tabernacle,
 temple
 by; altar
 art

Troy Book

- 5620 Egal of sight, for a large ymage
That reised was on a riche stage,
That was born up at eche of his corneris
Of purid golde upon fourre pilers;
And on everych ful craftily ydight
An angel stood of golde burned bright.
Coriously the werke so sustene
With crafty archis, reised wonder cleane,
Enbowed over al the werke to cure —
So merveilous was the celature
That al the rose and closure enviroun
Was of fym gold platiid up and doun,
With knottis grave wonder corious,
Fret ful of stony siche and precious,
Of every kynde that man can devyse,
So rially and in so thrifte wyse,
That the dirknes of the blake nyght
With the bemys of her clere light
Enchacid was where thei dide shyne.
And from the grunde upright as a lyne
Ther wer degrees, men by to ascende,
Made so wel that no man koude amende
The werkemanship; and thei were everychow
Parformyd up al of cristal stoon,
Attenyng up fro the table bas
Where the stondyng and the resting was
Of this riche crafty tabernacle,
Havynge above upon eche pynacle
A riche ruby; and reised highe on heighth
Stood an ymage, huge and large of weighte,
Of massyf gold, havynge the liknes
5630 Of worthi Hector that gan his face dresse
Toward Grekis where he dide stonde.
Ay thretynge hem with his swerd on honde.
And amyddes al the grete richesse
Thei han yset by good avisenesse
5640 Made so wel that no man koude amende
The werkemanship; and thei were everychow
Parformyd up al of cristal stoon,
Attenyng up fro the table bas
Where the stondyng and the resting was
Of this riche crafty tabernacle,
Havynge above upon eche pynacle
A riche ruby; and reised highe on heighth
Stood an ymage, huge and large of weighte,
Of massyf gold, havynge the liknes
5645 Of worthi Hector that gan his face dresse
Toward Grekis where he dide stonde.
Ay thretynge hem with his swerd on honde.
And amyddes al the grete richesse
Thei han yset by good avisenesse
5650 The dede cors of this worthi knyght,
To sight of man stondyng as upright
By sotil crafte as he were lyvynge.

made

barnished

artfully

Bent; roof

embossing

knobs carved

Adorned

describe

Driven away

stairs

improve

Made of

Extending upwards; low

figure

turn

consideration

corpse

Book 3

	Of face and chere, and of quyk lokynge,	<i>living appearance</i>
	And of colour sothly, and of hewe	
5660	Beinge as freshe as any rose newe And like in al, as be supposaille, As he lyvede in his apparaille: For on his hede, like as it is tolde, Thorough smale pipes wrought and made of gold	<i>supposition</i> <i>apparel</i>
5665	That be mesour wern cabowed doun To an entré makyd in his crown Be grete avys and subtilité To eche party and extremyté Of his body lyneally porrect,	<i>bent</i>
5670	Thorough nerfe and synwe driven and direct, Be secré poris craftely to extende, Wherby the lycour myghte down discende To kepe hym hool fro corruptioun, Withouten any transmutacioun	<i>extended in a straight line</i> <i>nerve; sinew</i> <i>hidden tubes</i> <i>liquid</i>
5675	Of hyde or hewe in any part to tourne. And at his hede of gold was an ourne That was filde with bawme natural That ran thorough pipes artificial Thorough nekke and hed into many place.	<i>sin</i> <i>balm</i>
5680	Penytrable by veynes of the face, That thorough vertu and force of the lycour He was conserved lilly of colour, Fresche of hewe, quyke, and no thinge pale, So myghtely the bawme dide avale —	<i>properties</i>
5685	Comparysownyd, as it were semblable, To a sowle that were vegetable, The whiche withoute sensibilité Mymystreth lyf in herbe, flour, and tre, And semblably into every veyne	<i>alive; not at all</i> <i>have effect</i> <i>Comparable; similar</i>
5690	Of the cors the vertu dide atteyne, By breest and arme spredyng eaviroun: For the moisture by descencioune To hand and foot sothly, as I rede, Thorough bon and joyn gan his vertu shede	<i>power of sensation</i>
5695	And distillynge myghtely to flete. And at his feet, ful of gommys swete,	<i>similarly</i> <i>corpse</i> <i>flow</i> <i>plant resins</i>

Troy Book

	A viol stood, temprid with bawme and meyns, That be processe may nat wexe feynt But day be day encresen and amende,	vial; balm; mixed be diluted grow stronger
5700	Of whiche the vapour upward gan ascende, Causyng the eyr envirooun be delys To resemble a verray paradys: For the flavour more holsom was and soote	delight
	Than the odour of spice, gomme, or rote.	sweet
5705	And of pure gold were foure lampis light, Tofore the cors brennymge day and nyght With oyle in soth, yif it be credible, That was be crafte made inextinguylle:	burning
	For it ne myght, myn auctor seyth certeyn,	extinguished
5710	Nouther be queint with tempest, winde, nor reyn, Nor be processe wasted of no yeris — Whiche in the eyr be bright borned weris Ful craftely reised werne aloft,	wires
	Of whos swernes men rejoyseden ofte,	
5715	In her corage it likede hem so wel. And whan this werke was complete everydel Rounde envirooun, ful riche and freshe to se, Thei made a parclos al of Ebam tre	hearts
	That so longe laste may and dure;	
5720	The whiche tre only of nature, Whan it is kut, smelleth wonder swete And may nat waste ne brenne with noon hete, Though it be leide amone the colis rede,	
	Mid the flawme of many firy glede:	coals
5725	It nat consumeth, though men assaien ofte; And in water it boveth eke aloft, And kyndely to the grounde it goth, To swymme on heighth in soth it is so loth.	live coal
	And like also as techeth Pluvias,	dry
5730	This tre whilom was passingly famus, Of so hyghe pris and reputacion That in the large myghti regioun And worthi lond of Ethiope and Ynde	boveth
	Of yore agen the folkis, as I fynde,	naturally
5735	Hadden this tre in so gret honour	
		Piley
		once
		value
		time passed
		Held

Book 3

- That thei yaf tribut to the emperour,
As is remembred of antyquyté. gave
Of gold and yvor and this riche tre.
With these giftes famous and royal
5740 To quyte her dette to hym in special. pay
And whan Priam in ful thrifte wyse proper
Performed hath, as ye han herde devyse,
This riche werke, noble and excellent,
Of hertly love in al his beste entent
5745 Ordeyned eke, as Guydo can yow telle,
A certeyn noumber of prestis for to dwelle
In the temple in her devociouns
Contynually with devout orisouns prayers
For the soule of Hector for to preie,
5750 That the goddis his spirit list conveie might wish
Eternally with hem to dwelle yfere together
In joie and blisse above the sterris clere.
To whiche prestis the kyng yaf mansions,
Ther to abide, and possessiouns, gave houses
5755 The whiche he hath to hem amortised deeded
Perpetually, as ye han herd devyse.
And whiles thei knele, preie, and wake,
I caste fully an ende for to make plan
Finally of my thridde boke,
5760 On my rude maner as I undistoke;
And whiles thei of Troye wepe and mourne,
Unto the Grekes I wil ageyn retourne
And with dul stile on the story trace,
Only born up with support of your grace. stylus: move along

Book 4

Hector thus ded, as ye han herd me seid,
And Achilles in his tent ibeid
With his woundis mortal, freshe, and grene,
Upon a morwe, whan the sonne shene
5 Enchased had away the dirke nyght,
Agamenoun, the wyse worthi knyght,
In his werkis passingly prudent,
Hath in al haste for his lordis sent.

[*Agamemnon is convinced that Fortune has sealed Troy's doom. He advises that the Greeks wait for Achilles's wounds to heal and seek a two months' truce from Priam to burn the dead and forestall the threat of pestilence. During the truce, Palamedes renews his dispute over Agamemnon's governance. Agamemnon chooses his moment and then confronts Palamedes in open audience with the Greek leaders (lines 9–152).]*

- "Sothly," quod he, "yif ye taken hede, if
Me semeth plenly it were no nede,
155 Avisely yif ye list adverte, Wisely: wish to consider
To muse so nor grucchen in youre herte
Of al this hoste that I have governance,
Wisly considered every circumstaunce,
How I th'estat (whiche no man may desye) position
160 Wolde in no maner never occupie
By other title than fre elleccioun,
Nat interrupt by mediacion
Of brocage, roted upon mede,
Ay undermeynt with favour or falsbede, hindered by means
165 Depict with colour of trewe entencioun
To support swiche false ambicioun;
Of whiche thing here I wil me quyte
Tofore yow alle that I am not to wyte
In any wyse of so highe offence prove myself innocent
170 But stonde clere in my conscience to be blamed

Book 4

- Without spot of any swiche veynglorie
Touchinge th'estat, whiche is transitorie.
Yet nevertheles I have do my cure
With al my wit to helpen and procure
175 That everything touching the communité
Persevere myght in prosperité,
Havynge the eye of myn inward sight
Unto the estat of every maner wyght
That were committed to my governance,
180 With gret labour and besy attendaunce,
Indifferent unto highe and lowe,
To helpe and fostre wher I coude knowe
That any stood in meschef or in nede,
Day and nyght for to taken hede,
185 As I best koude, by avisenesse,
Ay dillygent that nat felle in distresse.
For sothfastly, whoso loke aright,
Mi daies thinkyng and my wache aight
And of myn hert th'inly advertience
190 Withoutte fraude, slouth, or negligence
Was feithfully with al my fulle myght
Me to aquyte to every maner wight,
Liche his estat withoutte excepcion;
So that no man justly of resoun.
195 Greke nor other that is now alyve,
Unto my gilt dewly may ascrive
Any falsehed, engyn, or trecherie
Of love or hate, favour or flaterie
In any cause named in special,
200 But that I have beene eliche egal
To oon and alle with al my besy peyne,
That no man hath mater to compleyne
For his party, of highe nor lowe estat.
And to devoide al rancour and debat
205 Amongis yow, I have do my dever
In general thing and particular,
That hertoward nothing hath mescheved.
And God wot wel, it shuld nat agrevid
To my herte t'asset at any prys.
- exerted myself
community
person
Who was
distress
prudence
inner
behave
According to
stragem
alike
Of his part
remove
duty
So that; miscarried
known; cause grief
to take lightly

Troy Book

- 210 Yow t'achose by youre discret avis
Som other to this domynacioun
And I to have ben in subjeccioune
With ese of herte and tranquillite
Liche other lordis here of my degré
215 And in my wil fully han obeyed —
Like on of yow outerly to have deyed
In the quarel that we han undirtake,
Yif destiné had it so yshape:
I seie in soth, me is ful loth to feyne.
220 And overmore also, wher ye compleyne
That I was chose withoute your assent,
Merweileth nat, sith ye ne were present;
Nor longe after, yif ye remembre aright,
Toward Troye your weie was nat dight.
225 Yif ye considre, it was after me
Or that ye cam passed ful two yer;
And so longe t'abide youre commynge
It hadde ben to Grekis gret hyndryng,
Passynge harme, and ful gret damage,
230 And huge lettynge unto oure viage.
For yif we had withouten any wene
On your comynge taried at Athene,
It likly is — ye can nat wel seie nay —
To have be there yit into this day.
235 And whereas ye, though it be nat credible,
Affermen eke for an impossible
That Grekis shuld in any maner wyse
Dor take on hem any gret emprise
In youre absence manly to achewe,
240 It is but wynde, nothinge for to leve.
For so it be to you noon offence,
The Grekis han withoute youre presence
Thorugh her force on water and on lond
Ful many thing performed with her hond
245 And achieved thorugh her worthines.
And of o thing that in me ye gesse
(This to seyne, that of my degré
I shulde in herte so rejoissh me

*Your choosing
lordship*

*If; determined
I am reluctant*

chosen

*if
prepared
If; nearly
Before*

*would have been; hindrance
Surpassing
hindrance
doubt*

*Dare
accomplish
believe*

Book 4

- 250 Of this lordshipe and this grete estat,
The more to be pompos and elat
In chere or port that I it occupie) *proud*
But me to aquite trewly and nat lye
And to devoide al suspecioune, *appearance; behavior*
I wil make a resignacioun
255 Tofore yow alle, for to excuse me.
Now beth avised discretly for to se
Whom ye list han ageyn tomorrow prime *be prepared*
Withoutte settynge of any lenger tyme,
Prolonging forthe, or any more delay." *wish; tomorrow at the first hour*
- 260 And thus thei made an ende of that day
And went her weye only for that nyght
Til on the morwe that Titan shadde his light, *when*
At whiche tyme a conseil general
The Grekis hilde; but moste in special *held*
- 265 Of lordis was ther congregacioun,
As I have tolde, for the eleccioun.
And whan thei were alle met ifere, *together*
Agamenoun anoon, as ye shal here,
Seide evene thus, with sadde countenaunce.
- 270 "Lo, sirs," quod he, "touchyng governaunce *lordship*
That I have had and domynacioun,
I have herto with hool affeccioun
And clene entent do my besynes
That everything might in welfulnes
- 275 To youre encres perseveren and costune.
Recorde I take of God and Fortune, *Call to witness*
Whiche han conservid and the cause be
You for to floare in felicité,
That youre honour and highe noblesse
- 280 Stant hool and sounde yit in sikernes. *security*
And while your fame is most in flouringe,
As semeth me, it is right wel sittinge *it is appropriate*
Myne estat fully to resygne,
Specially while Fortune is benyngne;
- 285 For of so many that be now present
I am allone insufficient
Withoutte helpe for to bere a charge: *burden*

Troy Book

- Men with to moche may overlaide a barge
And namely in tempest and in rage.
- 290 And sith ye bene so discret and sage,
Of my berthene late me be relieved
So that no man therwith be agrevid;
But late us alle of oon entencious,
Withoutte strife or dissencionous,
- 295 Chesen swiche oon that be most acceptable
To yow echon and most covenable,
Yow to governe by discessiou."
- And thei echon with hool affecccious
Assentid hem. To speke in general,
- 300 Here men may se how it is natural
Men to delite in thinge that is newe:
The trust of peple is feint and untrewe,
Ay undiscrete and ful of doublines
And variable of hir sikernesse,
- 305 Ay awaitynge in her oppinioun
After chaunge and transmutacioun,
Selde or never stondyng hool in oon
(Today thei love, tomorrow it is gon),
In whom ful selde is any sikernes.
- 310 For only now of newfongilnes
That hath embracid her affecccious
Thei have in stede of Agamenoun
Of newe chose, only of favour,
Pallamydes to ben her governour,
- 315 And of Grece, liche as thei desyre,
To have the septre of the hool empire,
And to be called in every cost
Emperour of the Grekis host,
Right as toforn was Agamenoun.
- 320 And this was fyn and conclusioun
For thilke day of her parlement.
And after that, every man is went
To his loggyng, home the righte wey.

[After the truce expires, Priam takes the field with one hundred and fifty thousand troops. His old hatred for the Greeks now doubled by Hector's death, he slays many foes. The King

Book 4

of Persia is killed in the fighting, and the next day Priam seeks a truce in order to embalm his body. Meanwhile, the funeral rites for Hector begin, and warriors from the two sides exchange visits. Achilles is taken by a desire to visit Troy (lines 324-550).]

- And forthe he went on a certein day
 Toward Troye in al the hast he may,
 Unarmyd soothly, as myn auctor seith,
 Withoute assuraunce or any other feith
 555 Excepte the trew, whoso be lefe or loth. *truce; liked it or not*
 And first of al unto the temple he goth
 Of Appollo. Halwed was the feste *Observed*
 Thorughoute the toun down unto the lest, *people in lowest social position*
 That clepid was the anyversarie. *called*
 560 As ye han herde — what shold I lenger tarie —
 And many worthi present wer therat
 Amyd the temple, of highe and lowe estat,
 Lordis and ladyes of affeccioun
 From every part gadered of the toun.
 565 Now was the cors of this worthi knyght *corpse*
 As freshe of colour kepte unto the sight,
 As lilly eke and as quik of hewe *alive*
 To beholde as any rose newe
 Thorugh vertu only of the gommys swete *plant resins*
 570 And the bawme that gan aboute flete *balm; flow*
 To every joyst and eche extremyté.
 And at this feste and solempnyté
 Was Eccuba and yonge Polycene, *Hecuba; Polynena*
 So wommanly and goodly on to sene.
 575 With many other of highe estat and lowe
 Tofore the cors sittynge on a rowe
 With heer untressid, clad in wedis blake,
 That evere in on swich a sorwe make
 That routhe was and pitē for to sene
 580 How thei pleyne and the deth bement
 Of worthi Hector, of knyghthod grunde and welle.
 But trowe ye (as Guydo list to telle)
 That Polycene in al hir woful rage
 Ichauengid hath upon hir visage *know*
 585 Hir natif colour, as fresche to the sight *face*

Troy Book

- As is the rose or the lillye whight,
Outher the freshenes of hir lippes rede,
For al the terys that she gan to shede
On hir chekis, as any cristal clere?
white
Or
- 590 Hir heer also resemblyng to gold wyre,
Whiche lay abrood like unto the sight
Of Phebus bmys in his spere bright
When he to us doth his light avale.
wire
sphere
send downward
- 595 Hir golden here on hir blake wede,
Of whiche thing Achilles toke good bede
And gan merveille gretly in his thought
How God or Kynde ever myght have wrought
In her werkis so fair a creature:
clothes
Nature
their
- 600 For he thought he myghte nat endure
To beholde the brightnes of hir face,
For he felte thorugh his herte pace
The percyng stremys of hir eyen two;
Cupides brond hath hym markid so
pass
eyes
brand
- 605 For love of hir that in his desire
He brent as hoote in sooth as any fire,
And after sone with sodeyn colde he quoke,
And alweye fix on hir he hadde his loke,
So that the arwe of the god Cupide
610 Percid hym evene thorugh the syde
To the herte and yaf hym swiche a wounde
That nevere was lyke for to sounde.
And ay in oon his loke on hir he castie,
As he durste, and gan to presse faste
gave
likely; heal
the same
- 615 Toward hir, namly, with his eye,
That hym thought he most nedis deye
But yif that he founde in hir some grace.
Ther was no geyn, for pleinly in that place
Of newe he was kaught in lovis snare.
Unless
remedy
- 620 That of helth and of al welfare
He was dispeired in his herte so
That he ne knew what was best to do.
Eche other thing, I do yow wel assure,
He set at nought and toke of hit no cure;

Book 4

- | | | |
|-----|--|--|
| 625 | His thought was hool on hir and on no mo.
The longe day thus went he to and fro,
Til Phebus char lowe gan declyne
His golden axtre that so cler doth shine
(This to seyne, the sonne wente doun) | wholly

 |
| 630 | Whan Ecuba, Quene of Troye toum,
And hir daughter Polycene also
Oute of the temple to the paleis go;
And ay Achilles on hir hadde a sight
While he myght, til for lak of light | chariot

 |
| 635 | He may no more have leyser oportune
To loke on hir, cursed be Fortune.
For whiche in haste he makid hathe his west
With his knyghtes home unto his tent,
Wher he anon withoute more tariyng | <i>her taken his way</i>

 |
| 640 | To bedde goth, ful trist in compleyning.
Ay in hymself casting up and doun
In his mynde and eke in his resoun
From hed to foot hir bewte everydel.
And in his hert he felt and knewe ful wel | immediately

 |
| 645 | That final cause of his languysshinge
Was Polycene, of bewte most passinge:
For love of whom so moche peine he felte
That with the hete he thought his herte melte,
Ay on his bedde walwyng to and fro | also

 |
| 650 | For the constreint of his hidde wo,
For whiche almost him thoughte that he deide;
And to himsilfe even thus he seide.
"Alias," quod he, "how me is wo begoon,
That of my sorwe knowe ende noon, | reason

 |
| 655 | For I suppose, sith the world began
Ne was ther nevere a wofuller man:
For I that whilom was of so gret myght,
So renomed of every maner wyght | Who

 |
| 660 | Thorughoute the world, bothe of highe and lowe,
For ther was noon in sothe that koude knowe
A man in armys that was more famus
Nor iholde more victorius,
Tofore this tyme remembrid be no stile | type of person

 |
| | | truth; might

 |
| | | held

 |

Troy Book

- 665 Into this day — alias, the harde while —
Nouther Hector pleinly nor noon other,
Of Polycene that was the worthi brother,
That power had whan thei with me mette,
For al her myght, me to oversette,
Nor in the felde my force for to daunte,
Here prively as I me dar avaunte.
But now, alias, a mayde of tender age
Hath sodeinly me brought in swiche a rage
That with the stremys of his eyen tweyne
She percid hath and corve every veyme
675 Of myn hert, that I may nat asterte
For to be ded thorough constreint of my smerte.
For who shal now wissen me or teche,
Or who, alias, shal now be my leche,
Or who shal now helpe me or save?
680 Ther is but deth and after that my grave,
For other hope pleinly is ther noon.
Save in hir mercy, alias, and that is goon.
For nouther prayer, tresour, nor richesse,
Force nor myght, nouther highe prowesse,
685 Highnes of blood, birthe, nor kymrede
May availen or helpen in this nede
To meven hir, nor my saddle trouthe,
Upon my wo evere to have routhe.
What newe furie or importune rage
690 Hath brought myn herte into swyche outrage
Ageynes whiche I can not debate:
To love his best that dedly doth me hate.
And in good feith, who wisly list adverte,
Litel wonder though she me hate of herte,
695 Sith I am come hyder fro so ferre
On hir kymrede for to make werre,
In the whiche to my confusioune
Hir knyghtly brother, most worthi of renoun,
Have fatally with myn hondis slawe,
700 Whiche in this worlde hadde no felawne
Of worthiness nor of manlyhede.
Alias, alias, now may I quake and drede
- vanquish
subdue
boast

passion

pierced
escape
pain
advise
physician

family

sincere promise

grievous
extremity
contend

consider

Since

distress

stain
equal

Book 4

- And of my lyf fallen in dispeire.
For how shuld I be bold to have repeire
Or dorn, alias, comen in hir sight,
I woful wreche, I unhappy wyght?
Or how shal I ben hardy to appere
In the presence of hir eyen clere?
Certys, I se non other mene weye
But finally that I muste deye,
So dispeired I stonde on every syde,
Of other helpe I can me nat provyde."
And right anoon with profounde sighes depe
This Achilles brast ousie for to wepe
With dedly chere, pale and funeral,
And with his face turned to the wal,
That routhe was and pité for to sene
The hertly furie of his peynes kene.
For so oppressed he was in his thought
Of lyf nor deth that he roughte nougħt.
And this contuneth till it drew to nyght,
That Titan hath withdrawe his clere light.
And evere in oon lith this woful man
Iliche sike, of colour pale and wan,
Withoute slepe, so fretyng was his sorwe,
Til Lucifer on the nexte morwe.
Tofore the sonne, with his bemys clere
Ful lustely gan for to appere
In the orient, whan this Achilles,
Unpacient, withoute reste or pes,
Quakyng evere in his sevērē newe
(As it was sene plainly in his bewe),
Til he abreide of anguyshe sodeymly
And called oon that was with hym prevy
And of counseil whom he tristeth wel;
And unto hym he telleth everydel
From point to point with him how it stood
And sent him forthe because he koude his god
On his message streight to Troye toun
With ful avis and informacioun
Of this mater to Ecuba the Quene
- return
dare
person
eyes

paid attention to nothing
continually
Constantly
consuming
the morning star

Impatient
started
intimate

knew what was good for him
knowledge

Troy Book

- Thorough his wisdam for to ben a mene,
Yif he myght by his discrecion
Fynde any waye of savacioun
Unto his lord that he loyd so.
And to the quene anon he is go
And his mater wylly gan conveie
Tosorn or he of grace wolde preie
That she enjoith to yeve hym audience,
For in his tale ther was noon offence:
He was no fool or newe for to lere.
Wherfore the quene goodly gan hym here
Of al that evere hym liketh for to seyn;
Ther was no worde ylost nor spoke in veyn.
For his tale no man koude amende.
And craftely he gan to discende
To the substancie and tolde clerly out,
With premisses ful wel brought about,
That finally in conclusioun
The chefe, he seide, of his entencioune
Effectuously, yif it wolde be,
Was for to make pes and unite
Atwene Grekis and the folke of Troye.
To whiche thing he knew no better woye
Than of the werre, for her alder ese.
By his wit prudensly t'apese
The mortal strife and the bitter rage
By allyaunce only of mariage,
Yif that hir liste, this wyse, worthi quene,
That hir daughter, faire Pollicene,
May weddid be unto Achilles.
Wherthorugh ther myght be a final pes,
Yif Ecuba thorough his discrecion,
Thorough hir wit and mediacion
And hir prudence myght aboute beyng
That Priamus were fully assentynge
That Achilles myght his daughter wyve,
So that it myght performyd ben as blyve
(Lyke as I have made mencioune)
By covenant only and condicioun
- intermediary
If
- Before
give
message
inexperienced man
hear
- carefully
- aim
In effect, if
- means
for both of their advantages
- If: she wished*
- quickly

Book 4

- That the Grekis shal her werre lete
And suffre him to lyven in quyete,
Yif the mariage of this ilke tweyne
Performed be and knyt up in a cheyne.
- 785 And whan the quene hath knownen his entent,
Ful soberly, by good avysement.
Toform or that any word asterte,
Ful pitously she syghed in hir herte,
And at the laste with a sobir chere
790 She seide thus to the messenger.
"My frend," quod she, "touching thi request,
I can no more make the beheste,
But at the lesse I wil condiscende
What lyth in me to bringe to an ende
795 Thi lordis wil with al myn herte entere.
But hereupon I muste firste require
The kynges wil, yif he wil yeve assent
To the purpos for whiche thou art sent.
And overmore I muste wyte also
800 Yif that Parys be willyng eke thereto,
Of whiche thing with every circumstaunce
I wil myselfe maken enquaunce
Ful feithfully of Priam and Parys
The menewhyle, what is her avys.
- 805 Withoute more withinne dayes thre,
At whiche tyme come ageyn to me
From Achilles, yif he wil the sende,
And finally thou shalt knowe an ende
Of this mater and an answere pleyn."
- 810 And home he goth to Achilles ageyn
With ful glad chere, his lord the mor to plesse;
And for to sette his herte bet at ese,
Avisely of highe discreciooun.
He hath so made his relacioun
- 815 And told his tale in so thrifti wyse,
As he that koude his wordis so devyse
To bringe in hope to his lordis herte
With ful reles of his peymes smert,
Wherby he made his sorwe to withdrawe.
- their war abandons*
consideration
Before; might escape
grant; bidding
agree
ask
give
know
If
counsel
send you
proper
conduct
injury

Troy Book

- 820 And thus while hope gan for to adawe
Amyd his brest, Eccuba the Quene
To Priam spak of this Polycene,
Touchinge the sonde of this Achilles
And of his profre for to make a pes;
She tolde hym al and forgat nothinge.
Wheroft astonyd, Priamus the Kyng
Spak nat a word half an oures space
But in hymselfe gan for to compasse
Ful prudently what it myghte mene
That Achilles wolde have Polycene
Unto his wyf, ay woadring mor and more;
And at the last, sighyng wonder sore,
He discloseth the conceit of his herte
And seide, "Allas, how sore it doth me smerte
To remembre how I may have no pes —
The grete offence of this Achilles
Towardis me pleinly whan that he
Slowe worthi Hector thoru his cruelté,
That booly was upon every side
Th'assuraunce, governour, and guyde
Of me and myn platly for to seyne
And therwithal of myn eyen tweyne
He was allone the verray sothfast lyght,
Shelde, and protectour thorough his grete myght
And his manhood ageyn the mortal rage
Of Grekis werre in my crooked age.
But now, allas, to my confusioune
He slawen is, so worthi of renoun,
Be Achilles, whiche may not out of mynde,
That in myn herte I can nevere fynde
To ben allyed with my mortal foo.
Rote and grounde of al my sorwe and wo.
It were ful harde myn herte to apese
To loven hym that causeth myn unese
On every half, whertherough my cruel foos,
The proude Grekis, herid ben echon
Ageynes me, now Fortune is contrarie,
Torned of newe my quarel to apaire,
- rise
message
astonished
ponder
thought
injury
Slow
bear
distress
By
foundation
induce
foes
encouraged
cause damage

Book 4

- That causeth Grekis, wood and furious,
860 On me, alias, to be presumptuous
Only for Hector is me berafte away.
But sithen I noon other chese may,
Ageynes herte, though it for anger ryve,
In this mater assay I shal to strive,
865 Though me be loth and sitteth me ful sore;
Yit to eschewe harmsys that ben more,
Whiche likly ben hereafter for to falle,
And for to save myn other sonys alle,
I wil concient that this Achilles.
870 So that he make a trewe final pes
Atwene Grekis and also this cite
Withoute more plainly, how that he
Have unto wyfe my daughter Polycene.
But list that he any tresoun mene,
875 My wil is, first, howso that it wende,
Of his beheste that he make an ende
Withoute fraude — this is myn avis."
To whiche conseil assenteth eke Parys
And more rathe in conclusioun,
880 For ther was made noon excepcioun
In the treté of the Quene Eleyne,
That Menlaye evere shulde attayne
Hir to recure ageyn unto his wif,
For whiche Paris withoute noise or strife
885 Or grecchinge outhir unto this entent
Withinne hymself was fulli of assent,
Therby hopynge withoute fere or drede
Perpetuelly Eleyne to possede
Right at his lust and no man shal seie nay.
890 And after this upon the thridde day
Achilles hath, to wyte of this mater,
To Ecuba sent his messanger;
And she tolde hym the answere of the kyng.
Ceriously gynnyng and endynge,
895 And how that he assenteth wel thereto
And Paris eke and she hirsilfe also,
Yif it so were pleynly, she hym tolde.
- Only because*
since
split
by
- Provided; truly lasting peace*
- left*
turn out
- readily*
- return*
- possess*
- know*
- In due order*
- If*

Troy Book

- Touchinge the pes that the purpos holde
And firste that he his heste bring aboue
That thei be sure; thanne him dar not doute
That he shal have his purpos everydel.
Yif that he wirke prudently and wel.
And hereupon with informacioun
This messenger oute of Troye toun
Withoute abood, in al the haste he may,
To Achilles helde the righte way
And tolde him hool th'effect of this mater.
And he alweie fervent and entere
In herte brent hoot as any glede
And saw ther was no waye for to spedē
But only pes, as ye han herd me telle;
And ay his breast with sighes gan to swelle
For the love of this Polycene
And cast away amonege his peines kene
To his purpos a weie for to fynde.
And whiles he was besy in his mynde
How he shuld his purpos bringe aboue
And in hymself cast many a doute,
Anoon Dispeir in a rage upsterte
And cruellē caughte hym by the herte,
Whiche bath hym throwe into swiche a were
That hym thoughte it nas in his power
His beheste to fulfille in dede,
Exepte he hadde wel the lasse drede
Everything to putten in certeyn,
Wenng no Greke wolde his last withseyn,
From his desire to be variable.
And to hymself thus was he favourable
For to performe and no thing denye
Al that was lusty to his fantasye,
As is the maner of lovers everychon,
That thei suppose to achieve anon
What thing it be that thei take on honde,
In what disjoint that the mater stonde,
Altheigh it be a verray impossible:
In her folly thei ben so credible.
- promise (pledge)
- delay
- coal
- prosper
- [he] considered always*
- At once; arose
- uncertainty
- was nor
- apprehension
- make certain
- Thinking; wish reject
- in no way resource
- desirable
- extreme condition
- willing to believe

Book 4

- And so Achilles trusteth finally
 To fulfille his hestes utterly,
 Supposyng ay for his worthines,
 940 For his manhood and his highe prowes,
 In whiche he dide hymselfe glorie
 Somwhat of pride and of surquedie,
 How the Grekes shulde be dispeire,
 Bothe of her trust and her myght apeired
 945 Upon Troyens to wynnes any londe,
 Yif it so were he withdrew his honde
 To helpen hem, and therwithal also
 Home into Grece that thei wolde go
 From the sege only for his sake
 950 And her quarel utterly forsake,
 But it so were this hardy, ferse Achille
 With hem abood the cité for to spille.
 For whiche thing the lordis by assent
 Assemblid wern to heren the entent
 955 Amonge hem alle of this Achilles,
 By the biddynge of Pallamydes.
 And whan thei wern gadrid alle ifere,
 Toforn hem alle, like as ye shal here,
 This Achilles hath his tale gonne
 960 And seide: 'Sirs, that so moche konne
 Bothe of wisdom and of highe prudence,
 So renomed eke of sapience
 Thorughoute the worlde and of discrecion,
 And ben so worthi also of renoun,
 965 Kynges, dukis, of whom the rial name
 From est to west flouring yit in fame,
 Bothe of knyghthod and of manlihede,
 To that I seie I praye you taketh hede:
 This to seyne, yif that ye considere
 970 The pleyn entent of oure comyng hider
 By good avis and discrecion
 Had no grounde founded on resoun
 Nor cause roted on no titel of right,
 Yif it so be, that ye liften up youre sight
 975 And advertien clerly in youre mynde,
- promises entirely
arrogance
weakened
If it happened
overthrow
together
began
know
wisdom
if
intention
claim
reflect

Troy Book

- Ful fer abak wit was sette behynde,
Prudent lokynge and avisenesse.
For first whan we of foly hastynesse
Toke upon us to come fro so ferre far
980 Ageynes Troyens for to gynne a werre
And to juparde oure lyves everychon risk
For the love of o man allone —
Ye wesen alle, I trowe, whom I mene, think
Kynge Menelay, defrauded of his quene,
985 To telle trouthe (me list nat for to feyne) — *I do not wish*
For ye wel wite only that Eleyne *Hele*
Was grounde and gynnyme of al this debate, strife
For whom so many worthi of estate,
Recurles of any remedye. Without hope
990 Life and good han putte in jupartie,
Oure londis left and oure regiouns,
Oure cités eke and oure riche tounes,
Whiche by oure absence stonde desolat.
Wives and childer eke disconsolat
995 In wo abide, mournymge, and distresse,
Whiles that we, the sothe to expresse, mirth
Fro day to day beset on every syde,
Lyn in the felde and oure desh abide
In sorwe and care, in labour and in wo.
1000 And with al this ye wete wel also. know
Sithen tyme that the werre began, Since
Of oure Grekes how many worthi man
Hath loste his lyf thorough dethis fatal wounde,
That myght herio have lyved and be sounde otherwise
1005 At home in Grece assured wel in joye, If
Yif thei ne hadde comen unto Troye —
That to remembre it is ful gret pité.
And over this I seie also for me:
Amonge Troyens in her cruel mood
1010 I have ylost so moche of my blood
That hath ful ofte made me pale of hewe.
This other day also, grene and newe,
I hadde of Hector swiche a mortal wounde
With a quarel sharpe whet and grounde bolt sharply whetted

Book 4

- 1015 Above the thighe — so kene was the hed —
 The same day aforn that he was ded,
 Of verray hap as it was yshape,
 That fro the deth unnethe I myghte eskape.
 Whiche yit al freshe is uppon me sene
 before
 chance
 scarcely
- 1020 Large and wyde and as yit but grene,
 The smert of whiche sore yit I pleyne.
 And in good feith, me semeth that Eleyne,
 Yif ye adverse wysly in your thought,
 With swiche a pris shulde nat be bought,
 Injury; lament
 consider
- 1025 Wherthorugh oure lyf and oure good yfere
 And oure honour arm yput in were
 And dredfully hangen in ballaunce.
 For yif that ye in youre remembraunce
 Conceyve aright and casten up and doun
 possessions
 doubt
- 1030 The sodeyn chaunge and revolucion
 That fallen hath sith the werre gan,
 The slaughter and deth of many worthi man
 That for his sake bath here lost his lyf,
 Yet the werst of this mortal strif
 since
- 1035 Doth most rebounde into oure damage
 To disences and eke disavauntage
 And likly is to encresse more,
 Yif ordynaunce be nat made therfore
 And remedie shape on outhier side,
 detiment
- 1040 By fyn only that Eleyne abide
 With hem of Troye, stille here in the toun.
 And late us cast by good inspeccioune
 For oure ese som other mene way
 So that the kyng called Menelai
 means
- 1045 Chese hym a wylf in som other lond
 Lyk his estat be suraunce or be bonde,
 Under wedlock confermed up of newe,
 That unto hym wole be founde trewe,
 Sithen that he withoute gilt or synne
 Appropriate to; pledge
- 1050 May be the law from Eleyne twynne;
 For of dyvos causis ben ynowe
 Thoroughoute the worlde of every wight knowe
 Of avoutri for the foule vice.
 Since
 separate
 divorce; enough
 person
 adultery

Troy Book

- For to lawe is no prejudice,
1055 Though Menelay justly hir forsake
Whan so hym list and another take
That shal him bet bothe queme and plesse.
And so to us it shal be ful gret ese,
Whan the werre is brought to an ende,
1060 Whiche likly is many man to shende,
Yif it so be that it forthe contune.
The grete labour is so importune
That we ne shal no while mowe sustene;
For this is sooth withouten any wene:
1065 Troyens yit ben flouryng in her myght
And with hem han ful many worthi knyght
To helpen hem, of highe and lowe degré;
And therwithal so stronge is her cyté
On every parte withouten and withinne
1070 That we ar nat likly for to wynne
In oure purpos, though we evere abide.
Wherfore be wisdam lete us voide pride
And wilfulnes, only of prudence
To han the eye of oure advertence
1075 To oure profyt more than to veylglorie;
And while oure honour shyneth by victorie,
A wysdam is to withdrawe oure bond.
Sith we may nat constreyne by no bond
Fortunys whel for to abide stable.
1080 Wherfor I rede, or she be mutable,
This gery goddes with hir double cher.
Let us yeve up swiche thing as lithe in wer
Whiles that we mow oure worship save:
For of the werre the laude yit we have,
1085 Considered wel how by oure manlyhede
Oure mooste fo, Hector, is now dede.
And while that we in oure honour floure,
My counsell is, or Fortune losse,
As I seide er, to chaunge hir brighte face,
1090 While that best we stonde in hir grace,
By on assent and oon oppinioun
Withouten any contradiccion
- Whenever he wishes
gratify
- destroy
continue
severe
be able to
true; doubt
- do away with
foresight
- Since
- advise before she changes
fickle goddess
give; adheres to war
honor
praise
- greatest
- before; frown
before

Book 4

- Of hert and wil, bothe of on and alle,
 Or oure honour on any party palle,
 1095 Into Grece home that we retourne.
 For yif that we lenger here sojourne
 On the quarel that we have longe swed,
 Dosteles — it may nat bene eschewed —
 Ful gret damage — this withoute faille —
 1100 Or we have don shal folwen at the taile:
 Wherfore best is oure folie up resigne.
 And while oure hap is welful and benygne,
 Most blaundisshinge and of face faire,
 The tyme is best to maken oure repeire,
 1105 While that we stonde in party and in al
 With oure enemyes in honour peril
 And fer above plainly, yif that we
 Koude han an eye to oure felicite,
 Whiche that is in his ascenceoun.
 1110 But list som man wil make objeccions
 That we may nat so oure honour save,
 To repeire pleynly but we have
 Eleyne ageyn that is cause of al,
 To whiche thing anoon answer I shal:
 1115 Yif any man in his fantasie
 To dishonour or to vyllenye
 Arreteit wolde in any maner kynde
 We to gon hom and leuen hir behynde,
 Shortly to seyn, I holde it be no shame,
 1120 Sith that we han on as gret of name
 As is Eleyne and of berthe as good,
 Amongis us ycome of kynges blood,
 Suster to Priam, lord of Troye toun,
 Exona, whom that Thelamoun
 1125 In kepyng hath, yif I shal nat feyne,
 In Troye toun as Paris hath Eleyne.
 And sithe now it may bene noon other,
 Lete the ton be sette ageyn the tother
 And the surplus of olde enmyte
 1130 Betwysen us and Troye the cité.
 My conseil is, for oure bothen ese,
- Before; less*
- pursued*
- in the end*
- fortune*
- return*
- part*
- equal*
- if*
- lest*
- return; unless*
- If*
- Ascribe*
- Since; have one*
- Hesione*
- the one; the other*
- ease of both of us*

Troy Book

- By on assent wysly to appese,
This al and som, and that we hennes wende.
I can no more; my tale is at an ende."
1135 To whom anoon Kyng Menelaus,
For verray ire wood and furious,
And Kyng Thoas, the duke eke of Athene,
As thei that myght no lenger hym sustene
(To suffren hym thei were so rekeles),
1140 Spak alle attonis unto Achilles.
Nat only thei but thorugh impacience
The court, perturbid, withoute providence,
With tumult gonnes to repreve
This Achilles and proudly hem commewe
1145 Ageynes hym and hys oppinioun,
And seide shortly in conclusioun
Unto his reed thei nold nevere assent
Nor condescende to nothing that he ment,
To be governed by hym in this cas.
1150 For whiche thing anoon Achilles was
So full of ire and rancour in his hert
That sodeinly from his se he sterite,
And went his way, as he were in a rage,
Triste and pale, and a wood visage,
1155 And shortly seide, for hym list nat feyne,
That he ne wolde lenger don his peyne
To helpen hem, howso that thei spede,
Ageymes Troyens for no maner nede,
And bad anon, this hardy Achilles,
1160 To his knyghtes called Mirmidores
That thei no more with spre nor with shelde
To helpe Grekes entren into the felde
But kepe hem clos at home withinne her tent.
Thus in his ire he yaf commaundement
1165 To alle his men, as ye han herd devise,
Hem to withdrawe at every hyghe emprise,
Whansoever thei goon into bataille.
And in this while skarsenes of vitaille
Fil in the hoste of fleshe, bred, and wyn,
1170 That many Greke brought unto the fyn,
- pacify enmity
hence depart
mad
tolerate
at once
roused
advice
seat
dissimilate
whatever happened to them
gave
described
they (the Greeks)
food

Book 4

- For thei ne myght endure for distresse,
 Constraint of hunger dide hem so oppresse.
 Til at the last Kyng Pallamydes,
 As he that was in no thing rekeles, *in no way*
 1175 Hath therupon maked purviaunce,
 Remedio, and redy ordinaunce.
 And by assent and counseil of echon
 He hath ysent wyse Agamenoun, *dispatched*
 The worthi kyng, to Messa there beside,
 1180 A litel ile, only to provide *island*
 For the Grekis, yif he myghte spede, *if; have success*
 Hem to releve in this grete nede.
 And Thelephus, kyng of thilke lond, *that same*
 Of gentilnes hath put to his hood,
 1185 As he that was large and wonder fre *generous*
 And renomyd of humanité,
 To socour hem, commaundinge anoon
 His purvyours in al haste to goon
 From every party abouen enviroun
 1190 Thorough alle the boundis of his regioun *explore*
 And feithfully to cerchyn every coste *army*
 To take up vitaille for the Grekis host.
 And after that ful hastily he made
 To stufc her shippes plenly, and to lade
 1195 With everything that was necessarie *delay*
 To the Grekis, and be water carie
 At the request of Agamenoun,
 Withoute tariyng or dilacioun.
 And so the kyng with plenté of vitaille
 1200 Fraught and ylade gan anon to saille *laden*
 Toward the sege, he and his meyné, *troops*
 Ay costeynge by the Grekyshe se. *sailing along the coast*
 The wynde was good, and the kyng as blyve *quickly*
 With his navie at Troye dide aryve
 1205 In fewe dayes, and Grekis anon right *return*
 Of his repeire were ful glad and lyght,
 Of his expleit and his gode speed,
 That he so wel hath born hym in this nede. *acquitted*
 And after this Pallamydes anoon.

Troy Book

- 1210 As seith Guydo, is to his shippes goon
For to considre and loken al aboute
Wher nede was withinne and withoute,
Any of hem to mendyn or repeire,
As he that list for no cost to spare wished
1215 In everything, withoute negligence,
Touching his charge to don his dilligence,
Til the trews fally wern oute ronne was
And the werris new ageyn begonne,
Whiche many man soothly dere abought.
1220 And ceriously to write how thei wrought in due order
My purpos is plainly in sentence,
Under support of youre pacience.

[When the war resumes, *Deiphobus*, one of Priam's sons, is mortally wounded by Palamedes. He calls on Paris to avenge him, and Paris kills Palamedes with a poisoned arrow, as the Greeks are routed. Only the valor of Ajax Telamon saves them from complete destruction. The Greeks appeal to Achilles for help, but he does nothing, fearing to offend Polyxena. With Palamedes dead, Agamemnon reassumes his role as the Greek leader. Troilus inflicts heavy losses on the Greeks, and they seek a two-month truce from Priam, during which Agamemnon sends Ulysses and others to prevail on Achilles to return to battle. Achilles refuses, and the Greek lords, meeting in council with Agamemnon, are at the point of abandoning the war, until Calchas tells them that they are destined to conquer Troy (lines 1223–2028).]

- The trewes passid of the monthes tweyne. truce
2030 Into the feld the Grekis hem ordeyne. draw into battle formation
And thei of Troye ageym hem issen oute. against them
And worthi Troylus with an huge route company
The Grekis gan alderfirst assaille, first of all
And with his swerd he made first to raire flow
2035 The rede blod thorugh her harnes bright, their armor
That as the deth thei fledde fro his sight;
For he that day thorugh his cruelte
Cast hym fully avenged for to be Proposed
Upon the deth of Hector, ousterly. utterly
2040 And as Dares rehersetth specially, describes
A thousand knyghtes this Troyan champion
That day hath slayn, ridyng up and down,

Book 4

- | | | |
|------|--|-------------------|
| | As myn auctor, Guydo, list endite, | wisher to write |
| | Save after hym I can no ferther write — | |
| 2045 | In his boke he yeveth him swiche a name —
That by his manhood and his knyghtly fame
The Grekis alle wer put unto the flight
Al thilke day, til it drowe to nyght. | gives |
| | And on the morwe in the dawenynge, | <i>that same</i> |
| 2050 | The Grekis han at Phebus uprysynge
Iarmed hem with gret diligencie.
Ageym Troyess to stonden at diffience.
Amonges whom that day, as I rede, | Armed themselves |
| | So wel hym bar worthi Diomede | |
| 2055 | That many Trojan thorough his craulté
Hath loste his lyf, til Troilus gan to se
This Diomede in the feld ridyng.
To whom anoon withoute more tariyng. | |
| | With his spere throwe into the reste, | immediately |
| 2060 | This Troilus rod and hit hym oon the breste
So myghtely that of verray nede
Doun of his hors he smet Dyomede,
Albe of wounde he hadde no damage. | thrust |
| | And furiously Troilus in his rage | <i>off: smote</i> |
| 2065 | Of envie gan hym to abreide,
Whan he was doun, the love of Cryscide,
Of his deceit and his trecherie.
And Grekis than faste gan hem bycne | <i>Although</i> |
| | Amonge the hors in meschef where he lay, | upbraid |
| 2070 | To drawe him oute in al the hast thei may:
And on a sheld, brosed and affraied,
Thei bare him hor, so he was dismayed
Of the stroke, home unto his tent. | basten |
| | And Menelay the same while hath bent | |
| 2075 | A myghty spere t'avenge Dyomede
And to Troilus faste gan hym spedie,
Fully avysed to unhorsen hym anon.
But Troylus first made his stede goon | intending |
| | So swyft a course toward Menelay | |
| 2080 | That he anoon at the erthe lay,
So myghtely he hit hym with his spere | at once on |

Troy Book

- That shelde and plate myghte hym nat were *protect*
To saven hym from a mortal wounde.
But his knyghtes, anon as thei him founde,
2085 Oute of the pres whan thei han hym rent, *troop; taken*
Thei bar hym hom to his owne tent,
The Grekis ay stondyng in distresse
Thorugh the knyghthod and the hige prowes
Of this Troylus, whiche hath hem so beleyn *set upon*
2090 On every part, where he rood on the pleyn.
Til unto tyme that Agamenoun
Into the felde is avaled doun *descended*
With many worthi abouten his bamer
That shou ful shene ageyn the sonne cler. *bright*
2095 And with his knyghtes ridyng enviroun,
He sore enchased hem of Troye toun. *around*
Woundeth and sleth and put hem to the flight,
Hymsilfe aquytyng lik a manly knyght;
2100 But for al that, withoute more abood *delay*
Amongis Troyens fersely as he rood,
This worthi kyng, grete Agamenoun,
With a spere Troylus smet hym doun
Maugre his Grekis — ther geineth no socour. *Despite*
2105 And whan thei sawe her lord, her governour,
In swyche meschef at the grunde lyende. *distress*
Thei heft hym up and made hym to ascende
Thorugh her manhood on his stronge stede.
And he of wyt gan to taken hede *took*
2110 And consider wysly in his thought
In what disjoynyt Troylus had hym brought *peril*
And how the Grekis, for al her grete pride,
Toforn his swerde myghte nat abide.
He prudently of hige disrecioune,
2115 This noble knyght, Kyng Agamenoun. *thought*
As he that hadde ay his adverſence
On governaunce thorugh his providence
Whanne he sawe his Grekis gonae faille *begin to*
And wexe feble to stonden in bataille
For lak of stuf that shulde hem recounforde, *grow*
2120 Ful prudently he made hem to resorte, *inspire*
 retire

Book 4

- Everyche of hem, to his owne tent.
 And after that he hath to Priam sent
 For a trew, to Troye the cité,
 For sixe monthes, yif it myghte be. truce
if
- 2125 And by his conseil Priamus the Kyng
 Withoute abood granted his axymg.
 Albe that somme, as Guydo list endite,
 Were evel apaied so longe to respite
 Her mortal son in any maner wyse; delay
- 2130 But yit his graunt, as ye han herd devise,
 Stood in his strengthe fully, as I rede.
 In whiche tyme, of verray womanhede,
 Cryseyde list no lenger for to tarie,
 Though hir fader wer therto contrarie, *Although; wishes to write*
displeased; grant a respite to
foes
- 2135 For to visitre and to han a sight
 Of Diomede, that was become hir knyght,
 Whiche had of Troylus late kought a wounde.
 And in his tent, whanne she hath hym founde,
 Benignely upon his beddis syde
- 2140 She set hir doun in the silve tyde,
 And platly cast in hir owne thought,
 Touchinge Troylus, that it was for nought
 To lyve in hope of any more recure,
 And thought she wolde for no thing be unsure same time
plainly
Concerning
recovery
in no way
- 2145 Of purvyaunce nor withoute stoor:
 She yaf anoon, withouten any mor,
 Hooly hir herte unto Diomede.
 Loo, what pité is in wommanhede,
 What mercy eke and benygne routhe sufficient supply
gave at once; further delay
- 2150 That newly can al her olde trouthe,
 Of nature, late slyppe asyde
 Rather thanne thei shulde se abide
 Any man in meschef for hir sake!
 The change is nat so redy for to make distress
- 2155 In Lombard Strete of crowne nor docket;
 Al pale is good, be so the prente be set.
 Her lettred of change doth no man abide,
 So that the wynde be redy and the tyde,
 Passage is ay, whoso list to passe. ducat
money; impression [on a coin]
exchange; wait for
wishes

Troy Book

- 2160 No man is lost that list to seke grace;
Daunger is noon but counterfet disdeyn;
The se is calme and fro rokkis pleyn:
For mercyles never man ne deide
That soughte grace. Recorde of Cryseyde.
- 2165 Whiche finally hath yoven al hir berte
To Diomede in reles of his smerie,
And prайд hym to be right glad and light,
And called hym hir owne man, hir knyght,
And hym behight, rather than he deide,
- 2170 In everything how she wolde obeye
That were honest, hym to do plesaunce:
For levere she had chaunge and variaunce
Were founde in hir thanne lak of pitē.
As siltyng is to femynytē.
- 2175 Of nature nat to be vengable,
For feith nor othe but rather mercyable
Of manrys lyf stondyng in distresse.

*Resistance; pretended
unobstructed*

Think

given

remedy; injury

promised

she would prefer

fitting

vengeful

merciful

[Agamemnon goes himself to prevail on Achilles to return to the war. Achilles refuses but allows his Myrmidons to fight. In the ensuing battle, many of Achilles's men are slain, and he is caught between his love for Polyxena and his grief for his men. After another truce, Troilus attacks the Myrmidons so furiously that their cries and the threat of a Trojan victory finally move Achilles to take the field in anger. He and Troilus meet and wound one another. When his wound heals, Achilles calls his men together and plots Troilus's death (lines 2178-2646).]

- . . . This felle envious Achilles
To his knyghtes, called Mirmidones,
Upon Troylus gan hym to compleyne,
2650 Besechyng hem for to done her peyne
Ageyn this Troylus in the feld that day
To cachen hym at meschef yif thei may,
And besely to done her dilligence
On hym to han her ful advertence,
- 2655 By oon assent, wherso that he ride —
Al other thing for to sette asyde
And of nougnt ellis for to taken hede,
Sauf finally ageyn hym to procede

cruel

disadvantage if

give heed

Book 4

- Yif thei myght cacche hym in a trappe
 2660 And withinne hemself Troilus for to clasp,
 To enclose and sette hym rounde aboute
 In al wyse that he go nat oute.
 And whan he were beset amonge hem alle,
 Nat to slen hym, whatsoevere falle,
 2665 But thorugh her myght manly hym conserve,
 Til he hymselfe come and make hym sterue
 With his swerd, he and noon other wyght.
 Lo, here a manhod for to preise aright!
 Vengaunce of deth, of rancour, and of pride,
 2670 Compassid tresoun, knyghthod leyde aside!
 Worthines be envie slawe,
 Falshed alofthe, trouthe abak ydrawe!
 Alias, in armys that it shulde falle,
 Of trecherie that the bitter galle
 2675 Shuld in this world in any knyght be founde,
 That be to trouthe of her order bounde.
 Alias, alias, for now this Achilles
 Conspired hath with his Mirmidores
 2680 The deth of oon the worthiest wyght
 That evere was and the beste knyght.
 Alias, for wo I fele myn herte blede
 For his sake, this story whan I rede.
 But whan Fortune hath a thing ordeyned,
 Though it be evere wailled and complained,
 2685 Ther is no greyn nor no remedie
 Though men on it galen ay and crye,
 I can no more touchinge this matere
 But write forthe, lik as ye shal here,
 How Mirmidores han her lord behight
 2690 With al her power and her fulle myght
 To fulfillen his comaundement;
 And into feld with Grekis thei be went,
 But Troylus first, in the opposit,
 Of verray knyghthood hath so grete delit
 2695 Withoute abood manly hem to mete;
 He was ybrent with so fervent hete
 Of hardines and of highe corage.
- shut up inside with a bang
 surrounded
 whatever might happen
 keep
 die
 person
 Devised
 by; slain
 suppressed
 avail
 exclaim against it
 promised
 on the opposite side
 delay

Troy Book

- Of worthines and of vasselage
That hym ne list no lenger to abide *he did not wish*
- 2700 But with his folk in began to ride
Amonge Grekis, this stok of highe renoun,
And with his swerd he woundeth and bereth doun,
Sleth and kylleth upon every halfe *side*
So mortally that ther may no salve
- 2705 Her sores sounde; for ther was but deth.
Wherso be rood, and yelding up the breth,
So furiously he gan hem enchase *drive away*
And made hem lese in a litel space
Her lond echon and aforn hym fle: *lose*
- 2710 In Troylus swerd ther was swiche craulté
That maugre hem he the feld hath wonne. *despite*
The same tyme whan the brighte sonne
Highe in the south at mydday marke shon,
Evene at the hour whan it drowe to noon,
- 2715 Whan Mirmidores, gadred alle in oon,
In compasse wyse rounde abouthe hym gon *Encircled*
And furiously of oon entencioum,
Thei made a cercle abouthe hym enviroun,
Whan thei sawe him of helpe desolaat.
- 2720 But he of hert nat disconsolat
Upon no side, thorough his manlyhede,
Lik a lyoun toke of hem noon hede,
But thorough his famus knyghtly excellence
As a tigre stondeth at diffence,
- 2725 And manfully gan hem to encombe. *press on*
And to lasse and to discries her noumbre.
And somme he maymeth and woundeth to the deth,
And somme he made to yeldem up the breth,
And somme he laide to the erthe lowe,
- 2730 And somme he made for to overthrowe
With his swerd of her blood al wet
At gret meschef at his horse fet; *distress*
Upon his steede sturdy as a wal,
This worthy knyght, this man most martial,
- 2735 Pleyeth his pley amonge Mirmidores,
Hymself, God wote, alone al helpeles. *knows*

Book 4

- But tho, alias, what myght his force avail
Whan thre thousand knyghtes hym assail
On every part, bothe in lengthe and brede?
- 2740 And cowardly first thei slow his stede
With her speris, sharpe and square grounde;
For whiche, alias, he stont now on the grounde
Withoutte reskus, refut, or socour,
That was that day of chivalrie flour.
2745 But, weillawey, thei han hym so beset
That from his hed thei smot his basenet,
And brak his harneis, as thei hym assaille,
And severed of stele the myghti stronge maille.
He was disarmyd bothe nekke and hed,
- 2750 Alias the whyle, and no man toke noon hede
Of alle his knyghtes longyng to the toun;
And yit alweye this Troyan champion
In knyghtly wyse, naked as he was,
Hymself diffendeth, til Achilles, alias.
- 2755 Cam ridyng in, furious and wood.
And whan he sawe how Troilus nakid stod,
Of longe fightyng awaped and amaat
And from his folke allone isolat,
Sool by hymself at meschef pitously,
- 2760 This Achilles wonder cruelly.
Behynde unwarily, or that he toke hed,
With his swerd smyteth of his hed
And cast is forthe of cruel cursed herfe;
And thought pleynly, it shuld him nat asterte
- 2765 To shewe his malys, this wolfe unmerciable.
Ful unknyghtly to be more vengable
Upon the body that lay ded and colde —
Alias, that ever it shuld of knyght be tolde,
Wryte, or rehersed, to do so foule a dede.
- 2770 Or in a boke, alias, that men shuld rede
Of any knyght a story so horrible,
Unto the eris passingly odible —
For this Achille of craulte, alias,
The dede cors toke oute of the taas,
- 2775 And vengably bond it, as I fynde.
- ground at a cutting angle
shelter
set upon
smote; headpiece
armor
unprotected
manned and wearied (check-mated)
Alone; peril
without warning before
foul
written
ears exceedingly hateful
corpse; heap

Troy Book

- At the taillle of his hors behynde,
And hatfully, that every wyght behilde,
Drowe it hymself endelonge the feld
Thorugh the rengis and the wardis alle. *the length of
ranks; divisions*
- 2780 But, O alias, that evere it shulde falle
A knyght to bene in herte so cruel
Or of hatred so dispitous fel
To drawe a man after that he were ded. *pitiless cruelly*
- 2785 O thou, Omer, for shame be now red
And be astomyd, that haldest thisilfe so wyse,
On Achilles to setten swiche a pris. *Homer
astonished
value*
- In thi bokes for his chivalrie
Above echon dost hym magnyfye,
That was so sleighty and so ful of fraude — *celebrate
wily*
- 2790 Whi yevest thou hym so highe a pris and laude?
Certis, Omer, for al thin excellencie
Of rethoryk and of eloquence,
Thi lusty songes and thi dites swete, *worth
Certainly*
- 2795 Thin hony mouthe that doth with sugre flete,
Yet in o thing thou gretly art to blame:
Causeles to yeve hym swiche a name,
With a title of triumphe and glorie *verses
flow*
- 2800 So passingly putte hym in memorie,
In thi bokes to seyn and write so.
Thorugh his knyghthod he slowe Hectoris two — *give*
- 2805 First hym that was lik unto noon other,
And Troilus after, that was his owne brother.
Yif thou arte meved of affeccioun, *If*
- 2810 Whiche that thou hast to Grekis nacioun,
To preise hym so, for thou canst endite,
Thou shuldest ay for any favour write
The trouthe pleinly, and ben indifferent, *compose*
- And seie the sothe clerly of entent.
For whan he slowe Hector in the felde, *truth*
- 2815 He was aforn disarmyd of his shelde
And besy eke in spoylng of a kyng:
For yif he had be war of his comyng,
He had hym quytte thorugh his chivalrie *in front
pillaging
if*
- His fals deceit and his trecherie, *He would have repaid him (Achilles)*

Book 4

- 2815 That he ne had so lightly from hym gon.
 Troilus also was naked and al lone,
 Amyd four thousand closed and beset
 Whan Achilles hath his hed of smet,
 At his bak of ful cruel herte.
- 2820 Whan he no thing his tresoun dide adverte.
 Was that a dede of a manly knyght,
 To selen a man forweried in fight,
 Feynt of travail, al the longe day
 Amonge so many stondyng at abay.
- 2825 A kynges sonne and so highe born,
 Naked the hed, his armure al totorn,
 Evene at the deth on the silfe point,
 At disavauntage, and pleinly oute of joyn,
 Of his lyf stondyng on the wrak,
- 2830 Whan Achilles cam falsly at the bak,
 Assailllynge hym whan he was half ded,
 And lyk a coward smot of thanne his hed,
 That was tofora herte and wounded sore?
 Wherfor, Omer, preise hym now no more.
- 2835 Lat nat his pris thi rial boke difface
 But in al haste his renoun oute arace:
 For his name whan I here nevene,
 Verrailly up unto the hevene
 (As semeth me) infect is the eyt,
- 2840 The sown therof so foule is and unfair.
 For yif that he had hadde his adverience,
 Outher the eye of his providence
 Unto knyghthod or to worthines,
 Outher to manhood or to gentilnes,
- 2845 Or to the renoun of his owne name,
 Or to the report of his knyghtly fame,
 In any wyse to have taken hede.
 He hadde never don so foule a dede:
 So vengably for to have ydrawe
- 2850 A kynges sonne after he was slawe —
 And namly hym, that was so gode a knyght,
 Whiche in his tyme, whoso loke aright,
 Passed Achille, I dar it wel expresse,

*hemmed in
off*

in no way; foresee

Tired out by his effort

*very
in peril
near destruction*

*renown
erase
uttered*

*air
sound*

(f) paid heed

drawn

Troy Book

Bothe of manhood and of gentilnes.

2855 But for al that, he is now ded, alias.

[King Menon reproves Achilles for the treachery of Troilus's death. He wounds Achilles, who is rescued by the Myrmidons. Achilles then plots Menon's death in the same way he earlier contrived to surround and kill Hector and Troilus. All Homer's rhetoric cannot disguise Achilles's fraud and treachery. The Greeks drive the Trojans into the city. Their sorrow at Troilus's death is beyond the power of Boethius, Statius, or Ovid to describe. Priam asks for a truce and builds tombs for Troilus and Menon (lines 2856-3097).]

	But I purpose curiously to telle	in due order
	How Hecuba, as I can endyte,	Hecuba: compose
3100	Hir caste fully Achilles to quyse	planned: repay
	His tyranny, soothly, yif she may.	if
	And unto hir she calleth on a day	
	Alysandre in ful secre wyse	Alexander (Paris)
	And unto hym, as I shal devyse,	describe
3105	With wepyng eyen and with hevy chere	
	Seide evene thus, lyk as ye shal here.	
	"Parys," quod she, "alias, sauf Goddis wille,	
	Thou knowest wel how the ferse Achille	fierce
	My sonys hath slayen nyghe echon;	sons
3110	Ther is non lefte but thisilf allone:	
	He hath me made (alias, ther is no geyn),	remedy
	Ful cowardly, of children now bareyn.	
	Bothe of Hector and of Troylus eke thereto	
	Whiche were to me in every trouble and wo	
3115	Fully counfort, plesaunce, and solace.	
	Wherfore, I caste pleynly to compasse	intend; devise
	By som engym his deth to ordeyne;	stratagem
	And lyke as he by tresoun dide his peyne,	
	Traytously with his swerd to smyte,	
3120	Right so, I think, with tresoun hym to quyse,	repay
	As sittynge is of right and equyte.	
	And sith thou wost pleynly how that he	know
	Hath sette his herte and his love clene	
	On my daughter, yonge Polycene,	Polynena
3125	To hym only to haven hir to wyse;	
	For whiche I caste to hym sende blyve	plot; at once

Book 4

- For to come and trete of that mater
 In the temple of Appollo here,
 In the temple most chef of this cité.
- 3130 Whiche tyme my wil is that thou be
 Thisilven armyd ther ful prively,
 With certeyn knyghtes in thi company
 Armyd also ageym the same day.
 That in no wyse he shape nat away
- 3135 From your hondis but that he be ded,
 As I have seid; and therfor take good hed
 Unto this thing, with al myn herde, I pracie,
 Fro point to point my biddyg to abeie."
 And he assenteth with al his hoole herde,
- 3140 Behotyng hir he shulde nat astere.
 And with hym toke twenty and no mo
 Of manly men that wel durste do;
 And in the temple by ful good avys
 Thei wera yhyd by byddyg of Paris.
- 3145 While Eccuba, covert in hir entent,
 Hir messenger to Achilles hathe sent,
 As ye han herde, in conclusioun,
 To come in haste unto Troye toun
 After th'effect was of hir message.
- 3150 Only to trete for a mariage.
 And he in haste cometh at hir sonde,
 As he that koude no thing undirstonde
 Hir tresoun hid nor pleinly is adverte:
 He was so hote marked in his herde
- 3155 With lovys brond and his firé glede,
 Of lyf nor deth that he toke noon hede
 But sette aside wit and al resoun,
 To caste aforn by gode discrecioun
 What was to do, with lokyng ful prudent.
- 3160 But he in soth was with love blent,
 Into Troye whan he shulde goon,
 Lyke as it fareth of lovers everychon:
 Whanne thei have caught in herde a fantasie,
 For no pereill, though thei shulde deye.
- 3165 Thei have no myght nor power to be ware,
- secretly
escape
follow
Promising; escape
hidden
secret
negotiate
message
in no way
foresee
brand; coal
intelligence
blinded
desire

Troy Book

- Til thei unwarly be trapped in the snare:
Her maladie is so furious.
And thus Achilles and Anthilogus,
Nestoris sone, han the weye nome taken
3170 Toward the town and ben togidre come
Into temple, as ye han herd me telle.
And Paris tho list no lenger duelle delay
But, unwarly, with his knyghtes alle
On Achilles is at meschef falle.
Everyche of hem with a swerd ful bright.
And somme bokis seyn it was by nyght.
Whan his deth, longe aforne desired,
By Ecuba and Paris was conspired.
But Achilles in this mortal caas,
3180 Amonge hem alle naked as he was, unarmed
Hent oute a swerde in the silve stevene;
And like a knyght he slow of hem sevne
Of verray force, maugre al her myght. at the very moment
But whan Paris therof hadde a sight,
3185 Thre dartere caught that were kene and square,
And sodeinly, or that he was ware, arrows; seized
Ful secrely hid under the shade,
Markynge at hym and no noyse made,
Caste at hym evene as evere he can. before
3190 That hed and shafe thorough the body ran;
And therwithal knyghtes nat a fewe
With sharpe swerdis gan upon him hewe Shot
And left hym nat til he lay at grounde
Ful pale ded, with many mortal wounde.
3195 And rightfully, of resoun as it sit,
Thus was the fraude and the falshede quit
Of Achilles, for his highe tresoun: repaid
As deth for deth is skilfully guerdoun
And egal mede, withouten any fable. proper recompence
3200 To hem that be merciles vengable.
For thilke day, Guydo writeth thus,
That Achilles and Anthilogus
Of Paris wern in the temple slawe; equal payment
And afterward the body was out drawe that same
slake

Book 4

- 3205 Of Achille fro the holy boundis
And cruelly throwen unto houndis
To be devourid in the brode strete,
The camel renaynge with his wawes wete
Withoute pitē or any maner routhe.
- 3210 Loo, here the ende of falshed and untrouth.
Loo, here the fyn of swiche trecherie,
Of fals deceit compassid by envie.
Loo, here the knot and conclusiou,
How God quyt ay slaughter by tresoun.
- 3215 Loo, here the guerdoun and the final mede
Of hem that so deliten in falsechede:
For everything, platly for to seyne,
Like as it is, his guerdoun doth atteyne,
As ye may se of this Achilles,
- 3220 Whiche on a nyght in the temple les
His lyf; for he was ay customable
By fraude and tresoun for to be vengable.
But it befel at request of Eleyne
That the bodies of this ilke tweyne
- 3225 Conservid were from the hungrī rage
Of best and foule, gredy and ramage.
And yit thei laie amyddes the citē
Ful openly, that men myght hem se,
To grete gladnes to hem of the toun,
- 3230 Into tyme that Agamemnon
To Kyng Priam sent his massageris
To have licence to fet hem hom on beris;
By graunt of whom thei han the corsis take.
For whom Grekis swiche a sorwe make
- 3235 That pitē was and routhe for to here.

[After Achilles's death, Agamemnon challenges the Greeks to exact vengeance. Ajax Telamon urges them to send for Achilles's son, Pyrrhus, whom prophets say will bring the downfall of the city. Menelaus is dispatched to bring him to Troy. In June, the Greeks take the field. Ajax Telamon rides without armor, carrying only a sword. He has survived many battles, but Fortune now turns against him. Paris shoots him with a poisoned arrow. Ajax,

Troy Book

mortally wounded, splits Paris's skull in two. Troy is thrown into shock by the death of the last of Priam's sons, and Helen cannot contain her grief. Priam closes the gates of the city and will not give battle to the Greeks, despite Agamemnon's challenge (lines 3236-3757).]

- And yit in soth cause of his tariyng
Was for the hardy Quene of Femynye truth; delay
- 3760 Toward Troye faste gan hir hiye hasten
 Oute of hir lond, a litel regioune,
 The whiche, as bokis make mencioune,
 After the syt of the firmament position; sphere of the fixed stars
 Is in the plage of the orient. region
- 3765 And called is the regne of Amazonys,
 Of whiche the custom and the wone ys habit
 That only wommen therin shal abide:
 And thei ar wont armyd for to ryde
 And han in armys gret experiance;
- 3770 For her labour and her dilligence
 Is finally to haven exercysce
 Fro day to day in Martis highe servyse.
 And overmore her custom and usaunce,
 As to this day is maked remembraunce,
- 3775 Is that no man shal hem ayghe ner, come near them
 But yif it be thre monthes in the yer:
 This to seyn, in June, April, and May;
 And than the wommen han in custom ay
 Unto an yle a litel therbesyde,
- 3780 Wher as the men by hemselfe abide island
 Fro yere to yere togidre everychon,
 Unto the men oute of her lond to gon,
 And there abide in that regioune
 Til tym cometh of concepcion,
- 3785 Withoute tariyng any lenger while;
 For thanne anoon home unto her ile
 Thei repeire oute of that contré
 Unto tym that thei delyvered be.
 And as faste as the childe is born,
- 3790 For lak of kepyng that it be nat born,
 He fostryd is til thre yere be agoon lost
 Amonge the wommen; and thanne right anon past

Book 4

- To the ile besiden adjacent
 Unto the men the childe in haste is sent,
 3795 Yif that it be of kynde masculyn. *If; nature*
 And yif it falle that it be femynyn.
 With the wommen abide stille it shal
 Til that it be in actis martial
 Ful wel experte and that she can eke knowe *also*
 3800 To handle a spere or to drawe a bowe,
 Lyke the statutis of that regioune,
 The whiche, as bokes make mencioune,
 Is set betwene Europe and Asya.
 And of this lond was Pantysylla *Penthesiles*
 3805 Whilom lady and governeresse,
 Ful renomed of strengthe and hardynes
 Thorughoute the world, bothe in lengthe and brede;
 And yit in sooth to speke of wommanhede,
 For al her myght she had an huge pris. *truth*
 3810 For bothe she was vertuous and wys,
 Wonder discret, and had an honest name,
 Narwithstandyng the excelle of fame
 Of hir renoun in armys and the glorie:
 For of conquest and of highe victorie
 3815 She was most surmountyng out of drede
 Of any womman that I can of rede;
 And soothly yit bokes bere witnesse,
 Of wommanhede and of gentilnesse
 She kepte hir so that nothinge hir asterte. *she was never indiscreet*
 3820 The whiche loved with al hir boole herfe
 Worthi Hector and with al her myght,
 Only for he was so noble a knyght
 That hir joye and worldly plesaunce,
 Hir hestly ese and sovereyne soffisaunce, *contentment*
 3825 In verray sooth, where she wake or winke,
 Was evere in oon upon hym to thinke,
 Of verray feith, withouten any slouthe.
 And unto hym she was be bond of trouthe
 Confederat of olde affeccioun. *sleep*
 3830 That whan she herd how that Troye toun
 Besegid was of the Grekes felle. *the same* *cruel*

Troy Book

- | | | |
|------|---|-----------------------|
| | This hardy quene liste no lenger dwelle
But hasteth her as fast as ever she may
Toward Troye in ful good array | wishes |
| 3835 | With alle the worthi wommen of her londe,
Ful wel expert and preved of her honde,
Wel horsed eke and armed richely.
And as I fynde, in her company,
A thousand maidenes ridinge by her side, | |
| 3840 | This worthi quene, that durste wel abide,
She with her brought in steel armyd bright
For love of Hector, her owne trewe knyght.
And on her weie fast she gan to sped
To helpen hym yif she seie sede: | stand firm |
| 3845 | For in nothinge she koude her more delite
Thanne towarde hym faithfully hir quyte.
For that was al her lust and hertis joye.
But whan that she comen was to Troye
And herde telle by relacions | if: saw |
| 3850 | That he was ded, most worthi of renoun,
To whom she was so lovinge and so trewe,
Anoon she gan to chaungen cher and bewe,
And pitously for to wepe and crye.
And ferd in sooth as she wolde deye | act |
| 3855 | For verray wo and hertly hevynes,
And thought she wold thorugh her worthines
Avenge his deth platly, yif she may,
On the Grekis; and so uppon a day
She preieth Priam with gret affeccioun | openly |
| 3860 | For to oppene the gatis of the toun,
And to gon oute with Grekis for to fight,
That thei may knowe and be expert aright
Of this womman the grete worthines,
And of this quene the famous hardines; | trained by experience |
| 3865 | And so the kyng, hopynge for the beste,
Withoute ablood graunted her requeste
The nexte morwe, whan Phebus shou ful shene;
And al toforn out goth Phylmene, | delay |
| | The noble kyng, with hem of Paffaganye; | Phylmene |
| 3870 | And after hym other knyghtes manye | |

Book 4

- Folwed after with worthi Encas,
 The Troyan eke, Daungh Pallydamas.
 And thanne the Quene Pantasyllys
 By the gate called Dardanyca
- 3875 Toward Grekis proudly issed oute,
 With hir wommen ridyng hir aboute.
 The whiche anoon whan Grekis dide espie,
 Into the felde gan hem faste hysse:
- 3880 And first of alle worthi Meneste,
 Pantasillia whanne he dide se,
 With his sporis made his stede gon,
 And with a spere rood to hir anoon,
- 3885 Of whom the quene astonyd neveradel,
 Caught eke a spere that was squarid wel,
 Rounde the shafte, and the hed wel gronde,
 Whiche as thei coupe smet him doun to gronde
- 3890 And maugre hym reved him his stede.
 And thanne in haste in cam Diomede
 And cruelly to the quene gan ride;
 And she as faste on the tother side
- 3895 Rood eke to hym in platis bright and shene;
 And as thei mette with her speris kene,
 She hitte so this felle Diomede,
 For al his myght and his manlyhede.
- 3900 That she hym made his sadel for to lese.
 Ther is no more — he myght tho nat chese.
 And in dispise of his men echon,
 She hath his sheld hym beraft anoon
- 3905 And it delyvereth, proudly as she rood,
 To a maide that uppon hir abood.
 And like a tigre in his gredinesse
 Or like, in soth, to a lyounesse,
- 3910 That day she ferde, ridynge up and doun
 Amonge the Grekis, til that Thelamoun
 Gan beholde the slaughter that she made,
 Of highe dispit and rancour overlaide,
- 3915 As he that myght for ire not sustene,
 Gan ren his hors to falle upon the quene.
 But whan that she his comynge dide espie,
- Lord*
- hasten*
- at once*
- dismayed*
- car at the proper angle*
- met in tilting*
- despite; deprived*
- the other*
- cruel*
- base*
- he had no choice*
- dispossessed*
- waited*
- acted*
- Telamon (son of Ajax and Hesione)*
- overflowing*
- bear it*
- turned*

Troy Book

- 3910 She fil on hym in his malencolye
So mortally, maugre his knyghtes alle,
That to the grounde she made him for to falle
And Grekis put in so grete disarray,
Wherever he rood al that ilke day;
3915 For thei myght aforne her nat sustene.
And thorugh the helpe of Kyng Philymene,
As myn auctor recordeth in his boke,
Amyd the feld Thelamoun she toke
And sent hym forthe thorugh her highe renoun
3920 As prisoner toward Troye toun,
Til unto rescus cam cruel Diomede,
And cruelly on hem that gan him lede
He fil unwarily with an huge route
Of his knyghtes ridynge hym aboue,
3925 And from her hondis, maugre al her myght,
He hym delivereth like a manly knyght.
At whiche tyme, this hardy quene anon,
With her wommen aboue her everychon,
The Grekis hath aforne her on the pleym
3930 (As writ Guydo) so mortally beleyn
That she hem made of necessité
Oute of the feld with her swerd to fle,
That verrayly it was incredible
And to leve a maner impossible
3935 To sene the wommen Grekis so enchase,
Whiche myghte nat abide aforne her face
Nor in the feld in any wyse stonde:
For thei hem dryve to the silfe stronde,
Doun to the clyf of the salte se
3940 And slowe of hem so huge gret plenté
That finally thei had be destroyed
For evermore and utterly accloied,
Nadde Diomede stonden at diffence
And of knyghthod maked resistance:
3945 For he that day in parti and in al
For Grekis stood as a sturdy wal
And was allone her helpe and chef socour.
But for al that, with worship and honour
- fury*
despite
hold out
without warning: troop
despite
set upon
believe
drive away
threw itself
slew
annihilated
Had not

Book 4

- Pansasillya, as made is memorie.
- 3950 Repeired is with conquest and victorie,
With alle hir wommen into Troye toun
Upon the hour of Phebus goyng doun.
And by the side of this hardy quene
Armyd in stel rood Kyng Phylmene,
- 3955 Whom Priamus hath with gret reverence
Knyghtly reseved and dide his diligencie
Hem to refresh with every maner thing
That myghte be unto her likyng.
As her hertis koude best devyse.
- 3960 And after this, in ful goodly wyse,
He thanked hath the noble hardy quene
Of hir goodnes that hir lyte to sene
To helpyn hym in his grete nede
And offrid hir (in Guydo as I rede)
- 3965 Al that he hath, tresour and richesse,
Hopymge fally thorugh hir worthines
Upon Grekis avengid for to be
And for to kepe hym and his cite
Maugre Grekis, whiche of hem seye nay.
- 3970 For as I rede, after day be day
She stinte nat proudly hem t'assaille,
Agyn whos swerd thei myghte nat availe,
So mortally she made her sides bledie.

[Meanwhile, Menelaus arrives at Troy with Pyrrhus. Agamemnon knights him, and the Myrmidons pledge him their fealty. Pyrrhus carries his father's arms into battle, and he is ashamed when Penthesilea drives the Myrmidons back and reproaches him for Achilles's cowardly murder of Hector. She unhorses Pyrrhus, and the Myrmidons have to rescue him from her. Fighting continues daily for a month, during which a hundred Amazons are slain. Fortune, never stable, begins to turn her favor from Penthesilea (lines 3974-4280).]

- The fatal hour, harde for to remewe,
Of cruel deth, which no man may eschewe
Nor in this lyfe finally eskape,
Specially whan Parchas han it shape.
- 4285 Aproche gan — it may noon other bene,
Allas the while — of this hardy quene,

Troy Book

- Whiche on a day, furious and wroth,
Into the feld oute of Troye goth
And gan on Grekis proudly for to sette.
4290 And alderfirst Pirrus with his mette
Of mortal hate and indignacion;
And she in haste by the rengis doun
Rood unto hym swiftly on his stede,
Whos sporis sharpe made his sides bled.
4295 And as thei mette, her speris in the rest,
Thei bare so evene, markyng at the brest,
That her shaftis, soothly this no tale,
Gan to shyvere alle on pecis smale
Without bowynge outher bak or chyne:
4300 For noother made other to enclyne,
Save the hed forged harde of steel
Of Pantasillya, that was grounde wel,
In Pirrus brest percid hath so depe
That plate in soth nor maille myght hym kepe.
4305 But the sharpnes of the speris hede
Was of his blod in party died rede.
The whiche strok wham Grekis gan espie,
Forastonyd londe gan to crye
And alle attonyf for the noise and soun
4310 Upon this quene in the feld cam doun,
In compas wyse goyngc enviroun.
But thorugh hir prowesse and hir highe renoun
She hir diffendeth, that it was mervaille;
But thei, alias, so sore hir gan assaille
4315 That al tohewe thei han hir basenet;
Amyd Grekis so thikke she was beset
That with axes and her swerdis square
Hir hed in soth maked was al bare
And hir shuldris were nakid eke, alias,
4320 The maille hewe of and the terebras.
And Pirrus than, lyke as it is founde,
For angushe only of his grene wounde,
In doute pleynly wher he shulde eskape,
Toward this quene faste gan hym rape
4325 To be avengid, whatsoevere falle.
- first of all*
ranks
support for a lance
came straight aiming
truly
splinter
bend
protect
dyed
at once; sound
encircling
cut apart; head armor
surrounded
sharpened
exposed also
armor to protect upper arm and shoulder
whether
ride hastily
whatever might happen

Book 4

- Amyd the feld amoung the Grekis alle.
And whan she sawe that he cam so faste,
Of force only to mete him yit she cast
And with hir swerd first gan hym assaille; prepared
- 4330 But of hir strok it happed hir to faille.
Amonge the pres so narwe she was beset.
And Pirrus swerd was so sharpe whet
That sodeinly of hir arme he smette. off
- Allas, ther was non armour hym to lette
4335 But raceth thorugh al the shulder bon,
So that this quene fil down ded anon.
And of malys for to venge hym more,
At his hert the ire frat so sore stop
- 4340 That with a chere of verray angir pale
He hath hir bewe al on pecis smale,
The whiche was so foule a cruel dede.
But evere in on Pirrus so gan bledē, spite
- Nigne to the deth of his mortal wounde,
For lak of blod that he fil to grounde.
4345 In a trawnce ful longe gruf he lay, consumed
Til his knyghtes in al the haste thei may
Han take hym up and leide him on a sheld;
And doofully home oute of the feld expression
- Thei han hym born, wounded as he was.
4350 And the wommen of the quene, allas,
For verray sorwe and inward dedily wo,
Whan thei sawe her lady was ago,
For to be ded thei were so desirous cat: into
- 4355 That in al haste, wood and furious,
In a rage, withoute governaile, continually
Greki thei gan of newe for to assaille —
- T'avenge her quene thei wer so hertly kynde —
That thei slowe, soothly as I fynde, mad
- Two thousand Grekes — on hem thei wer so wod.
4360 But, O allas, in gret disjoint thei stood, disposed
Only for lak thei have no governour; slew
- For she was goon that was her chef socour,
Whiche was also, to speke of hardynes,
Of wommen alle lady and maistresse.

Troy Book

- 4365 As of his bond that I can of rede.
O ye Troyens, ye stonden in gret drede,
Amyd the feld al oute of governaunce.
The day is come of youre unhappy chaunce, *misfortune*
For now have ye leder noon nor gyde:
- 4370 Farwel youre trust now on every side.
And Grekes ben upon you so stronge
That ye the feld may nat kepe longe;
For thei cast hem fully you to quyte *planned; avenge*
This same day, as Dares list endite; *chose to write*
- 4375 For as he writ, homward as thei drawe,
Ten thousand Troiens wern of Grekis slawe. *slain*
For alle her wardis cam attonyss down
And mortally, withoute excepcion, *divisions*
- 4380 Thei kille and sle al that hem withstande; *stood against them*
And moste thei wern on the wommen wood *inane*
To be avenged, plenly as I rede, *side*
On every halfe and her blood to shede
Withoute mercy or remyssioun,
- 4385 Chasyng Troiens home into the toun *delay*
Oute of the felde; for ther was noon abod,
So pitously tho with hem it stood *remedy think of*
That thei ne cam noon other recure caste
But kepe her toun and shet her gatis faste, *their*
- 4390 For al her hope clene was agoon
Anymore to fighte with her fooun.
For now her trust of knyghthod was away,
Her worthi men slayen, weillaway.
- 4395 Refut was noon but in her cyste *Protection*
To kepe hem clos — it may noon other be. *shut up*
- 4400 For hem thought thei myght it kepe longe,
Her walles wern so myghti and so stronge,
Yif thei had plente of vitaille; *If*
Though al the world attonis hem assaille, *at once*
Thei may be sure while thei kepe hem in
Foreveremore that no man shall hem wynne.
- 4405 Yet nevertheless erly and eke late
The Grekes made toform every gate
Ful myghti wache and await ful stronge. *conquer*
- 4410 *guard*

Book 4

- | | | |
|------|---|-------------------------|
| | With pryy spies goyng in amouge, | <i>secret</i> |
| 4405 | That of her foon noon eskape away
By noon engyn, as ferforthe as thei may. | <i>foes</i> |
| | And in this while, withinne Troie toun,
More than I can make descripcioune, | <i>cunning</i> |
| | For the quene ther was so gret a sorwe | |
| 4410 | Of every whight bothe at eve and morwe,
That she, alias, was slayen for her mede,
Whiche cam so fer to helpe hem in her nede; | <i>person</i> |
| | And aldermost for thei ne myghte have
The dede cors to burie and to grave | <i>efforts (reward)</i> |
| 4415 | With reverence and with honour dwe,
For whiche thei gan to the Grekis swe
With gret praiere and grete besynes. | <i>most of all</i> |
| | But al in veyn and in ydernesse
Was her requeste — the Grekis wer so wrothe. | <i>inter</i> |
| 4420 | And finally, with many sondry othe,
Only of malys and of hoot envie.
The dede cors to hem thei denye | <i>their</i> |
| | And shortly seide of mortal emmyte
That of houndis it shal devoured be — | |
| 4425 | Ther was no geyn — her rancour to compesse.
But Pirrus thanne of verray gentilnesse | <i>avail; restrain</i> |
| | Nolde assent to so foule a dede; | <i>Would not</i> |
| | But wood and wrothe, cruel Diomede | <i>mad</i> |
| | Seide openly that it was fittyng | |
| 4430 | That she faile of hir buriyng,
That slayen hadde so many worthi man. | |
| | And thus the strif amouge the Grekis gan,
With grete rumour and altercacion, | |
| | Til at the laste under Troye toun | |
| 4435 | Of hir thei han the dede cors ytake,
And cruelly in a profounde lake | <i>deep</i> |
| | Thei han it cast, where I lete hir lye. | |
| | And unto Troie ageyn I wil me hye | <i>hasten</i> |
| | To telle forthe howe thei lyve in pyne. | <i>grief</i> |

[Lydgate reproves Mars for his delight in murder, death, and dissension. Mars has brought treason and discord to Troy in the conspiracy of Anchises, Aeneas, Antenor, and Polydamas]

Troy Book

to betray the city. They urge Priam to return Helen and sue for peace, even though they know the Greeks will never accept anything less than the end of Priam's lineage and dynasty. Priam holds a council to discuss the peace proposal. Antenor's loyalty and integrity are publicly disputed, but Aeneas uses his skill at verbal subterfuge to argue for peace. Priam reminds both of them of their own complicity in the events that have led to the war. They leave in rage, while Priam can scarcely contain his grief and sense of doom. He conspires with his son Amphimachus to kill them at a council, but word of the plot escapes, and Aeneas, Antenor, and the others swear their determination to destroy Troy, if the Greeks will spare them and their possessions. When Priam convenes the council again, the conspirators show up in force. Aeneas seizes the initiative to persuade the Trojans to seek peace. Priam must concede and allows Antenor to be the Trojan emissary to the Greeks (lines 4440-5098).]

	And in this while that Anthenor was oute	
5100	For to trete with the Grekes stout,	negotiate
	As ye han herde, for a pes final,	peace
	In the toun aboue on every wal	
	Thei of Troie gan ascende blyve	quickly
	With the braunchis of many freshe olive	
5105	In tokne of pes; and Grekes eke ageyn	
	Amyd the feld endelonge the pleyn	along the length of
	Shewed hem, that alle myghte sene,	
	Eke of olyve lusti bowes grene.	beautiful
	And to conferme this fro point to point	
5110	And that nothing stood in no disjoint,	uncertainty
	The worthi kyng, grete Agamenoun,	
	Committed hath of highe disrecioune	
	Fully power and auctorite	
	For the Grekes plainly unto thre	
5115	First of al for a pes to trete:	negotiate
	Unto the wyse worthi Kyng of Crete,	
	To Ulixes, and to Diomedede.	
	To chese mo hem thought it was no nede,	choose
	For what thei do thei wil holde stable	remain steadfast
5120	And finally nat be variable	
	From the ende platly that thei make,	plainly
	And hereupon was assurance take	
	Of outhier part by bonde of sacrament,	
	And so thei be with Anthenor ywent	oath
5125	Oute aside, these worthi lordes thre.	went

Book 4

- And whanne thei wern at her liberté,
From al tumulte allone prively,
This Anthenor, ful of treachery.
Replete of falsehood and of doublenesse,
- 5130 Gan his purpos unto hem expresse,
Byhotyng hem to traisshe the cité,
So thei wolde make hym sureté
That first hymselfe and with hym Eneas
Shal fredam han in every maner caas
- 5135 With her allies and goodis everychon,
Wher that hem list at large for to goon
At her chois or dwellen in the town
With her richesse and posessioun
Withouten harme or any more damage.
- 5140 Liche as thei se it be to avauntage
Of her personys to voiden or abide,
And thei wer sworn on the Grekis side
Covenauant to holde in parti and in al,
As was rehersid aforn in special.
- 5145 And as thei werne by her othes bounde,
So that ther be no variaunce founde
On outher parti platly nor no strif,
And thei behighte up pereil of her lyf.
And whan he had assuraunce of hem thre,
- 5150 He charged hem to kepen in secré
Al that was said, that nothing be discured
Unto tyme that thei ben assured
Of the ende, grocid up in dede:
For it were good that thei toke hede,
- 5155 List her purpos perturbed were or shent
By communymge, withoute avisement,
Of this tongis that be so longe and large.
Wherfore he gan conjuren hem and charge
In alle wyse for to bene prevé,
- 5160 So that no wyght but he and thei thre,
Of noon estat, nowther highe nor lowe,
Fully the fyn of her entent ne knowe.
"And covertly oure purpos for to hide,"
Quod Anthenor, "upon every side
- intention
Promising; betray
On condition that
- possessions*
wish; freely
- leave*
- part*
- were bound by their oaths*
- promised*
- revealed*
- put into effect*
- Lest; raised*
conversation
- beseech; instruct*
secretive
- neither*
aim
secretly

Troy Book

5165	To voide aweie al suspiciooun. This myn avys: that to Troye toun The wyse kyng called Taltibyus Shal go with me to Kyng Priamus, For he is hoor and yronne in age.	drive counsel <i>grey-haired; advanced</i>
5170	Coy of his port, sleighti and right sage, And therwithal sadde, demwr, and stille. Of whom Troyens nothing shal myssile, But that he come to tretym for a pes. To ben assured and witen douteles	<i>Retiring in manner, crafty; wise</i> <i>serious, gentle in disposition</i> <i>suspect</i> <i>negotiate</i> <i>know</i>
5175	Wher the Troiens agreeen wil thersto In everything finally to do As Anthenor the Grekis hath behight, Thus shal thei ben devoideed anoon right Thorough his comyng from al suspiciooun.	<i>promised</i> <i>made free</i>
5180	Til that we han oure conclusiouen, As ye han herde, performed everydel." Of whiche thing the Grekis like wel And ben apointed upon everything What thei wil do and how this olde kyng	<i>achieved</i>
5185	With Anthenor shal to Troye goo. And after this, he axede eke also Of Pantasile the body for to have, In the cite that men myght it grave With due honour longyng to hir estat,	<i>Penthesilea</i> <i>inter</i>
5190	To voide aweie suspiciooun and debat. And Anthenor (for it drowe to cve) Of the Grekis taken hath his leve And with the kyng repeireth into toun. Whereof was made anoon relacioun	drive <i>returns</i>
5195	To Kyng Priam withoutte more delay. And he in hast upon the nexte day Made assemble alle his citezeyns. Secretly deviodyng alle foreyns, Where Anthenor in open audience,	<i>getting rid of all outsiders</i>
5200	Thorough the halle whan maked was silence, His tale gan with sugred wordis swete, Makynge the bawme outward for to flete Of rethorik and of eloquence,	speech <i>soothing influence; flow</i>

Book 4

- Of cher nor word that ther was noon offence;
 5205 In shewyngg oure so circumspect he was
 That no man koude in no maner cas,
 Be signe outward nor by countemaunce,
 Perceive in hym any variance
 (So harde it was his tresoun to espie).
 5210 Th'effect declaringe of his embassatrie
 With cler report of his answer agcyn.
 In his menyng though he wer nat pleyn.
 For undernethe he was with fraude fraught,
 This sleighti wolfe, til he his pray hath caught:
 5215 For he was clos and covert in his speche
 As a serpent, til he may do wreche,
 Hydinge his venym under floures longe;
 And as a be that stingeth with the tonge
 Whan he hath shad oure his hony sote —
 5220 Sugre in the crop, venym in the rote —
 Right so in sooth with tonge of scorpioun
 This Anthenor, rote of al tresoun,
 His tale tolde with a face pleyn.
 Liche the soone that shymeth in the reyn.
 5225 That faire sheweth though the weder be
 Wonder divers and troublly for to se.
 So this tigre, ful of doubilnesse,
 So covertly his tresoun dide expresse,
 As he nat ment but trouthe to the toun,
 5230 Fully affermynge in coactus
 How the Grekis myghti were and stronge.
 And likly eke to abide longe
 Day be day redy hem t'assaille,
 And hadde also plente of vitaille.
 5235 Concludyng ay ther was no remedie
 Ageynes hem to holde champartie
 Nor with hem anymore to strye.
 For (he seide) thei had yet alyve
 Her worthi knyghtes, hardy as lyouns,
 5240 Her manly men and her championys.
 Whiche here lyves platly to juparte,
 From the cité caeste hem nat departe
- appearance
By
embassy
lades
crafty; prey
hidden; secret
take vengeance
bee
poured out its sweet honey
head (of a flower)
duplicity
contend successfully (see note)
risk
plan

Troy Book

- Til her purpos achieved be in al.
"For finally nouther tour nor wal
Until
- 5245 Nor youre gatis of iren though ye shette,
The Grekis shal on no side lette,
abstract
But that thei wiln us wynne at the laste.
Wherfor, it nedeth a mene weie to caste,
conquer
Sithen of myght nor favour of Fortune
middle
5250 We may nat longe ageynes hem contwne.
Wherfore," quod he, "so ye condescende,
Since
I can right wel al this thing amende,
Remedien, so that ye nat varie
continue
To that I seie for to be contrarie —
5255 This to mene, shortly out of doute,
Embassatour whan that I was oure
With the Grekis last whan ye me sent,
Thei seide goodly how thei wold assent
Unto a pes with this condicoun:
agree
- 5260 That ye wil make restitucion
Of the harmys and the violencis,
The wrongis done, and also the offencis
By Paris wrought in Grece at Citheroun,
As it is right, me semeth, of resoun.
joined
- 5265 For her request is meint with equité,
And we be driven of necessité
Unto her lust justly to enclyme,
Maugre oure wil the warre for to fyn:
Despite our intention
For al is now in her elleccoun:
- 5270 We may nat make no rebelloun;
Now the mater is so fer ybrought,
To strive ageyn, in soth, it helpith nought;
It may apeire but nothing availle.
cause damage
Wherfore the beste that I can consaille,
5275 As in proverbe it hath be seid of yore,
That yif a man be constreynd sore
And may nat fle to fallen in a treyme,
Lete hym chese the lasse harme of tweyne
trap
And the gretter prudently eschewe.
- 5280 And lete oure gold that is kepte in newe,
To save oure lif make redempcious:
concealment

Book 4

- For better it is, demeth of resoun,
 Spoiled to ben only of richesse
 Than wilfully deyen in distresse.
- 5285 The lyf is bet than gold or any good —
 Set al at nought in saving of your blood.
 For foly is a man for his welfare
 Thorough covetyse any gold to spare.
 And now oure lyf dependeth in balaunce,
- 5290 Late gold fare wel and goon with meschaunce;
 We may hereafter by sort or aventure
 Gold by grace and good ynowgh recuse.
 And sithen we, as I have yow tolde,
 May byen pes finally with golde
- 5295 And with oure tresour stinten eke the werre,
 It were foly plainly to differre
 With the Grekis outerly t'acorde:
 For yif so be I to hem recorde
 That ye assent withouten variaunce.
- 5300 Ther may of pes be no pasturbaunce —
 It is so lyght now to be recured.
 For as sone as thei ben assured
 By just report of youre entencions,
 Thei wil do write obligaciouns
- 5305 Of covenauantis, that nat be byhynde;
 And that ye shal in hem no faute fynde,
 Whan assuraunce from oster parte is hadde,
 Therupon endenturis shal be made,
 So that of feith ye mow hem nat repreve.
- 5310 And for that thei fully trust and leve
 Withoute fraude my relacioun,
 I wil now make no dilacioun
 To signefie to hem in certeyn
 Hoonly th'effect of that ye wil seien."

[The Trojans accept Antenor's proposal and appoint Antenor, Aeneas, and old King Talthibus to make a final peace. Helen asks Antenor to act as an intermediary and help reconcile her with Menelaus. Antenor goes to talk with the Greeks, while a funeral is prepared for Penthesilea and her corpse is embalmed for the journey to her homeland and final burial. Ulysses, Diomedes, and the King of Crete return to Troy with Aeneas. Ulysses

Troy Book

asks for a huge quantity of gold as compensation and for the banishment of Amphimachus, the latter at Antenor's suggestion. During the discussion of these terms, a great tumult breaks out. Ulysses and Diomede are frightened, but Antenor hides them. Ulysses suspects treachery on Antenor's part. Antenor then explains one complication in their plan to betray Troy (lines 5315-5551).]

- "Twys," quod he, "I take unto witnessse
The highe goddes, that everything may se,
Withoutte feynyng that I have besy be
5555 Fro point to point your purpos to achieve;
But finally, so it yow nat greve
And paciently that ye list to here,
There is o thing perturbeth this mater,
Whiche that I shal, so it be noon offence,
5560 Pleinly remembre here in youre presence:
This to seyn, of olde antiquité,
First at the bildyng of Troye the cité,
That whilom was ycalled Yllyoun —
For cause only at his fundacioun
5565 Kyng Ylyus, sithen go ful longe,
The founder was of the walles stronge,
After whom, as made is mencioune,
It called was and named Ylyoun —
In the whiche with grete and besy charge
5570 In Pallas name he made a temple large,
That passyngly was hadde in reverence.
And whan this phane of most excellencie
Parformed was by masounri ful wel
And, save the rose, compleit everydel,
5575 Of myghti stoon the bildyng wel assured —
But or it was with led and tymber cured
Ageynes tempest for to bene obstacle,
Ther fil a wounder only by myracle
That I dar wel afferme it in certeyn,
5580 Swiche another was there nevere seyn —
Whoso list se and considren al —
This merveil was so celestial.
For ther cam doune from the highe hevene,
By Pliades and the sterres sevene

Indeed

wish

mention

Now, a long time ago

effort

*temple
built*

*[was] made certain
before; covered*

Book 4

- 5585 And thorugh the eyr holdyng his passage,
Like a fairy a merveillous ymage
That in this world, though men hadde sought,
Ne was ther noon halfe so wel ywrought.
For, as it is trewly to suppose,
- 5590 Pigmalyon, remembred in the Rose,
In his tyme hadde no konnyng
To grave or peint so corious a thing:
For it was wrought with diligent labour
By hand of aungil in the hevenly tour,
- 5595 Thorough Goddess myght and devyn ordinaunce,
And hider sent thorugh his purvaunce
For a relik, only of his grace,
And provided to the same place,
Ther t'abide for a proteccoun,
- 5600 For a diffence and salvacioun,
Perpetuelly whil the world may dure,
Ageyn al meschef and mysaventure,
Every trouble and tribulacioun,
In susteynyng and revelacioun
- 5605 And sovereyn helpe eke of this cité.
The whiche never may distroyed be
By noon engyn that men may purchase:
The goddes han graunted swiche a grace
And swiche vertu annexed eke thereto,
- 5610 That Troye in soth may never be fordo
Til this relik stole be away.
And yit in soth ther is no man that may
From the place stere it nor remewe,
But the prest to whom it is dwe
- 5615 Only of offys to touche it with his hond.
So myghtely conservyd is the bond
That who attempteth in conclusioun
It to remewe of presumpcioun.
At the fyn platly he shal fayle:
- 5620 For force noon may him nat availle;
For it in soth wil nat remeved be
Excepte of hym to whom of duecē
It aparteneth, as ye han herde toforn.
- mentioned
craft
beautifully wrought
angel
As
peril
device
power
truth; destroyed
stir nor remove
proper
In the end utterly

Troy Book

- And overmore ther is no man yit born
5625 That rede can nor telle in no degré
Verrailly wher it be stoon or tre,
Nor how it was devysed nor ywrought —
Ther is no wyght so solil in his thought
Ceriously to tellen the manere.
- For Minerva that is so freshe and clere,
5630 The sterne goddesse, thorugh hir grete myght,
That is so dredful bothe of loke and sight,
Whiche on hir brest haveth of cristal
Hir shilde Egys, this goddesse immortal,
- I graunted hath, in bokes as I lese,
5635 Thorugh hir power whiche that is eterne
This holy relik for a memorial
To hir temple of bildyng most royal,
It to conserve from al assaut and drede
- And to socour in every maner nede
5640 Ageyn her foon unto Troye toun.
While it is kept with devocioun:
So that alweye by successioun,
From kyng to kyng in the lyne doun,
- By just title lyneally succede,
5645 Hereto annexed that thei taken hede,
Prudently avoidyng negligence,
It to conserve with due reverence,
As thei are bounde and yholde of right.
- Thanne shal noon enmy power have nor myght
5650 To do damage in hyndryng of the toun.
And whi it is called Palladyoun,
Like as clerkis write of it and seyn,
Is for Pallas to make hir toun certeyn,
- This relyke sent fro the hevene doun;
5655 And to conclude shortly my resoun,
This is the cause oure purpos is so let.”
“Than,” quod Ulices, “sith it may be no bet,
Oure labour is in ydel and in veyn,
- Withoutte recure, yif it be certeyn,
5660 As thou hast seyd, this toun in no degré
Thorugh this relyk may not distroied be:

make out

In due order

shield Aegis

their foes

harming

*explanation
obstructed*

since

remedy; if

Book 4

	It was foly the to undirtake	
	Unto Grekis beheste for to make	<i>promise</i>
5665	Withoute this — thou haddest be ful sure."	
	Quod Anthenor, "Yit ther is recure:	<i>remedy</i>
	As I have hight, ye shal have the toun,	<i>promised</i>
	Altheigh ther be a dilacioun;	<i>delay</i>
	And the maner anoon I shal telle,	<i>at once</i>
5670	Yif it so be ye list a whyle dwelle	<i>wish</i>
	Withoute noyse outher perturbaunce.	
	The prest, the whiche hath the governaunce	
	Of this relyk, shal be spoke unto	
	By good avys and ytreted so	<i>entreated</i>
5675	That he shal be ful of oure assent;	
	For he with gold and tresour shal be blest,	<i>blinded</i>
	That he accorde shal to oure purpos.	
	To bringe the relike, whiche is kept so clos,	<i>guarded</i>
	To what place that ye list assigne.	<i>you wish to designate</i>
5680	Beth stille of port, goodly, and benigne	<i>quiet of bearing</i>
	In youre werkis, til I have brought aboute	
	Fully this thing; and beth no thing in doute,	
	I dar mylfe take it wel on honde."	<i>nor at all undertake</i>
	And whan thei had his menyng understande,	
5685	Thei toke leve and wente oute of the toun.	
	But first to voide al suspiciooun,	<i>affay</i>
	At her goynge Anthenor hath hight	<i>promised</i>
	How that he wold goon the same nyght	
	To Priamus, "to maken ordinance	
5690	How the bondis and the assuraunce	
	Of the pes shulde ymaked be	
	And for to knowe eke the quantite	
	Of the gold that ye shal receyve:	
	Thus shal I best the purpos aparceyve	<i>observe</i>
5695	Of the kyng and knowe it everydel."	
	And thei concsent and like wonder wel	
	Everything that Anthenor hath seide;	
	And so thei parte, glad and wel apaide,	<i>pleased</i>
	And wente her way and made no tariyng.	
5700	And Anthenor goth unto the kyng.	
	Hym counseillynge he make no delay	

Troy Book

- To calle his lordis ageyn the nexte day
And his liges to assemble yfere,
Finally t'engrosse this matere,
5705 As it was sittinge and expedient.
And whanne the kyng in open parlement
Crowned sat in his regalie,
This Anthenor gan to speccifie
In audience, that men myghte knowe,
5710 To eche estat, bothe highe and lowe,
The Grekis wille, yif thei agré thereto,
And what the some was of gold also
Whiche thei axe, yif the pes shal stonde:
Twenti thousand marke to have in honde
5715 Of pured gold, whiche most anon be paid;
And of silver, that may nat be delaied,
Thei most eke han the same quantité;
And over this, as thei accorded be,
Certeyn mesours be covenant also have
5720 Of whete and flour, her lyves for to save
In her repeire by the large se,
Whan thei saille home to her contré,
And that the collect maked be anoon
By good avis of hem everychoon,
5725 That al be redy be a cerielyn day.
There was no man that durst tho seie nay
Nor contrarie that Anthenor hath seide,
Wherso thei wer wel or evele apaide,
But ful assent in conclusion.
5730 And in al haste thorughoute al the toun
The colytours gadrid up the gold,
Like the somme as I have you told —
Of pore and riche ther wer spared noon.
The whiche tyme Anthenor is goon
5735 Unto the prest that called was Thonaunte,
Yif he myght in any wyse hym daunte:
To make his herte fully to enclyne,
Ful craftely he leyde oute hoke and lyne,
With lusty bait of false covetyse,
5740 Excitinge hym in ful secré wyse.

on
together
arrange

kingship
state explicitly

immediately

quantities

return

collection

intention

Whether; pleased; displeased

collectors

control (suborn)

Book 4

- That he wolde ben of his assent
 And condescende unto his entent,
 To putten hym in pcessioun
 Of the relik called Palladioun.
- 5745 Withoute abood it may delyvered be;
 And yaf hym gold an huge quantité;
 And hym to blonde moche more him behyght —
 And this was don ful preevely by nyght —
 Shortly concludyng, yif he condescende,
- 5750 That he wolde his estat amende
 So passyngly that forevermore
 He and his heires shulde have gold in store,
 Plente ynowe, that noon indigence
 Shulde have power him to done offence.
- 5755 "For unto the, this avow I make."
 Quod Anthenor, "and pleinly undirtake:
 Of gold and good thou shalt have suffisance
 And of tresour passinge habundaunce.
 That thou shalt in verray sikernesse
- 5760 Al thi kyn excellen in richesse,
 Yif thou delyvere like to myn axyne
 Palladioun, whiche is in thi kepyng.
 And I behote — thou maist treste me —
 By bond of feith it shal be secrē.
- 5765 List it were hindringe to thi name:
 For yif so be, that thou drede shame
 To be ensclaundrid of so foule a dede,
 I shal shape that the thar nat drede
 Nor bem agast in no maner wyse;
- 5770 For swiche a way in sooth I shal devise
 That no man shal be suspicioas
 To thi persone nor engynuous
 To deme amys, how this mater goth.
 For be wel ware, that me were as loth
- 5775 To be diffamed with so false a thing,
 To knowe therof, or be assentyng
 In any maner, that thei of the toun
 Sholde to me have suspicioas.
 Lat be, lat be — levere I hadde deie.
- agree
delay
deceive; promised
agree
status; change
true security
promise
Lest; slander
devise; need not worry
suspicioas
rather

Troy Book

- 5780 We shal therfor cast another weie,
Oure honour save, so that thou and I
Shal goon al quyte. I seie the outerly,
That nouther shal be holde partener
Of this thefte but stonde hool and cler
5785 Whatevere falle, withouten any shame:
For Ulixes shal beren al the blame
Of this dede and this thefte also.
For men shal scim, whan that it is go.
By his engyn and his sleighti wyle,
5790 Thorough his treymes and his false gylle.
That he hath stole aweye Palladioun
From the temple in lesyng of the toun,
That finally dairinge al his lyve
Men shal to hym this falshed ascryve,
5795 And al the gilt arretten his offence,
That thou and I, only of innocence,
Thorughoute the world of this iniuite
Shal be excused platly and go fre.
It nedeth not tarie in this matere.
5800 Come of attonys! Lo, thi gold is here!
For thou ne shalt lenger delaied be.
And sith thou seste that no difficulte
Is on no part, perell nor reperf,
Shame nor drede, sclauder nor meschef,
5805 Delaie nat to take this thing on honde."
And first this prest gan hym to withstande
Ful myghtely and seide, for nothinge,
Nouther for praiers nor for manacinge,
For gold nor good, ne no maner mede
5810 He nolde assent to so foule a dede.
Thus he answered at the prime face.
But ofte sithe it happeneth men purchase
By gifte of good, to speke in wordis pleyn,
That trouthe in povert myght never atteyne:
5815 For mede more by falshede may conquerre
Than title of right, that men in trouthe lere;
And gifte grete hertis can encline;
And gold, that may no stele and marbil myne.
- plan
*Shall get off unblamed
neither of us; accomplice*
- craft
tricks
- overthrowing
- impune to
- Come away at once
- since; see
- danger
- threats
- bribery
- would not
- at once
- often
- poverty
- bribery
- lure
- gifts; bend
- penetrate

Book 4

- | | | |
|------|---|--|
| 5820 | This prestis hert hath so depe grave
That Anthenor shal his purpos have,
For to possede the Palladioun
Thorough false engyn and conspiracioun
Of this prest that called was Tonaunt,
Whiche of falsohede myght hym best avaunte, | <i>dug into</i>
<i>possess</i>
<i>speak boastfully</i>
<i>stole</i> |
| 5825 | That this relik fro the temple rent.
And to Ulixes Anthemor it sent
Oute of the toun, in al the hast he myght,
By a seruaunt secrely by nyght:
Wheroft Troyens mortally dismayed | |
| 5830 | And thorough tresoun finally outraied.
Wrought by this prest with covetise blent,
False Anthenor beyng of assent. | <i>overcome</i>
<i>blinded</i> |

[*Lydgate complains against the duplicity of Thonant and the covetousness of priests. When the Trojans try to sacrifice to Apollo, the fire will not burn and the entrails of the animals are carried off by an eagle who drops them over the Greek ships. Cassandra explains to them that the first sign means they must purge Apollo's temple of the pollution caused by Achilles's murder there. The second sign, she says, is a token of treason, for Troy and Ilium will surely fall. The Greeks also seek an explanation; Calchas assures them of a good end to the war and advises them to prepare offerings to Pallas (lines 5833-6022).]*

- | | | |
|------|---|--|
| 6025 | Byshop Calchas with his lokkes hore,
Traitor forsown sithen go ful yore,
That falsid hath trouthe and his lygaunce,
Whom clerks han putte in remembraunce
In her bokis with lettris olde and newe,
To exemplifie no man be untrewe — | <i>grey</i>
<i>since long ago</i>
<i>betrayed</i>
<i>to illustrate by example</i> |
| 6030 | For though yeris passe faste awyete,
Ruste of sclaundir lightly wil nat deye;
The fret therof is so corosif
That it lasteth many manrys lyf
And is ful hard to arrace away; | <i>be slain</i>
<i>anger</i>
<i>wipe out</i> |
| 6035 | Of whos venym ful selde is made alay;
Reporte therof blowen is so wyde
Perpetually that it wil abide,
Remembrid new and freshly had in mynde —
Recorde of hym that koude a weye fynde. | <i>poison; abatement</i>
<i>Rumor</i>
<i>Remember</i> |

Troy Book

	Olde Calchas (evele mote he sterfe)		<i>die</i>
6040	Under colour of offringe to Mynerve, To make Grekes entren into toun, This sleighti serpent, fader and patroum And fynder-up of tresoun and of gyle,		<i>deceitful</i>
	Compassid hath and yfounde a wyle		<i>Contrived</i>
6045	How Grekis shal the cité wynne and take, Pretendynge hem sacrifice to make Unto Pallas, as I shal yow expresse: For this traitour, merour of falsnesse,		<i>set forth</i>
	The Grekis bad for to do her peyne		<i>mirror (paradigm)</i>
6050	To Minerva an offeringe to feyne And in al hastie that thei shuld hem spede. And of assent thei dide make a stede Large and wyde, of coper and of bras,		<i>ordered; endeavor</i>
	By crafte of Synoun, that contrived was		<i>pretend</i>
6055	That it myght resceive large and wel A thousand knyghtes armed bright in stel, Thorugh the sleighe and the compassyng, The sotil wit and merveillous werchinge		<i>horse</i>
	Of this wyse and crafty Greke Synoun.		<i>artfulness</i>
6060	Whiche thorugh his castynge and discrecion, Parfomed hath this riche stede of bras, As ye han herd, be biddinge of Calchas And by th'avya of Appius the wyse,		<i>workmanship</i>
	That halpe also the stede to devyse.		<i>Produced</i>
6065	To fyn only that of devocioan Grekis myght requeren of the toun, Whan it were made, to graunte hem licence		<i>at the</i>
	It to present in the reverence		<i>ask</i>
	Of myghti Pallas, in stèle armyd bright,		<i>permission</i>
6070	Amyd hir temple, large and ful of light — By the offringe to fynde occasioan To have entred freely into toun, By pilgrimage her vowes to fulfille:		
	In whiche stede daren shal ful stille		<i>horse lark</i>
6075	A thousand knyghtes, as Calchas be devis Ordeyned hath, that was so slighe and wys.		
	By crafte of Synoun and of Appius.		

Book 4

- This large stede of makyng merveillous,
Under pretence of oblacoun,
construction
offering
- 6080 Was complet ful to his perfeccoun
Of werkemannishipe, as I tolde afore,
The same yere that Troye was forlore,
Whan the sege soothly gan to fyne,
And the cité was brought to ruyne
brought to ruin
6085 Thorough Grekis myght, and the walles stronge
Were bete doun — large, thikke, and longe —
The whiche yere, as made is mencioune,
A lite afornt takynge of the toun,
Kynge echon that come fro so ferre
each one
- 6090 Alyve lefte after the mortal warre,
Whan thei saw how Priam be covaunte
Unto Grekis hath outerly made graunte
Al hast possible to paien his ransoun:
Thei toke leve and went oute of the toun.
- 6095 And first I fynde how Kyng Philymene
With hym ladde the body of the Quene
Pantasillya home to hir contré,
Ful richely ther to buried be;
And of two thousand knyghtes that this kyng
Penthesiles
- 6100 Brought unto Troye first at his comyng,
No mo than fifty home with hym he ladde.
And of the wommen that the quene eke hadde,
Of a thousand, the story seith certeyn,
But fourre hundred repeired hom ageym.
renamed
- 6105 And thus whan alle were fro Troie gon,
The morwe next Priamus anon
With his lordis rood oute of the toun,
As was th' accord for confirmacion
Of pes final upon outher syde.
at once
- 6110 And in the feld Grekis hym abide;
And on relikes openly yborn,
Ther thei wern on outher parti sworn
On the forme to yow afore recorded,
As Anthenor with Grekis was accorded.
agreement
- 6115 And for Grekis firste swore Diomede,
Thei of Troie takynge lytel hede
In the way

Troy Book

- How the othe was in condicoun,
Cured above under false tresoun.
Sithen Grekis tho in her sweryng
6120 Ne bounde hemselfe to no manere thing
To stonde to, as in special,
But for to holde and kepe in general
The poyntes bool engrosid and no mor,
In thilke tretē that Daungh Anthenor
6125 With Grekis helde, this traytoar fraudelent.
In whiche thei werne ful double of entent —
Meint with tresoun, as ye han herd toforn —
Whiche to observe only thei wer sworn
By fraude of othe and nat by wordis pleyne,
6130 Her adversaries to taken in a treyne,
Excludyng hem fro her menyng ferre.
Pes in the face but in the herte were,
Al openly confermyd with her bond,
Inly to tresoun, by assurance of bond.
6135 But though the venom be closid with a wal,
It was nat hid from him that knoweth al:
For certeynly, so as clerkes teche,
Who that swereth falsly in his speche,
Florishinge outward by a fair colour
6140 For to desseive his trewe neghebour.
He is forsworn, whatsoever he be.
The tresoun hid though men may nat se,
Howso the word be away yborn.
Who swereth by craft is by craft forsworn;
6145 Ther may be made noon excusacioun.
For God, that knoweth the entencoun,
Demeth the herte and the word right nought;
For he the wil knoweth and the thought
Of every man, nyghe and eke afere:
6150 Therfore be war, no man him forswere,
As Grekis dide Troiens to deceyve,
That the fraude koude nat conceyve.
Supposinge that the Grekis hadde be
Feithful and trewe of her suretē —
6155 But nothing oon thei in herte thought —
- Covered
Since
- written down
negotiations; *Lord*
- Mixed
- trick
their intention by a long way
- Inwardly: promise
- Adorning with rhetoric
deceive
- apprehended
- Judges
afar
- perceive

Book 4

- | | | |
|------|--|-------------------------------|
| | Whiche in the ende thei ful dere abought, | <i>paid for</i> |
| | Wham thei founde fully the revers | |
| | And to her speche the dede so divers. | <i>deed</i> |
| | It were but veyn by and by to write | |
| 6160 | Her feyned othes, nor her wordis whyte, | <i>facial expressions</i> |
| | Nor the cheris that thei koude feyne. | |
| | But to conclude with, the Quene Eleyne | |
| | Duringe the treté, upon the same day, | <i>conference</i> |
| | Delyvered was to Kyng Menelay: | |
| 6165 | And after that was payed the raunsoun, | |
| | Grauntid toform and gadrid in the toun, | |
| | Gold and silver, whete and also flour; | <i>wheat</i> |
| | And to her shippes with diligent labour, | |
| | In ful gret hast everything was brought, | |
| 6170 | Wherborugh the cité after cam to nought. | |
| | And Grekis thanne by symulacioun, | |
| | Makynge a colour of devocioun, | <i>appearance</i> |
| | Thorugh holynes, under ypocrasye, | |
| | Falsly feyned by fraude and flaterie, | <i>pretended</i> |
| 6175 | The kyng han preied to han liberté | |
| | Frely to entre into the cité, | |
| | To make aseth by oblacoun | <i>amends</i> |
| | For the theftis of Palladioun | |
| | And offren up the riche stede of bras | |
| 6180 | To the goddes that called is Pallas — | <i>goddess</i> |
| | Whan Kyng Priam liketh to assigne — | <i>to designate [a place]</i> |
| | That she to hem be willy and benyngne | <i>favorable</i> |
| | In her repeire, seilynge be the se | <i>return</i> |
| | Home into Grece toward her contré, | |
| 6185 | Whan she is quemed with the large stede. | <i>conciliated</i> |
| | Of whiche, allas, Priam toke noon hede: | |
| | The tresoun hidde he koude nat adverte | |
| | But graunted hem with al his hole herte, | |
| | Whan that hem list to bringe it into toun, | |
| 6190 | By false entising and suggestioun | |
| | Of Anthenor and also of Enee. | |
| | Havynge no drede nor ambyguyté | |
| | In his entent, nor suspicioun | |
| | Nouther of feyning nor of fals tresoun, | |

Troy Book

- 6195 But right frendly, liche to his beheste,
Condescendeth unto her requeste,
Her avowes that thei myght obseve,
To offren up this hors unto Minerve.
And Grekis tho, with grete dilligence,
6200 Ful gret honour and huge reverence
Han shapen hem with processioune
To bringe the stede into Troie toun,
The men of armys being ay therinne,
By whom thei cast Troie for to wynne
6205 In short tyme, for it stood on the date.
And whan this hors brought was to the gate,
It was so narwe that ther was no space
For the stede into the toun to passe,
Albe that thei assaied overal.
6210 Wherfore Priam bete adoun the wal
To make it large, right at her devys,
In whiche thing, alias, he was unwis;
For cause chef of his confusoun
Was that this hors cam into the toun.

*according to his promise
Agreed*

undertaken

planned

Without further delay; it was time

Although; tried

broke

just as they had planned

destruction

[*The Greeks make offerings at Pallus's temple. The Trojans are comforted and hopeful, but all too often adversity and misadventure come after gladness. The Greeks leave the horse in the custody of Sinon and tell Priam they wish to go toward Tenedos and thence sail homeward. To save Helen from danger, they advise sending her secretly to Tenedos (lines 6215-75).]*

- And whanne thei had at leiser and good ese
Fro Troye seiled unto Tenedoun
With her navie, the false Greke Synoun
In Troie waker gan to take kepe
6280 The hour whan men wern in her first slepe;
And in al haste, with his sleighty gyn
Many vys and many sotyl pyn
In the stede he made aboute goon,
The crafty lokkes undoyng everychon;
6285 And oute he goth and gan anoon to calle
Withinne the hors the worthi knyghties alle,
So secrely no man myght espie;

fleet

vigilantly; heed

sable craft

clasp

locks

Book 4

	And traitourly he gan hym for to hiye Upon the walles the silfe same nyght	basten
6290	And toward Grekis gan to shewe a lyght, Where as thei leye tofore Tenedoun, Redy armyd to falle uppon the toun. And whan thei hadde the sodein light espied, On horsebak anoon thei han hem byghed	before
6295	Toward Troye, armed cleane at al; And in thei went by the same wal Whiche for the hors was but late broke; And mortally, for to ben awroke,	harried properly
	The knyghtes eke in the stede of bras Han with hem mette, a ful sterne pas, And gan anoon thorughoute the cité On every half for to kylle and sleg	recently; broken down avenged
6300	With blody swerd upon every side, And made her wondes brode, large, and wyde, While thei, alias, nothing advertinge, At mydnyght hour abedde laie slepyng	joined, a ferocious manewer at once
6305	Ful innocent and thoughte nought but good, Al forbathed in her owne blood, Bothe man and childe withoute excepcioun,	awash
6310	The Grekis sparinge no condicioun Of old nor yong, womman, wif, nor maide — That with the cry Priamus abraide	circumstance
	Oute of his slepe and sodeynly awoke, Whiche laye al nyght and noon hede toke	startled
6315	Of the slaughter and mordre in the toun. But tho he wist that ther was tresoun Falsly compassid unto his cité	knew contrived
	By Anthenor and also by Enee, Of whos malis he was no mor in doute;	ill will
6320	For the venym was now broken ouse, And now the galle of conspiracioun, That under sugre of symulacrioun	conspiracy
	Hath so longe closid ben and hidde, In dede is now execut and kyd.	disimulation
6325	And now the fraude fully of tresoun, The cast also of false collusoun	covered revealed purpose

Troy Book

	Be raked oute and abrood yblowe, And the autours openly yknowe.	disclosed; blown originators
	Now hath envie and costrived hate Of her engyn set abrood the gate;	artfully devised cunning
6330	Now hath deceit and olde conspiracie And feyned othes, alle of oon allie, Openly shewed her falsnesse And disclosid al hir doubilnesse	skin by nature duplicity
6335	So fer abrod that now is ther no geyn. For now, alias, the wilde fire is seyn In touris highe with the wynde yblasid, Wherof Priam, astonyd and amasid,	avail seen blown
	Al awaped sterte oute of his bedde	astonished; terrified bewildered
6340	And cunfortles to the temple is fledde Of Appollo, to save hym yif he myght. And ay the flawme of the fires bright Brest in the toun and conswmeth al	Burned
	The riche bildinge, whilom so royal,	once
6345	That the walles with her roves huge, Covered with leed for a chef refuge. Were now, alias, bareyn and bare ymaked. The Grekis ay with her swerde naked	roofs protection
	Mordre and sle whereso that thei go,	
6350	That twenti thousand thiike nyght and mo Thei kylled han, longe or it was day; And in this slaughter and this grete affray Spoile and robbe and take what thei fynde,	that same before disturbance
	Tresour and good, and leste mat bihindre,	nothing
6355	Be myghti bond and sturdi violence. And the temples withoute reverence Thei han dispoilled thoroughoute al the toun And gredely rent and racid doun	pillaged torn; cut
	Of golde and silver the ornementes alle	
6360	Tofore the goddes — foule mote hem falle — Kyng Priam ay with a dedly chere To Appollo makyng his praiere Furiously, this hertly woful man,	let evil befall them
	As he is soth that no red ne can	
6365	But waite his deth in his fatal ewre.	trust who knows no help destiny

Book 4

- And Cassandra, the holy creature,
Of inward wo desirous to sterue.
Compleynnge ran unto Minerve.
Makynge to her a lamentacioun
die
- 6370 With other gentilwommen of the toun.
And ther, alias, as thei wolde dye,
Ful pitously thei sobbe, wepe, and crie.
And in her dool ther Y lete hem dwelle;
For alle her sorwes yif I shulde telle
sorrow; *I*
- 6375 In this story and her wo descriue,
Mi penne shuld of verray routhe rive,
Rebersinge eke how in every strete,
Her clothes blake, rodi, moiste, and wete,
As thei, alias, bothen oon and alle,
split
Describing
- 6380 On her lordes doun awone falle,
With her blod bedewed and yspreint,
Wher men may seen the cristal teris meyst
Of her weeping in ther woundes grene,
That lay and bledde ageyn the sonne shene,
swooning
sprinkled
mixed
fresh
against
- 6385 With dedly eyen castinge up the whyse:
It were but veyne al her wo to write
Nor the maner of her mortal sorwe.
But Guydo writ that on the same morwe
How Anthenor and with hym fale Enec
6390 Conveied han thorughoute the cité
The myghti Grekis unto Ylyoun,
The royal tour and riche mancoun
That whilom was of most excellency;
In the whiche thei founde no diffense
palace
once
- 6395 Of highe nor lowe nor of noon estat,
For it was left allone dissolat,
With al the gold and richesse of the toun
Shet and closed in the chefe dongoun.
But for ther was no man that withstande,
Locked up; tower
- 6400 Thei brake the lokkes and raught the good
And the treasour that was shet withinne,
Eche for his party that he myghte wynne:
Thei yaf no fors who was lef nor loth.
And Pirrus after to the temple goth
plundered
gave no care

Troy Book

- 6405 Of Appollo by gret cruelté,
And fil on Priam knelynge on his kne.
And with his swerd, furious and wood,
Tofore the autere shadde there his blood,
That the stremys of his woundys rede
mad
6410 So highe raught, bothe in lengthe and brede,
That the statue of gold bornyd bright
Of this Appollo, for al his grete myght,
For al his power and his sterne face,
Defouled was and pollut al the place —
altar
6415 Only by deth of this worthi kyng
By Pirrus slayn while he lay knelynge.
Of olde hatrede and envious pride,
While Anthenor and Enee stod aside,
That routhe was and pité to beholde
high reached
6420 To sen hym lyn on the stony colde.
So pitously toform the auter bledē.
Whereof, alias, whan Hecuba toke hede
And hir daughter, faire Polycene,
With here tornet as any gold wyr shene,
burnished
6425 Inly surprised with sorwe to her herte,
Whan thei began considren and adverie
The noble kyng, with blody stremys rede
Al fordrowned, with his eyen dirke and dede,
With Pirrus swerd girt thorough outhier side,
hair torn; wyr bright
6430 For mortal feare thei durste nat abide;
But inwardly thorghdarterd with the sight,
Al in a rage toke hem to the flight.
And yit in soth thorughoute the citē
Thei wiste never whiderward to fle,
overcome
6435 Reskus was noon nor no remedie
Of kyn nor frend nor of noon allie;
With Grekis swerd the toun was so beset.
And in her flight this woful quen hath met
Eneas, causer of al this wrak,
notice
6440 Unto whom, rebukyng, thus she spak:
"O thou traitour, most malicious!
Thou false serpent, adder envious!
Crop and rote, fynder of falsnesse,
pierced
fury
knew
Deliverance
set upon
destruction
spiteful
Branch and root, deviler

Book 4

- | | | |
|------|--|--|
| | Sours and welle of unkyndenesse, | unnaturalness |
| 6445 | How myghtestow in thin herte fynde
Unto thi kyng to be so unkynde?
Gynner and ground, example of tresoun,
And final cause of oure destruccioune,
How myghtestow, devoide of al pitie, | unnatural
<i>Beginner</i> |
| 6450 | Behold, alias, thorough thi cruelte
Of thi kyng to shede so the blood,
That evere hath ben so gentil and so good,
So gracious lord, specialy to the,
And overmore thorough his highe bountie | |
| 6455 | The honoured and ymagnified
Al his lyve — it may nat be denied —
That lith now ded in the temple, alias?
Thou wer nat only traitour in this cas
But to his deth conspiryng and unkynde, | <i>beneficence</i>
<i>Thee; praised</i> |
| 6460 | Pirrus conveiying where he shuld him finde,
Toform Appollo myd of this cite,
Where thou sholdest of verray duetie
Rather have ben his protectioun.
His myghti shield and savacioun, | |
| 6465 | That hast this cite and this toun ylorn
In whiche thou were fostrid and yborn,
On the gretest of reputacioun
Of alle the lordis dwellyng in this toun,
In whiche thou haddest whilom most plesaunce. | destroyed
<i>One of</i> |
| 6470 | But al is now ouse of remembrance.
Yit in thin herte yif any drope be
Of gentilnesse, merci, or pitie,
In this dedly rage ful of tene,
Rewe on my doughter, yonge Polycene, | once
<i>If</i> |
| 6475 | From Grekis swerd hir youthe for to save.
Yif thin herte may eny routhe have,
Of manly pitie on hir maydenhede
Diffende hir now and kepe hir ouse of drede,
Yif thou canst fynde any weye | <i>anger</i>
<i>Take pity</i> |
| 6480 | In any wyse that she may nat deye,
That herafter, whan men sen and rede
The false tresoun and the foule dede | <i>If</i>
<i>danger</i> |

Troy Book

- That thou hast don unto Troye toun,
It may in parti be proteccioune
6485 To thi fame, the venym to allaye
Of this tresoun. Whan men wiln assaie
By just report thi name to accuse,
This dede may the helpen to excuse
Ageyms tonges that speken of Enee;
6490 Than wiln thei seyn thou haddist yit pitie
On Polycene only of gentilnes,
Therwith to sugre al the bitternes
Of thi decerte, blowe forthe by fame,
By rehersaille of the foule blame
6495 That shal of the thorough the world be born,
With sclaunder infect whan thou art al toorn,
That thou ne shalt the shame mowe sustene.
Than shal my daughter faire Polycene
Be thi defence ageyns swiche famus strif,
6500 Yif it be so now thou save hir lyf.
Of me no fors, though thou make as blive
The swerde of Grekis thorough myn herte rive."
And so by prayer of this woful quene,
This Eneas toke to hym Polycene,
6505 Whos traitour herte, for al his cruelte,
On hir youthe was mevid of pitie,
Only of routhe that in his brest aros,
And secrely putte hir up in clos,
List that Grekis founde occasioune
6510 Ageynes hym. And Ajax Thelamoun
Toke to his warde Andronemucha,
Ectoris wyf and wyse Cassandra
Oute of the temple longinge to Minerve,
From Grekis swerd her lyves to conserve.
6515 And Menelay toke the Quene Eleyne
Into his garde, for whom so grete a peyne
Boode in his hert many day toorn,
By whom, alas, the cité is now lorn.
And Grekes ay were besy in her ire
6520 To sleen and kylle and cruelly to fire
On every side and to bete doun

Book 4

- Palais and house and walles of the toun:
Thei spare nought, for al goth to the fire.
So fervent hate brent in her desire
6525 Of olde envie avenged for to be
That thei ne leffe withinne the cité
Nothing unbrent, and also Ylyoun
Was in this rage turned upsodoun. *Iliam*
fury
- Ther maked wern noon excepclions,
6530 Only outake the possessiouns *except*
Of Anthenor (evele mote he fare)
And Eneas, whom the Grekis spare,
As thei to hem were bounde by her othe.
And thus the Grekis, furious and wrothe,
6535 Han al that day robbed and ybrent.
Til that the Kyng Agamenoun hath sent
For his lordis to assemble ifere *together*
In Pallas temple, only for to here
Her wyse avis uppon thinges tweyne:
6540 First, yif thei wolde holde and nat feyne
Holy her feith, withoute excepclion,
To hem by whom thei wan first the toun?
And overmore he axed hem also.
Touching the goodis, what thei wolde do
6545 With gold, tresour, and possessioun
That thei have wonne thorough her highe renoun?
And thei answerid, withoute more tariyng.
Thei wolde her feith kepe in everything
As thei wer sworn and her hestis holde;
6550 And over this thei seide how thei wold
That gold, tresour, and good of the cité,
As right requereth and also equyté.
Be justly partid by division
To every wyght made distribucion
6555 Liche his merit, of highe and lowe degré;
And that the kyng eke of resoun sc
Eche to rewarde after his labour,
So as it longeth to a conquerour,
That no man have mater to compleyne. *According to*
As it is appropriate

Troy Book

[Ajax Telamon insists that Helen deserves death, while Ulysses tries to save her. Agamemnon asks for Cassandra as his prize; Aeneas and Antenor plead that Helenus be spared for saving Achilles's body from defilement. Helenus, in turn, asks Agamemnon to save the lives of Hector's sons and Hecuba, which he grants. The Greeks prepare to sail, but a storm detains them for a month. Asked by the Greeks to explain the cause of the storm, Calchas falsely says that the gods and furies are still unappeared for Achilles's death. Only the sacrifice of Polyxena, he tells them, will satisfy the deities, since her beauty was the root cause of Achilles's death. Enraged, Pyrrhus searches for her, and Antenor at length betrays her hiding place. Pyrrhus drags her into the presence of Agamemnon, who assigns her to Pyrrhus. Polyxena is led to the place of her execution, Achilles's grave. The Greeks weep in pity and compassion for her, but they are convinced, at Calchas's suggestion, that they will never return home unless she dies. She kneels down and offers her lament to the gods (lines 6560-6730).]

- "O ye almyghti that this world governe
And everything considren and discerne,
By whom this world, so huge, large, and rounde,
Bothe eys and see, hevene and eke the grounde
6735 At youre devis with a word was wrought, pleasure
And sothfastly knownen every thought,
Right as it is, of every maner wyght,
Without lettinges, so percyng is youre sight, Without delay
That nothing is conseilit nor ywryte concealed: hidden
6740 From the beholding of youre eternal eye, at once
And everything may attonis se,
Upon my soule hath merci and pitie.
And of youre grace and benigne cure, concern
Upon my wo and pitous aventure
6745 Haveth som routhe, now that I shal dye.
My woful spirit to leden and conveye
Whereas yow list, now that I shal pace, with
For unto you in this silfe place,
I me confessse with al humylyte,
6750 That hedertowarde I have in chasite
Lad al my lyf and kept my maydenhede
In youre servyse, bothe in thought and dede,
In port and chere, and in countenaunce, behavior: appearance
Or forfeiture of any dalyaunce, wrongdoing: speech
6755 With o mysroke I never yit abreide, sinful mislooking: raised (my eyes)

Book 4

- So that in soth I deye shal a mayde,
 As ye wel knowe, of synne al innocent,
 Though I be now dempe by judgement
 For to be ded, withoute gilt at al:
condemned
- 6760 Witnesse of you that ben immortal,
 Clene of entent of that I am accused.
 And yit, alias, I may nat be excused
 But that the swerd of vengaunce mote byte
mote
 Routheles, whiche am no thing to wyte
Pitiless; not at all to blame
- 6765 But stonde clere and pure of al offence,
 And dischargid in my conscience,
 I dar afferme, and fully gilteles
 Touchinge the mordre of worthi Achilles,
Who slew
- Whiche slowe my brother, and after loved me,
 6770 And is now cause of myn adversité:
 And yit in wil, dede, word, nor thought,
 Unto his deth assentiid was right nought
 But therof was right sory in myn herte.
not at all
- Albe that I may nat now asterte
Although; escape
- 6775 For to be ded, only for his sake.
 On me allone vengaunce shal be take
 Withoute merci, in ful cruel wyse,
 With my blood to make sacrifice
taken
- To the goddis, her wrathe for to queme.
 6780 O peple blinde, in soth, amys ye deme;
 Ageynes me youre herte is to cruel,
 To merciles, to irous, and to fet,
 Withoute routhe, to mykel indurat,
savage
- To sleep a maide, allone disolat.
 6785 Ouse of youre herte, alias, pité is gon —
 Harder in trouthe than outhir stok or stoon
 And more cruel in youre oppinioun,
 For lak of pité, than tigre or lyoun.
tree
- Certis, ye ben gretly for to blame
- 6790 And oughte herof for to have gret shame
 To assent to so foule a dede,
 To sleep a maide, quakynge in her drede,
 And graunte hir noon oportunyté
 For to bewepe hir virginité:
lament

Troy Book

6795	That of this cruel and pitous wreche My blood youre gilt herafter shal apeche And accuse also youre grete envie To the goddes, that shal justesie Every unright, bothe of highe and lowe,	<i>vengeance</i> <i>inform on</i> <i>judge</i>
6800	Put egally, and make to be knowe The trouthe plein, and spare no degré But makes open that is nowe secré. I sele nat this nor mysilfe compleyne To have redres of my fatal peyne,	<i>equally</i> <i>social rank</i> <i>expose</i> <i>relief</i>
6805	For deth is now more welcom unto me Than is my lyf and more itake at gré. Sithen my brethere, most worthi of renoun, Be slayen alle and buried in this toun: My fader ded in his unweldy age.	<i>goodwill</i> <i>Since</i> <i>feeble</i>
6810	And I allone lefte in al this rage, And have abide pitously to se Fynal ruyne now of this cité. Whiche at myn herte sitteth now so sore That leveire I have thamne to wepe more	<i>is so distressed</i> <i>rather</i>
6815	Deye attonis in reles of my wo, Sith al my kyn is passed and ago — Lenger to lyve were to me a deth. For bet is me to yelden up the breth Than to be ladde oute of this cité.	<i>I would die</i> <i>Since</i>
6820	Amonge straungeris to live in poverté. O deth, welcome, and no lenger leste Thi dredful dart to filen and to whēse, My tendre hert therwithal to ryve; Ageyn thi myght I shal never strive.	<i>hold off</i> <i>sharpen; grind</i> <i>split</i> <i>Against</i>
6825	Now is tyme to kythe thi power On me that am of wil and herte entere A clene maide, so as I began, Withoutou touche of eny maner man In al my lyf to this same day.	<i>make known</i> <i>entirely</i> <i>pure</i>
6830	This lite avaunte make yit I may, In myn ende, to the goddes alle, After whos helpe now I clepe and calle. And to her merci mekely I commende	<i>small boast</i> <i>appeal</i>

Book 4

- My woful spirit and prae hem that thei sende
To every maide better happe and grace *chance*
Than I have now and a lenger space
In hertly joie and honour to contune,
Withoutte assaut of any infortune
To lede her lyf in prosperite. *their lives*
- And alle maidenes, remembreth upon me
To take exaumple how ye shal yow kepe
And that ye wolde a fewe teris wepe
Whan that ye thinke uppon Polycene,
That was of age and of yeris grene
Whan she was slayn by cruel aventure. *charge*
And to the goddes, for to han in cure,
My dredful goost hooly I betake
Eternally; and thus an ende I make." *fearful spirit; entrap*
And with that word hir hed she gan enclyne *bow*
Ful humblely, whan she shulde fyne,
And of hir eyen helde the lydes down.
And Pirrus thanne, woder than lyoun,
Dismembred hath with his sharpe swerd *Beheaded*
This maide yonge, dredful and aferd;
And overmore, his cruelte to shewe.
On pecis smale he hath hir al tobewe *small bits; cut*
Endelong his fadris sepulture. *All along*
Alias, how myght his cruel herte endure,
Merciles to done so foule a dede?
I am astonid soothly whan I rede, *amazed*
After hir deth, how it diide hym good,
Like a tiraunte to cast abrood hir blood
Or a tigre, that can no routhe have,
Rounde enviroun abouthe his fadris grave
He spreint of hate and of cruelte. *sprinkled*
O thou Pirrus, thou maist ful wel ybe
Achilles sone by lyneal discent;
For like to hym of herte and of entent
Thou wer in soth devoide of al pitie
And wers than he yit in o degré: *measure*
For of thi fader in al his lyvynge
Ne redde I nevere yit so foule a thing —

Troy Book

- Though I wold of hatrede hym abraide — accuse
For no rancour that evere he slow a maide.
- 6875 I fynde wel that he hadde his part pain
Whilom in love of Cupides dart,
That made hym sore in his lyve smerte,
Whan that he was wounded to the hert pain
With the castyng only of an eye.
- 6880 Wemyng therby wisly for to deye — Thinking: surely
He myghte nat the sodeyn stroke eskape.
And afterward, as his fate hath shape, determined
He mordrid was for love of Polycene,
Whom thou hast steyn in thi cruel tene rage
6885 Furiously, withoute routhe or shame:
For whiche thing the foule hatful fame rumor
Thorugh al the world herafter shal be sprad,
Whan the story rehersid is and rad; recited
Than shal be seide how Pirrus routheles
6890 Slowe in his ire a maide gilteles cursed
And warie shal thi name most odible
For this dede passingly horrible,
For love only of faire Polycene.
The deth of whom wham Eccuba the Quene
- 6895 Hath seyn, alas, as she beside stood,
For verray wo gan to weye wood, go insane
And for sorwe oute of hir wit she went, mind
And hir clothes and hir heer she rent hair; rove
Al in a rage, and wot nat what she doth, knew
6900 But gan anoon with hondis and with tothe
In her furie cracchen and eke byte,
Stony caste, and with fistes smyte strike
Whom she mette; til Grekis made her binden, had her bound
And sent hir forthe, also, as I fynde,
6905 Into an ile to Troye pertenant, belonging to
Wher she was slain only by jugement
Of the Grekis and stonyd to the deth.
And whan she had yolden up the breeth, yielded
This woful quene, by cruel aventure,
6910 The Grekis dide make a sepulture Artfully
Coriously of metal and of stoon;

Book 4

	And toke the cors and buried it anoon With gret honour and solemnité, That longe after ther men myghte se	corpse
6915	The riche toumbe, costful and royal, There set and made for a memorial Of Eccuba, whilom of grete fame;	once
	And after yaf to that place a name And called it, to be long in mynde,	gave
6920	<i>Locus infestus</i> , in Guydo as I fynde. And thus the quene only for sorwe wood, Whan hir daughter hadde shad hir blood,	mad
	Of Grekis stonyd dide hir ende make, As ye han herde, pleinly for the sake	
6925	Of Polycene, whilom by Calchas Unto Appollo falsly offrid was, By Pirrus swerd Achilles avengyng.	once
	To make the se calm and blawndisshinge, That the goddes take no vengaunce	inviting
6930	Upon Grekis. That an evel chaunce Come to theis false goddes everychoon And her statues of stokkes and of stoon,	<i>Let misfortune befall</i>
	In whiche the serpent and the olde snake, Sathan hymself, gan his dwellinge make,	wood
6935	And fraudently folkes to illude, Ful sotilly kan hymselfe include In ymagis for to make his hold,	trick
	That forget bese of silver and of gold —	dwelling
	That by errore of false illusious,	forged
6940	He hath ybrought to confusious Thorugh mycreance the worthi kynde of man, Sithen tyme that aldirfirst began	destruction
	The false honour of ydolatrie	misbelief
	And the worship unto mawmetrie	<i>Since; first of all</i>
6945	By sacrifice of bestis and of blood, Tapesen hem whan that thei are wood And to queme, bothe at eve and morwe.	idolatry
	I prale to God, yeve hem alle sorwe,	pacify
	Wherso thei ben, withinne or withoute.	give
6950	I noon excepte of the false route —	crowd

Troy Book

- Saturn nor Mars, Pallas nor Juno,
Jupiter, Mercurius, nor Pluto,
Nouther Flora that doth the floures sprede,
Nouther Bachus with grapis whyte and rede,
6955 Nor Cupido with his eyen blinde,
Nouther Daphne closed under rinde, *tree bark*
Thorough Tellus myght, of the laurer tre,
Nor thou Diane with thi chastite,
Mighti Venus, nor Cytherea
6960 With thi dantis, nor Proserpyna
That lady art depe doun in helle,
Nor Belides that draweth at the welle,
Ixyoun, nor thou Zeziphus, *Sisyphus*
Nor with thin appil, thou cruel Tantalus,
6965 Nor the Furies that bene infernal,
Nor ye that spynne the lives thredes fatal
Upon the rokke of every maner man, *distaff*
Nor the Muses that so singen can
Atwen the coppis of Nyses and Cirra, *sunmits*
6970 Upon the hil beside Cirrea,
Nor the Cibeles, nor Ceres with thi corn, *you, Sybil*
Nor Eolus of whom the dreadful horn
Is herde so fer, whan thou list to blowe,
Nor Janus Bifrons with bak corbed lowe, *wish
bent*
6975 Nor Priapia, nor Genyus the prest
That curseth ay, with candel in his fist,
Hem the echon that froward be to Kynde, *each one; perverse; Nature*
Nor Imeneus whos power is to bynde
Hertis that ben conjunct in mariage, *joined*
6980 Til the goddesse of discorde and rage
Discevereth hem by division, *Separated*
Nouther Manes that han her mansioune
Mid the erthe in derknesse and in wo, *The spirits of the dead; place*
Nor theis elves that are woot to go
6985 In undermeles whan Phebus is most shene, *early afternoons; bright*
Nouther fawny in tender grevis grene, *fawns; thickets*
Water-nymphes, nor this nayades, *Naiads*
Satiry, nouther driades, *Satyrs*
That goddesse bene of wode and wildernes,

Book 4

- | | | |
|------|---|---------------------------|
| 6990 | Nor other goddes — nouther more ne lese —
As Morpheus that is the god of slepe.
I holde hym wood that taketh any kepe
To done to hem any observaunce: | <i>pays any attention</i> |
| 6995 | He may nat faille for to have meschaunce
At the ende pleinly for his mede.
For al swiche feined falsnes, oute of drede,
Roos of the devel and first by his engyn | <i>misfortune</i> |
| 7000 | And of his sleighti treynes serpentyn,
Only mankynde whane he made loute
To false ydoles, the whiche, oute of doute,
Are but develis. David bereth witnesse | <i>reward</i> |
| 7005 | In the Sauter, where he writ expresse
And confermeth ther as he endites
How the goddes of paganysme rytes, | <i>cunning</i> |
| 7010 | On and alle (he excepteth noon),
Be made of gold, of silver, and of stoon,
Forged of bras, of metal, and of tre,
And eyen han and yit thei maye nat se, | <i>tricks</i> |
| 7015 | And alle are fendes, so as David seith:
That who in hem haveth any feith,
Hope, credence, or in hem delite. | <i>baw</i> |
| 7020 | It is no drede that thei wil hym quye
With swiche guerdoun as the soule slet
Perpetually, so that the fyn is deth
Of her servise whan men heanes passe | <i>doubt; repay</i> |
| 7025 | And in her lyf unhap and evele grace,
Meschef and wo, and confusione,
As men may sene example be this toun,
That wende wel assured for ta be | <i>reward</i> |
| | And to have stonde in longe prosperite
Ageyn her son thorgh helpe of Appollo,
Of Venus eke, and favour of Juno,
Thorgh Pallas myght, Diane and Minerve, | <i>and</i> |
| | Whom thei wer wont to honour and to serve
With cerymonyes and with sacrifice,
As ye to forn han herde me devise,
That hem have brought now unto ruyne, | <i>misfortune</i> |
| | By cruel deth maked hem to fyne. | <i>destruction</i> |
| | | <i>thought / fitref</i> |
| | | <i>foes</i> |
| | | <i>recount</i> |
| | | <i>die</i> |

Troy Book

- Here may ye sen how the venym bites
At the ende of swiche olde rytes,
By evidence of this noble toun.
What may availle now Palladioun?
May now ought helpe her fraude fantasie
Of al her olde false ydolatrie?
- 7035 Alias, alias, thei bought it al to sore.
Now farewel, Troye, farwel for everemore.
Farwel, alias. To cruel was thi fal.
Of the no more now I write shal.
For thi sake in sothe, whan I take hede,
- 7040 Of inward wo myn herte I fele blede.
And whan that I remembre in my thought,
By ruyne how thou art brought to nougħt,
That whilom were so noble and so riche,
That in this world I trowe noon was liche
- 7045 Nor perigal, to speken of fairnesse,
To speke of knyghthod and of worthinesse,
As clerkes seien that thi bildyng knewe,
That al the world oughte for to rewē
On thi pitous waste walles wylde,
- 7050 Whilom so rial whan men gan to bilde
Thin touris highte and Kyng Priamus
The first began, most riche and gloriouſ,
And sette his se in noble Ylyoun.
O, who can write a lamentacion
- 7055 Coavenient, O Troye, for thi sake?
Or who can now wepe or sorwe make,
Thi gret meschef to compleyne and crie?
Certis, I trowe nat olde Jeremye,
That so bewepte the captivitē
- 7060 Of thilke noble rial cheſt citē
Jerusalem and his deſtruccioun,
With al the hole transmygracioun
Of the Jewes; nor thou Ezechiel,
That were that tyme that the meschef fel
- 7065 Unto the kyng ycalled Sedechie
In Babilon and for thi prophesie
With stonyſ were cruelly yslawē;
- anything: baseless fancy
truly
once
like
equal: beauty
devastated
You
throned
Fining
misfortune
Jeremiah
slain

Book 4

- Nor he that was departed with a sawe —
Ye bothe two, that koude so compleyne —
- 7070 Nor Danyel that felt so grete peyme
For the kynges transmutacioun
Into a beste, til thorough the orisoun
Of Daniel he restored was
To mynde ageyn and ete no more no gras.
- 7075 Yet verrailly, though ye alle thre
With youre weping had alive be
And present eke at the destruccioune
Of this noble worthi royal town,
To have beweillede the meschef and the wo
- 7080 And the slaughter at the sege do
On outhier party in ful cruel wyse,
- Alle youre teris myghte nat suffise
To have bewepte her sorwes everychon,
Be tresoun wrought, as wel as be her foos.
- 7085 Hereof no more, for it may nat availle.
But like as he that gynneth for to saille
Ageyn the wynde, whan the mast doth rive,
Right so it were but in veyn to strive
Ageyn the fate, bitterer thanne galle.
- 7090 By highe vengaunce upon Troye fallie
Not to presume her furies, sharpe whetie.
Ceriously in this boke to sette:
So gret a thing I dar nat undirtake
- 7095 But evene here a pitous ende I make
Of the sege, after my sympelnesse.
- And though my stile, blottid with rudenes
As of metre, be rusty and unfiled,
This ferthe boke, that I have compiled
- 7100 With humble hond, of fer that doth me quake,
Unto youre grace holy I betake,
Of youre merci no thing in dispeir,
So as I can, makynge my repeir
- To the Grekes and no lenger dwelle,
Her aventures of the se to telle
- 7105 In ther resort home to her contré
And how that thei there received be,
- misfortune
done
lamented
By; foes
Against; break
In due order
writing instrument; faulty
makes
commit
not at all
returning
return

Troy Book

Only of support, so ye not dispise,
The fifthe boke shortly shal devise.

*if: disdain
set forth*

Book 5

- Whan Eolus, which doth the windes roar,
Apesid was, that he blew no more,
Which is of stormys governour and lord,
And was also fully of accord
- 5 With myghti Juno, lady of the eyr,
To make the skye and the wedir fair,
That cloude noon in hevene didde appere,
And Neptunus, blaundisshing of chere,
Was of assent, the stori seith forsothe,
- 10 To make the se fro tempest calm and smothe,
Without boilyng or trouble of any wawe,
The myghti Grekis to shipward gan hem drawe
For to repeire home to her contré,
After thei had wonnen the cité
- 15 And put her fomen fully at the worse.
But Fortune, ay foward and perverse,
Hath with her myrthe meynt adversité;
For whan thei wende ful assurid be
And have stonde stedefast in quiete,
- 20 This blinde lady falsly made flete
Into her sugre galle of discordance,
Amonge hemself to bring in variaunce
And her hertis, of rancour and of pride,
Contagiously to sevrym and devyde,
- 25 Whan thei sat biest in her glorie
With the palme of conquest and victorie,
Fully rejoysinge, thorugh her highe renoun,
The crowne of laurer in possessioun,
And had also at her lust al wonne.
- 30 Whan brightest shon the lusti freshe sonne
From est to west of her worthines,
A cloudy sky unwarily with darknesse
Eclipsed hath a parti of her light
- causes the winds to roar
Appeased
- inviting
truly
- wave
- foes; defeat
ever obstinate and contrary
- mixed
thought
- flow
- strength
laurel
- pleasure
- without warning

Troy Book

	And diffacid the holsom bmys bright	blotted out
35	Of her welfare and prosperitē	
	By th'envious fals contagiouste	corrupting influence
	Of the serpent, pompos and elat,	arrogant and exultant
	Amonge hemselfe to make hem at debat,	set them at odds
	Inducinge in rancour and discord.	Bringing
40	For or thei entre withinne shippes bord,	before
	Ageyn Ulyxes worthi Thelamoun,	
	In presence of Kyng Agamenoun,	
	Purposed hath pleinly his matere	Put forth; case
	Tofore Grekis, anoon as ye shal here.	forthwith

[Ajax objects to awarding the Palladium to Ulysses, but Menelaus and Agamemnon decide in favor of Ulysses. When Ajax threatens vengeance, he is murdered; Menelaus, Agamemnon, and Ulysses fall under suspicion. Antenor invites the Greek leaders to a feast, where they discuss Aeneas's hiding Polixena. Aeneas is banished, and he advises the Trojans to elect Antenor as their king, so that he might kill Antenor when he returns to accept the office. Antenor leaves Troy for the island of Corboda, where he is welcomed. Cassandra prophesies the death of Agamemnon.

Meanwhile, King Naulus plans to exact revenge on the Greeks because he believes the false story that his son Palamedes, who replaced Agamemnon as the Greek leader, was murdered by Ulysses and Diomedes, though he was actually killed by Paris. With his son Oetes, Naulus builds signal fires to lure the Greek ships onto the rocks, where two hundred ships are lost. Oetes also writes Clytemnestra that Agamemnon has wed a Trojan princess. Aegisthus, Clytemnestra's lover, murders Agamemnon on his return; and Orestes, Agamemnon's son, is secretly sent to Crete. Oetes seeks to destroy Diomedes as well by telling his wife, Egra, that Diomedes killed her brother Assandrus on the voyage to Troy and has taken another wife. Egra banishes Diomedes from his kingdom; he wanders forsaken until Aeneas calls him to Troy to help him. Diomedes becomes the chief protector of Troy. As his reputation spreads, his wife, fearing his might, convokes her parliament, rescinds his banishment, and welcomes him back to his kingdom, where he lives happily. Aeneas then leaves Troy with his men and reaches Carthage with his father, Anchises. The Aeneid records his losing Creusa, betraying Dido, and conquering Italy, but Troy Book says no more about him.

Orestes undertakes vengeance for the murder of Agamemnon, with the aid of several kings. He captures the city of Methene and imprisons Clytemnestra, while his men kill Aegisthus. The next morning Orestes kills Clytemnestra, hacks her body into small pieces, and carries them outside the city boundaries to be fed to the beasts and dogs. Menelaus tries to deprive Orestes of his crown because of matricide, but Nessor supports Orestes. Orestes and Menelaus are reconciled, and Orestes marries Hermione, the daughter of Menelaus and

Book 5

Helen, while Erigona, the daughter of Aegisthus and Clytemnestra hangs herself. The story next moves to the adventures of Ulysses (lines 45–1780).]

O Ulixes, by ordre in my writyng	
Thyn aventure commen on the ring,	<i>arrive in time</i>
Ful wonderful bothe on land and see,	
Entermedid with grete adversité!	<i>Mixed</i>
1785 For Guydo, first discrivinge thi repeire,	<i>describing: return</i>
Seith how thou founde weder foule and faire,	<i>weather</i>
Now agreeable, now the thounder sowne,	<i>ounds</i>
Now stille and smothe, now with clowdis frowne;	
And seith also that thou dediat ordeyne	<i>command</i>
1790 To thi passage myghty shippes tweyne	
Apparaillid al for marchaundise,	<i>goods</i>
That thou myghtest in most secré wyse	
Every meschef of the se eskape.	
But for al that thou haddist a fel jape:	<i>serious misfortune</i>
1795 For as this auctor thi resort doth wryte,	<i>return</i>
He seith Ulixes, for al his wordis white,	
Irobbed was of riches and of good;	
Contrarious wynde so ageyn him stood	
That he was drive, to his confusoun,	<i>driven</i>
1800 Into the myghty stronge regioun	
Where Thelamoun regned by his lyve;	<i>Ajax; when he was alive</i>
And there he was hent and take blyve,	<i>seized; eagerly taken</i>
Be myghti bond sesid by the brest,	
And merciles put under arrest;	
1805 For thei him had suspect in werkynge,	<i>suspected him of treachery</i>
Touching the mordre of the same kyng,	
But he so wrought by his sleighti wyle	<i>contrived; cunning</i>
And his tale sette in swiche a stile	
That hem alle he pleinly hath bejaped,	<i>deceived</i>
1810 And fro her bond frely is eskaped,	
Except that he, for al his queynte fare,	<i>cleverness</i>
Of his tresour was ymade ful bare.	
And for his passage was to him unkouthe,	<i>because; unknown</i>
He fil ageyn into the wolves mouthe;	
1815 For verrailly, as it is specified,	<i>mentioned</i>
Kyng Naulus men han hym eft espied.	<i>afterwards</i>

Troy Book

- Take and bounde and cheyned mercyles
For the mordre of Kyng Pallamydes.
- But the story reherseth in certeyn
- 1820 By his prudence he eskaped is ageyn — relates
For he was bothe expert, wys, and olde —
Altho the maner be not fully tolde
Of his eskafe, thorough his besy peyne,
- diligence
- 1825 Out of daunger of these kynges tweyne —
Til thorough fortune he cam fro meschef fre
To the presence of Kyng Idumee
- Idomeneus (see note)*
- In symple array and torne apparaile.
Wheroft the kyng gretly gan mervaille
- poverty
- 1830 To sen his povert in so lowe maner;
- nonetheless
- But for al that he maked him good cher;
- same
- Though thilke tyme he were infortunat.
- He hym resseiveth liche to his estat.
- According to
- And whan thei wern bothe tweyne allone,
In compleymng Ulixes made his mone
- lament
- 1835 Unto the kyng, as he that was ful sage,
- Point by point; fortune
- Ceriously the sort of his passage,
- serious
- With face sad and a sobre chere,
- Fro point to point, anom as ye shal here.
- "My lord," quod he, "shortly to expresse.
- said
- 1840 Of trust I have in youre gentilnes,
- Because of
- I shal to yow myn aventures alle
- Rehersyn her, right as it is falle.
- Relate here
- First, whan that I Troye lond forsook
- And the water with my shippes took,
- 1845 I was anoon with wynde pesible blowe
- immediately; gentle
- To an yle whiche was to me unknowe,
- Callid Mirma, of gret haboundance;
- And alle thing that was to my plesaunce,
- That may for silver or for gold be bought,
- 1850 I redy fonde, and wantid right nought,
- locked nothing
- And ther abood ful longe while in joie
- remained
- With the tresour that I gat at Troye.
- My shippes stuffed, my men hool and sounde,
- 1855 And for commodite of that ilke grounde,
- suitability; region
- We lyked so the contré enviroun
- surrounding

Book 5

	That for dispot and recreacioun Oure tariyng ther we thought not longe, For no man dide unto us no wronge. Til on a day that the eyr was stille,	diversion
1860	The wynde also fully at oure wille, We seyld forthe in quiete and in pes Unto a port called Clanstafages, Wher with my meyné long and many day	<i>followers</i>
	I sond al thing according to my pay —	satisfaction
1865	The wedir lusty, agreeable, and feir. But who may trust outhir in wynde or eyr? For upon feith of the smothe skye	pleasant
	Ageyn to ship fast I gan me hye, Taried nought, but tok anoon the see,	<i>hasten</i>
1870	Smothe and calm enduring daies thre, That in the wedir founde was no lak. But sodeynly the hevene turned blak;	<i>immediately</i>
	The hydous tempest and the wavas grene	waves
	Oute of hope han me dispeired clese,	<i>drove me into despair</i>
1875	Troublid my spirit and made me pensif, Without refut t'eskape with the lyf, Possid and drive by many sondri yle,	<i>melancholy</i>
	Til at the last, cast up at Cecyle,	<i>means</i>
	Recuryng lond with gret annoy and peyne.	<i>Tossed; driven past; idle</i>
1880	Wher thilke tyme regned kynges tweyne. And as I can remembre douteles,	<i>Sicily</i>
	The ton of hem called Sorigenes,	<i>Reaching</i>
	Whiche unto me ful contrarious was,	<i>some</i>
	And the tother named Coclopas —	<i>one</i>
1885	Brethren of birthe and in conclusioun Ilyche cruel of condicioun:	<i>homile</i>
	For though my sort had shape for the nonys,	<i>other</i>
	Bothe tweyne fil on me attony,	<i>Equally; by temperament</i>
	Oppressing me in ful gret distresse,	<i>fortane; seemed set for the moment</i>
1890	Spoiled my shipes of tresour and richesse, And for no pité liked not to spare,	<i>at the same time</i>
	Til I was left destitut and bare	<i>Bearing heavily on me</i>
	Of al my good. Allas, my mortal chaunce!	<i>Robbed</i>
	And most of al was to me grevaunce,	

Troy Book

- 1895 Whan of my gold thei myght no more restreyne,
Thei sent doum her myghti sonys tweyne —
Alipham, that was ful large and long,
And Polipheme the myghti geaunt strong —
Whiche on my men t'avenge hem wer so fayn
1900 That thei of hem han an hundred slays,
Disaraied to stonden at diffence,
And of malys, with sodeyn violence
Thei token me, for meschef almost lorn,
And Alphenor, myn owne brother sworn,
1905 And hatfully, as thei han us founde,
In cheynes cast and in stokkys bounde,
And after that ylokked in presoun.
And for to make platly mencious,
This myghti man, this grete Polypheme.
1910 A suster had, shortly for to deme,
Oon the fairest that ever yit was born;
She myght in bewté so be set aforne —
Nature hir gaf swiche a prerogatyf —
A clene mayde, soothly, and no wyf,
1915 Flouryng bothe in fairnes and bounte.
Whom Alphenor whan he dide se,
Albe he was fetrid in prisoun,
For love he lost wit and eke resoun,
And wex al mad — so narwe she dide him binde —
1920 Save upon hir alwey was his mynde
And closid alwey was his perious wounde.
And sise monthes thus we leie bounde,
Bothe he and I, to seym the plaste trouthe,
Til Polypheme had upon us routhe;
1925 And thorugh his grace and mediacion,
He quyt us fre out of that prisoun
And shewed us, of mercy and pité,
After oure sorwe gret humanté.
But Alphenor, yliche of oon entent,
1930 Was with the broad of Cupide brent
And fel his part with many mortal fyf,
Til he so wrought by his sociel wyt
That on a nyght, who was lef or lothe.
- seize
their
eager
them
Too disordered
distress; lost
plainly
judge
preeminence
Although
grew
plain
pity
released
always
brand; burned
was in love; severe attack
caused; cunning
no matter who liked it or not

Book 5

- He stale this mayde, and his weye he gothe
 1935 Thorough help of men with him at that tyme.
 But on the morwe at the hour of pryme
 Poliphemus gan us for to sewe,
 Whos myghti hond we myght nat eschewe;
 And swiche assaut on us thei gan make
 That of force thei han the mayde take
 From Alphenor, maugre al his rage.
 And Polyphemus unto my damage
 With his knyghtes so sore upon me lay
 That I myght unnethe eskape away
 1945 To save my lyf, compassid enviroun,
 To deth purwyd of that champioune.
 But whan I sawe ther was non other geyn,
 To fle the deth, shortly for to seyn,
 While this geaunt most fersly on me sette,
 1950 With my swerd oute his eye I smette;
 And unto ship with my companye
 I fledde in haste, that no man myght espie
 Where I becam nor Alphenor my fere.
 And whan the wavys gonne for to clere,
 1955 And gracious wynd gan to us awake,
 Thilk contré we han asoon forsake:
 It was nat hol som for us to abide."
 But of this man, like as wrt Ovide,
 Poliphemus the geaunt, out of drede,
 1960 Had an eye mydde of his forhede,
 Whiche Ulixes smot out at a stroke;
 And like the bowes of a braunchid oke
 Was al his heer and his longe berde —
 On whom to loke childef were afred.
 1965 And whan that he hadde lost his sight,
 Amonge the hilles he renneth day and nyght
 In a rage to fynde hym som refuge,
 Caste roches and grete stones huge
 On every part enviroun the contré,
 1970 On Ulixes avenged for to be.
 Thus seith Ovide in conclusioun;
 In his boke of transformacioun,
- hour of sunrise*
follow
escape
despite
harm
scarcely
surrounded
remedy
struck
companions
subside
rouse
immediately
without a doubt
in the middle of
boughs; branched
children

Troy Book

	<i>Methamorphoseos, ther ye may it se,</i> Whansoevere that your leyser be	<i>leisure</i>
1975	Ceriously the story for to rede. And in writinge forthe I wil procede, How Ulixes, with face ded and pale, To Ydumee tolde forthe his tale, Rehersyng thus, surprised and awapid.	<i>Point by point</i>
1980	"Fro Polipheme whan we wern eskaped, Thorugh oure unhap and infelicite Into an yle myddes of the see We were dryve, whan it gan to nyghte; And Elodium that litel kyngdam hyghte,	<i>misfortune</i>
1985	Wher that Circes, the gret enchaunterease, Thilke tyme was lady and goddesse, That koude hir craft so wondirfully performe, Al sodeynly a man for to transforme To have the liknes (and lesen his resoun)	<i>At that time</i>
1990	Of hors or bere, tigre or lyoun, Wolf or fox, or what hir list devise. Hir dredful craft was shapen in swiche wise: So myghti wern hir straunge pociouns, Her letuaryes and confeccions.	<i>what she pleased to imagine of such a nature</i>
1995	And she also so fair upon to se That fro hir power no man myghte fle. For be the werke of this sorceresse, I was so fonned uppon hir fairnesse That finally thus with me it stood:	<i>infatuated with</i>
2000	That al a yere I with hir abood And pleynly had power noon ne myght For to depart, nouther day ne nyght, So lusti was the lyf that I hadde. In whiche tyme by me a child she hadde,	<i>remained</i>
2005	Right iolly fair and goodly to the sight." And Thelagonius is sothnes he hight, Whiche afterward, I rehers can, By processe wex a manly man. "And be my sotil secré providence,	<i>Extremely truth; was named</i>
2010	Of hir craft I hadde experience, That maugre hir eschauntementes olde.	<i>relate grew to be</i>

Book 5

- I stale away — she myght me nat holde.
 And finally my fate to conclude,
 With my konnyng hir craft I gan delude,
 2015 That with my men I skaped fro her bond
 And went at large fre out of hir lond.
 But al this thing me litel dide availe.
 For on my way as I gan to saile,
 For al my sleight, in a litel while
 2020 I blowe was up into an yle
 Wher Calypso, suster to Circes,
 Was crowned quene and held her scepter in pes;
 Whos craftis wern so myghty and so strong,
 Maugre my wil she held me ther ful long.
 2025 But she in sothe, to speke of wommanhed,
 Of bounte, fredam, and of goodlyhed,
 Surly had so sovereyn excellencie
 That myn abood to me was noon offence.
 But whosoevere therat crye or clappe,
 2030 At the last I skaped fro hir trappe
 And cam to an yle, right as any lyne,
 Whiche specialy thorough high power devyne
 Ordeyned is of yore be myracle —
 As it were, a spiritual oracle —
 2035 A man to have in a temple there
 Sodeyn awnseres of what him list enquire,
 Of questiouns and demaundes alle,
 And of soules what shal eke befalle,
 Whan men ar dede and graven under stoon.
 2040 And I gan axe in the temple anon
 Myn aventures that shuld after swe
 And wher a man myght his fate eschewe;
 And of al this, lyk to myn entent,
 I had awnseres ful convenient —
 2045 Save what befalleth whan a soule is goon,
 Diffynycioune unto me was noon.
 Swiche thing t'asoile acordeth nat to right:
 It is reserved unto Goddes myght
 And exeedeth resoun and wit of man.
 2050 And fro thens forthe to seile I gan,

skill

escaped

without restraint

Calypso

Despite

truth

delay

talk noisily

immediately

Prompt

buried

ask about; immediately

follow

avoid

fining

Precise statement

solve

Troy Book

- Dreven with wynde and no part socoured,
Wher I was lyk to have be devourid
Of Caribdis with his profounde welle,
Wher Sirenes — Meremaydnes — dwelle,
- 2055 That fro the breast with skalis silver shene
Ben of her shap fysches freshe and clene,
And uppermore, Kynde doth compasse
Hem to apere femysyn of face,
Lyk virgines that were of nature
- 2060 Withoute spot, undefouled pure.
And of custom, in wawis as thei flete,
The song of hem is so hevenly swete,
So angelik and ful of armonye
That verrailly the sugred melodie
- 2065 Ravisshe wolde any man aliyve,
Of inly joie almost his herte ryve.
Make a man, of sodeyn highe plesaunce,
Foryete hymself and lese his remembraunce,
Devoide hym clene from his owne thought,
- 2070 Til unwarly he be to meschef brought.
And with her song, or he take kept,
He shal be brought in a mortal slepe;
And thei anoon, it may not be withdrawe,
Wil drenche his ship lowe under the wawe.
- 2075 Thus the swetnes of her hevenly soun
Bringeth a man to confusoun,
Whosoevere by her boundis pace.
But with the lif I eskaped by grace;
For myn erys with wex and gommys clere
- 2080 Were stoppid so that I ne myghte here
Touche nor werble of her instrumentis.
Wherby the resoun of man yblent is.
And finally, thorugh my sotilté,
I and my men ben eskapid fre,
- 2085 Seiling forthe, al mat of werynesse,
Til we cam up with ful gret distresse
At Phenyce, and toke anoon the load,
Cast anker, and oure shippes bond.
But soothly ther it fil us ful unfaire;
- scales; bright
Nature; devise
waves; float
Entrance
internal; break
Withdraw
unexpectedly
before he is aware
revoked
sink
rain
boundaries sail
ears; gums (from plants)
note; melody
blinded
cunning
exhausted
Phoenicia; reached
tied up
truly; bad luck befell at

Book 5

- | | | |
|------|--|--|
| 2090 | For the peple, cruel and contraire,
Only of malis fil on me anoon
And slowe my men almost everychon;
Tresour and good, litel that I hadde,
Was me byraft; and al with hem thei ladde; | hostile
at once
<i>slew; everyone</i>
<i>despoiled; carried off</i> |
| 2095 | And fewe of hem that wer left alive
Thei token hem and put in prisoun blyve.
Thus hath Fortune lad me on her daunce
With litel joie and plenté of meschaunce,
Of whos daunger lerned and expert, | quickly |
| 2100 | I am falle in mesches and povert;
And with gret dool and sorwe ful my breast,
On se and londe, by southe and nat by est
I am com unto youre presence | poverty
sadness |
| 2105 | And have declared plainly in sentence
Myn aventure to youre worthiness,
Of trust only and of feithfulness
That I have to yow in special. | substance
<i>Out of</i> |
| 2110 | And now I have rehersid and told al
To youre highnesse in my beste wyse,
Withoute more — it doth to me suffise." | <i>narrated</i>
<i>distressed</i>
<i>At that time</i> |
| 2115 | And though in hert he was constreyned sore,
Thilke tyme Ulixes spak no more
But held his pes, ful hevy in lokymg.
And Ydumeus lik a gentil kyng | |
| 2120 | Counforted hym al that evere be myght,
And besy was his herte for to light.
And hym besought his hevynesse lete;
And as long as hym list in Crete | comfort
<i>entreated; abandon</i>
<i>he wished</i> |
| 2125 | With hym abide, he made hym sureté
He shulde faren also wel as he
And nat want of what may do him ese.
And whan his sorwe somewhat gan apese, | <i>moderate</i>
<i>reached</i>
<i>go</i> |
| | That his rage drow unto an ende.
Leve he toke and seide he wolde wende
Oute of that londe home to his contré. | |
| | But first the kyng, of fredam and bounté,
Yaf unto hym gret riches and array
And whatsoevere was unto his pay — | <i>liberality</i>
<i>Gave</i>
<i>satisfaction</i> |

Troy Book

- Gold, tresour, and many other thinges;
2130 And at the partyng of these tweyne kynges,
There wer shippes whan him list to saile,
Redy stuffid with meynē and vitaile. *provided; followers*
- And thus Ulices gan hym redy make;
And whan he hathe his leve fully take,
2135 He hasted hym, and toke anoon the se. *hastened*
- And gan saile toward his contré.
But first he went to Kyng Alphenoun,
Whiche passingly hadde affeccioun *greatly; desire*
- To sen Ulices at his homecomyng
2140 And desirous over alle thing
To han of hym newly aqueyntaunce:
For unto hym was inly gret plesaunce *extremely*
- To here hym talke, for his eloquence,
For his wyndam and his highe prudence.
- 2145 And ther he was, after al his smest,
Receyved pleinly with as glad an hert
As evere yit was any maner man
Sithen tyme that the world began; *Since*
- And to encres of his felicitē,
2150 Ther herd he first of Penolope,
His trewe wyf, withoute spot or blame,
Of whom yit grene is the noble fame, *alive*
- Whiche from hir lord, for al his long absence,
In thought nor dede nevir dide offence
- 2155 But soothly was, bothe in chere and dede,
Thorughoute Grece example of wommanhede. *truly; appearance; deed*
- And yit was she, as bokes list expresse,
Thorughoute the world merour of fairnes,
And among Grekis born of highest blood,
- 2160 Called of auctours bothe fair and good; *by authors (see note)*
- And yit seyn bokes of hir, douteles,
Was never noon that had so gret pres
But she hir kepte, chaunging for no newe,
Unto hir lord evere iliche trewe,
- 2165 Of hert ay oon, nat partid into tweyne,
That she is called quene and sovereyne
Of wyfly trouthe in this bokis olde.

Book 5

- And oft, I fynde, hir herte wolde colde;
She turne pale for hir lord so ferre,
In hir closet to heren of the werre,
Of drede she had, and for fere eke quake,
Of fantasies for hir lordes sake;
For his absence, bothe eve and morwe,
Was deth to hir and importable sorwe.
- 2170
2175
2180
2185
2190
2195
2200
2205
- become cold
private room
imaginings
unbearable
mark in all circumstances
happened
at once; in a faint
Lest; pride
By chance or fate pierced
rarely
at night; frighten
siege
think
consider
just punishment lest
good
not at all; blame
describe
- And ay in sothe for joie or any game,
Whan it fel she herd Hectoris name,
In any place anoon she fil awowne
And gan hirsilf al in tressis drowse;
Of wommanhed so she was aferde
To here the slaughter of his mortal swerde,
List hir lord, of knyghtly surquedie.
Hadde of fortune falle in jupartye,
Of hap or sort tames that worthi knyght,
That selde or never she felt hir herte light.
And many dremes anyghtes dide hir gaste,
Al the while that the sege laste;
And every play was venym in hir sight,
Whan that she was from hir owne knyght:
For in this world she had joie noon
Of highe nor lowe, plicinly, but of oon,
For whos sake al myrthe she refuseth.
And whoso be that in his herte museth
Of any woman anything but good,
Of malevolye mevid in his blood,
Lat hym adverte of wisdom and se,
And remembre on Penolope,
For his decent list that he be blamyd.
And, O Guydo, thou shuldest ben ashamed
To seyn of wyves anything but wele;
For in good feith, as fer as I can fele,
Though oon or two do among offence,
She that is good thorough hir providence
Is therof no thing for to wyte.
And though Guydo in his boke endite
The variaunce of Eleyne or Cryseyde
Or Medea, that for sorwe deyde.

Troy Book

- Lete ther ageyn, of right and equité,
The wyfly trouthe of Penolope,
The maydenhed of yonge Policense.
2210 And the goodnes of Ecuba the quene,
Of Cassandra eke the stedfastnes;
And with al this, take the kyndenes
Of Pantasile, withoute variaunce;
And put al this togidre in balaunce,
2215 And ye shal fynde, yif ye list accounte.
Maugre who gruechith, trouthe shal surmounte —
I dar aferme — and bere aweye the pris:
Ther wil no man replie that is wys —
He were to feble in his oppinioun!
2220 And while Ulixes was with Alphenoun,
It was to hym made relacioun
Of an hatful conspiracioun,
That certeyn lordis enviroun his contré
Ravisshe wolde his quene Penolope.
2225 Maugre alle tho that were ther ageyn,
Albe that she was evere ilike pleyn,
In hir trouthe stidefast as a wal.
Yet thei have cast pleynly that she shal
Be take of force, it may nat be eschewed.
2230 But it so be in haste she be reskewed.
For thei hem cast the tyme nat ajourne;
For day and nyght with hir thei sojourne,
Inly in herte for love disamaled.
But of wisdom she hathe hem so delaied
2235 That ther was noon so manly nor so sage
That koude on hir geten avantage,
So avise she was in hir wirkyn.
And whan Ulixes conceyved al this thing,
And fully knewe by open evidence,
2240 And also had in special credence
Sent unto hym fro Penolope,
The mater hool declaringe in secré,
His owne sone Thelamoneus,
He were in herte wood and furious,
2245 And wolde make no delacioun.
- Let him be aware of*
wish to take into account
No matter who complains
described
conspiracy
around
Carry off
Despite
always honest
by; avoided
Unless
planned; deferred
get the better of her
cautious
learned
secret message
grew; mad
delay

Book 5

- But in al haste besoughte Alphenoun,
 The myghti kyng, of his high bounté
 To releve hym in his adversité,
 And that he wold thorough his myghti hond
 2250 Of gentilnes conveye hym to his lond.
 He graunteth hym and seith nat oys nay;
 And bothe two in ful gret array
 Taken the se whan the wynd was good;
 Wel fortuned, for nothing hem withstande,
 2255 Thei be arived and hadde no lettyng,
 Wher Ulysses, as ye han herd, was kyng.
 And secrely anyght thei wer conveied
 To hem that han his ligauice disobeyed;
 And merciles, or thei myght awake,
 2260 In her beddes thei han hem alle take,
 Makyng noon prolongyng til on the morwe,
 But in al hast, for no wyght durst hem borwe,
 Smet of her hedes by jugement final,
 And set hem up on the castel wal,
 2265 Everyche by other endelong the rowe,
 Upon the hour whan the cok gan crowe,
 And thus al nyght thei kept hemselfe cloos,
 Til that Phebus meryly aroos
 In the orient, whan the larke song;
 2270 And tho this kynges with her meyne strong,
 Freshely beseym, entre the cité.
 Who was tho glad but Penelope?
 Who made jolie but this goodly quene,
 Ful desirous hir owne lorde to sene?
 2275 But yif I shulde al in ordre sette
 The grete myrthe thei made whan thei mette,
 Make rebersaile of compleintes olde
 And how thei gan her bestes to unfolde
 Eche to other and list nothing concele,
 2280 And the gladnes that thei inly fele;
 Yif I shulde put al in memorie —
 The rejoisshinge and the hertly glorie
 That his liges made at his comynge,
 The costis eke thei hadde at his metynge.
- assir
once
stood against
obstacle
at night
authority over his vassals
stand surety for
Smete
all along
were on guard
these; followers
brightly clothed
if
open
with
inwardly
if
vassals
expenses; meeting him

Troy Book

2285	The gifte grete and presentis riche (In al this world, I trowe, noon ilyche) — It were to long tariyng for my boke — And how that he newe assuraunce toke Of his lordis and his liges alle,	gifts
2290	And how that thei to his grace falle, The chere he made eke to Alphenoun Of gentilnes thorough his highe renoun, And how the daughter, inly debonaire, Of Alphenoun, Nausia the faire,	vassals <i>came to his favor</i> gracious
2295	By Ulices mediacious Iwedded was unto Thelamoun, Born by discent (ther may no man say nay) To rejoissh his crowne after his day — And thus cam in by his purviaunce	have possession of
2300	Of two regnes the myghti alliaunce — And how al this brought was to the knotte, Men wolde deme me pleinly to sotte To presume of oppinioun For to delate a descripcoun,	conclusion foolish
2305	Sithen Guydo, touching but the chef In this mater, of stile was but bref, Shortly rehersing how Kyng Alphenoun Repeirid is hom to his regioune And Ulices in his chefe cité	expand main points writing
2310	Abood stille with Penelope, Where I hym leve in joie and in solace Til Antropos liketh to purchase For to fioche finally the date, The thred untwyne of his lyves fate.	Returned arrange determine cut

[Lydgate now turns to the story of Pyrrhus and follows his author in describing the descent of Pyrrhus's line. Pyrrhus tries to restore his grandparents Peleus and Thetis, whom Atastus has banished from their realm. He lands in the region where they are exiled. Dressed as a pauper, he kills Atastus's two sons and then, dressing in purple, he tells Atastus he is one of Priam's sons, imprisoned by Pyrrhus. Atastus asks where Pyrrhus is, and Pyrrhus shows him the cave where Peleus is hiding. As Pyrrhus prepares to slay Atastus, Peleus and Thetis intervene to stop him. Pyrrhus and Atastus agree to divide the kingdom of Thessaly, and then Atastus resigns the kingdom to Pyrrhus. Afterwards, Pyrrhus falls in love with Orestes's wife,

Book 5

Hermione, though Andromache, Hector's widow, is now his wife and he has a son, Achilleidos, by her. He carries off Hermione, and the two women are soon at odds. After Hermione writes to Menelaus, complaining that Pyrrhus cherishes Andromache more than her, Menelaus tries to kill Andromache but fails. Afterwards, Orestes slays Pyrrhus at Delos, where he has gone to pray for Achilles. The kingship of Thessaly passes to Achilleidos. When he comes of age, Achilleidos resigns the kingdom to his half-brother, Lamedonite, Hector's son, who frees all the Trojan captives. At this point, Guido adds the story of King Menon, whom Achilles slew when he tried to rescue Troilus. After Menon's queen dies, she appears at his tomb next to Troilus, takes his bones out of the tomb, puts them in a chest made of gold and precious stones, and then disappears. Some say she was an angel or a goddess or the soul of the king, but these matters surpass my knowledge. Lydgate turns at this point to his final chapter, the fate of Ulysses (lines 2315-2936).]

- | | | |
|------|--|----------|
| | Lowe on my knees, now I muste loue | bow |
| | To thilke god that maketh men to route | more |
| | And causeth folke to have glad sweenes, | dreams |
| 2940 | Bothe at morwe and on lusti evenes, | |
| | Whan Morpheus, with his slepi wond, | wand |
| | Whiche that he holdeth alweie in his hond, | ever |
| | Hath marked hem ageyn the dirke nyght, | |
| | To maken men bothe mery and lyght. | |
| 2945 | And somwhile for to han gladnes, | |
| | And sodeynly to falle in hevynes, | |
| | Lyk as to hem he yeveth evydence | |
| | By sondry signes in his apparence. | |
| | Unto that lord now moste I mekely preie | |
| 2950 | At this tyme my stile to conveye. | pon |
| | Of Ulixes the dreme to discribe. | |
| | The laste of alle he hadde be his lyve, | |
| | Declaryng hym be tokenes ful notable | |
| | And by signes verray demonstrable, | |
| 2955 | As he slepte ageyn the pale mome, | moon |
| | His fatal day that shulde folwe sone. | |
| | For it fel thus: as he abedde lay | happened |
| | After mydnyght, tofore the morwe gray, | |
| | Hym thought he sawe appere a creature | |
| 2960 | To his sight celestial of figure — | |
| | Noon erthely thing but verrailly devyne, | truly |
| | Of port, of chere wonder semynne. | |

Troy Book

	And as hym sempte in his fantasye, Like a thing sent oute of fairie;	imagining <i>land of supernatural creatures</i>
2965	For the bewte of hir goodly face Recounforted pleynly al the place, Mosete surmountynge and most sovereyme; And the clerkes of hir eyne tweyne Al sodeynli, or men myght adverse,	surpassing <i>notice</i>
2970	Perce wolde evene to the herete — Diffence soon myghte be devysed. And Ulices, with hir luke supprysed, Gam hir beholde alweie more and more And in his slep for to sige sore,	continually
2975	Presyng ay with ful besy peyne Hir t'enbracen in his armys tweyme; But ay the more he presed hir to se, Ay the more from hym she gan to flee; And ay the more he gan to purswe,	Striving; urgently
2980	She ageynwarde gan hym to eschwe, So contrarie to hym was Fortune, And whan she sawe he was importune, She axed hym shortly what he wolde; And he to hir the platte trouthe tolde.	escape <i>persistent</i> <i>wanted</i> <i>plain</i>
2985	"Certis," quod he, "my lyves emperesse, Wher that ye ben woman or goddes I can not deme nor jugen half aright. I am so dirked and blendid in my sight; But I dar wel affermyn in this place,	<i>clouded</i>
2990	My lyf, my deth stant hooly in your grace, More of merci requiryng thanne of right To rew me on me, whiche am your owne knyght. And of pitē and compassion Goodly to sen to my savacious:	<i>power</i> <i>feel pity</i>
2995	For my desire but I may fulfille, This silfe nyght to have of yow my wille. To my recure I can no remedie, For lak of routhe but I mosie dye.	<i>unless</i> <i>recovery</i> <i>pity</i>
3000	Now have I al atwese hope and drede Mysilf declared to youre wommanhede." And after that she kepte hir clos a while,	<i>between</i> <i>guarded</i>

Book 5

- And ful sadly gan on hym to smyle,
And, as it is put in remembraunce,
Seyde unto hym, with sobre countenaunce.
gravely
- 3005 "Sothly," quod she, "thin affeccioun
Wolde fully turne to confusoun
Of us bothe; it is so perillous,
So inly mortal and contagious
That utterly ther geyne may no red,
pernicious
3010 But oon of us moste anoon be ded:
This is the fyn of the hatful chaunce
That shulde folwe after oure plesaunce."
altogether; be no remedy
at once
end; fortune
- 3015 And as Ulixes gan to neyghere,
Beholdyng ay on hir hevenaly cher,
Whereas she stood upright on the grounde,
He sawe hir holde a spere longe and rounde,
The hed therof al of burned stelc,
Forged new and grounde wonder wele;
And theruppon in his avisoun
3020 He sawe a baner blased up and doun,
The felde therof al of colour ynde,
Ful of fysshes betyn, as I fynde,
shaped by hammering into a thin sheet (see note)
And in som bokys like as it is tolde,
In the myddes a large crowne of golde.
adorned with heraldic devices
blue
middle
- 3025 And or that she turne gan hir face,
Likly anoon to parte oute of the place,
She spak to hym and seyde in wordes pleyn:
"This ful tokene of partyng of us tweyn
Foreveremore, nowther for soor nor swete,
before
directly
- 3030 After this day never agrym to mete."
And disapering, anoon hir leve she toke.
And after that he sodeynly awoke
And gan to muse in his fantasie
What thing this dreme myghte sygnyfie;
imagination (see note)
- 3035 But wher it ment owther evel or good,
The secrenes he nat undirstood,
For it surmountid sothly his resoun.
Therefore he sent thorugh his regioune
For swiche as wern sotil expositours
exceeded
- 3040 Of fate or sort, or crafti devinours,
such; skillful

Troy Book

	For alle the clerkis soget to his crowne, T'assemble in oon his swene to expowne. And whan thei knewe be informacioun The maner hool of his avisoun.	subject together; expound
3045	Thei conclude, accordyng into oon, The tyme aprocheth and shal come anoon That oon that is nexte of his kynrede With a spere shulde make hym bledē.	agreement
	Lat se wher be his fate can remewe Sith it is hard destynē to eschewe, As seyn tho folke in ther oppinioun That werke and trusse on constellacion.	escape Since; avoid
	And Ulysses, musyng on this tale, Chaungeth colour and gan wexe pale,	astrology pondering
3055	Wonder dredful and ful of fantasies, Gam in hymself seke remedyes To voide aweie thing that wil nat be: He stareth brode, but he may nat se;	fears
	His inward loke was with a cloude shent.	avoid looks with open eyes
3060	But wenys he to have be prudent Made calle his sone Thelamoun, And to be take and shette up in presoun, He supposyng fully in his wit	judgment; clouded thinking (see note)
	Fro alle meschef therby to go quyte.	Caused to be summoned
3065	He nat adverteth nor ne toke noon bede To the sharpnes of the speris hed, Nor to the fysshes in the baner bete, Nor to the se, wher thei swymme and flete,	mind free
	Nor of the quene that called is Circes.	consider
3070	That signes brought of warre and nat of pes, Nor of the crowne, tokene of dignitē Of oon that shal holde his royal se Mid the wawes, bothe fel and wood,	hammered into shape
	Amonge the fysshes in the large flood.	float
3075	And he shal make the devisioun, Toforne remembred in th'avisioun, Ageyn his wil, of verray ignoraunce, And execute the fatal parviaunce	cruel; mad he (Telegonus) As foretold
	Up of the dreme with his spere of steele,	true foresight

Book 5

- | | | |
|------|---|---|
| 3080 | Whiche Ulices considereth nevereadle,
Nor to no wyght hath suspecioun
But to his sone called Thelamoun,
That is closed and shet up in a tour.
And Ulices with coste and gret labour | <i>nor at all</i>
<i>person</i> |
| 3085 | Fro day to day doth his besynes
For hymself to make a forteresse,
Bilt on a roche, of lym and square stony,
Depe dished aboute for the monys,
That no man may entre on no side, | <i>time</i>
<i>occasion</i> |
| 3090 | Where he casteth al his lyve t'abide
With certeyn men chose in special,
Night and day to wache on the wal
That no wyght shalde have noon entré,
But it so falle that he be secre, | <i>place</i> |
| 3095 | Knowe of olde, and to counciil sworne.
Now as the story rehersed hath toforne,
The olde fool, this dotard Ulices,
A sone hadde begeten on Circes —
Freshe and lusti, yonge and coraious — | <i>Unless; happen; discreet</i>
<i>sworn to secrecy</i>
<i>before</i> |
| 3100 | And he was called Thelagonyus,
Born in the se amonge the flodis rage,
That was also, for to rekne his age,
Fyve and twenti yere or thereaboute.
But of his fader he was ay in doute | |
| 3105 | What man he was or who it myghte be.
Beinge thereof in noon sureté,
Til on a day he, desirous to knowe,
To his moder fil on knees lowe,
Beseching hir goodly (and nat spare) | <i>incessantly</i> |
| 3110 | Of his fader the trouthe to declare;
What he was and where he shulde dwelle,
He besought that she wolde telle.
But soothly she long and many dales
Of prudence put hym in delayes. | |
| 3115 | Til that she sawe she myght have no reste,
So importune he was in his requeste;
And whanne she knewe ther was non other bose,
Fro point to point she tolde hym crop and rose | <i>persistent</i>
<i>remedy</i>
<i>the whole</i> |

Troy Book

- Of Ulixes and where that he was kyng.
3120 And he anoon made no lettyng. *delay*
But toke leve — it may no better be —
And seide pleinly he wolde his fader se,
Wherof the quene gan in herte colde. *became cold*
But whan she sawe she myght him nat withholde.
3125 She hym besought with chere debonaire *face kindly*
That he wolde sone ageyn repeire. *return*
And forthe he seileth onward on his wey
Withoutte abood the silfe same day
By many port and many fer contré.
3130 Til he was brought there he wolde be —
To Achaia, a lond of gret renoun.
And he gan cerche thorugh the regioun
After the place and paleis principal
Whereas the kyng helde his se royal; *royal seat*
3135 And he so long in the contré rood,
Til he was taught where the kyng abood,
Ther Ulixes was shet up in mewt, *biding*
To whiche place in haste he gan purswe,
A gret party releved of his sorwe.
3140 And on a Monday, erly be the morwe,
Unto the brigge the righte weic he toke *drawbridge*
And fond a portre deynous of his loke;
And lowly first he gan hym to preie
That he wold goodly hym conveie
3145 Into the courte and make no tariyng,
For a message he hadde to the kyng.
But proudly he denyed hym the gate,
And shortly seide that he cam to late
To entre there in any maner wyse.
3150 And ungodly gan hym to dispise, *treat with contempt*
Frowarde of speche and malicious. *Threatening*
But in al haste Thelagonyus,
As he that was in herte nat afferde,
The proude portre hente be the berde
3155 And with his fyste rooff his chawle boon, *seized*
That he fil ded, muer as a stoon; *broke his jaw bone*
And other eke that hym tho withstande *silent*

Book 5

- | | | |
|------|--|-------------------------|
| | He made proudly to lepen into flood; | water |
| | And whan mo cam to make resistance, | |
| 3160 | He hent a swerde be manly violence, | seized |
| | And furiously in his irous tene | rage |
| | (The story seith) he slowe of hem fistene, | |
| | Hymself almoste wounded to the deth, | |
| | And gan, forwery, sothly faile breth. | extremely weary, truly |
| 3165 | And Ulysses, what for noise and soun, | |
| | To the brigge is descendid doun, | drawbridge |
| | Findinge his men at entré of the gate | |
| | Ded and slain be ful mortal hate; | |
| | And he ful irous hent anoon a darte, | seized immediately |
| 3170 | Of aventure stonding tho aparte, | By chance |
| | And cruelly caste at Thelagoun. | |
| | But the stroke, as in conclusoun, | |
| | Damageth nat, for it glood aside; | slipped |
| | And he for haste no lenger wolde abide, | |
| 3175 | Heit up the darte withoute more areste, | Snatched; delay |
| | And smot the kyng lowe under the breste | |
| | Thorugh the ribbes, shortly for to seie, | |
| | That of the wounde he moste nedis deie, | |
| | Having tho noon oppinioun | no idea |
| 3180 | That he was kyng, nor suspiciooun, | |
| | Nor that he had his owne fader slawe. | slain |
| | Whiche faste gan to his ende drawe; | |
| | His wounde was so dedly and so kene | |
| | That he myght himsilve nat sustene, | |
| 3185 | But pale and wan to the grunde gan glide, | fall |
| | His men abooste upon every side, | |
| | That besy wern to help hym and releve. | assist |
| | But his sore gan so ake and greve | wound; ache; cause pain |
| | That he wel felte that he muste be ded; | |
| 3190 | But abrayding, as he lifte up his hed, | gaining consciousness |
| | Having as yit mynde and good resoun, | |
| | Remembre gan on his avisoun | |
| | And how it was tolde him oute of drede | certainly |
| | That oon that was nexte of hys kynrede, | |
| 3195 | Descendid doun from his owne lyne, | |
| | His swevene shal performe to the fyne | realize fully |

Troy Book

- And accomplisshē it with a darte of stèle.
And for he coude nat conceyve wele
What that he was nor who it shulde be,
3200 He bad anoon unto his meynē,
Withoute harme or any violence,
Pette anoon unto his presence
The yonge man whiche at the gate stood,
That hath that day shad so moche blood.
3205 And whan he was aforn Ulixes brought,
Of hym he hath enquiered oute and sought
Firste of his kyn and nexte of his contré.
"Certis," quod he, "I was born in the se,
Amonge fysshes myd the wawes grene."
3210 And seide also his moder was a quene
Called Circes, of whom the name is kouthe
Bothe est and west and right fer be southe,
And tolde also his fader was a kyng.
That hym begat at his homecomyng
3215 Fro Troye toun toward his contré.
"And as my moder Circes tolde me
Secretly that he Ulixes highte,
Of wham desirous fer to han a sighte,
I entred am this myghti regioun,
3220 And have pursayd unto this dongoun
Only in hope my fader to have seyn;
But I se wel my labour is in weym.
And sith in soth losse is my traveyl
And that it may on no side aveyle,
3225 It were foly lenger here to dwelle.
Lo, here is al that I can you telle
Of my kynred; axeth me no more."
With that Ulixes gan to syghe sore
For lak of blood, as he that was ful pale,
3230 And seide anoon, whan he herde his tale:
"Now wote I wel my woful destinē
Fulfilled is — it may noon other be!
Now wote I wel that it is to late
To grucche or strive ageyn my pitous fate;
3235 For my sone, as clerkes whylom tolde,

because

immediately; followers

Fetch

shed

before

inquired into

waves

known

homeward voyage

was named

carrie keep

truth; effort

ask

greatly

immediately

know

complain

once

Book 5

- Hath made an ende of my daies olde,
 Theron expectant, with peynes ful grevous!"
 And with that word Thelagonyus,
 Whan he wist ageyn Natures lawe
 That he, alias, hadde his fader slawe,
 Whiche in that lond longe bar his crowne,
 Withoute abood he fil anoon aswowne,
 His clothes rent, his yowe here totorn.
 "Allas," quod he, "that evere was I born!
 For cursid is my woful destiné
 And my fortune, whiche I may nat flee!
 Cursid my sort, cursid myn aventure,
 And I, refus of every creature,
 Forwaried eke my disposicioun!
 And cursid is my constellacioun,
 Cursed also and infortunat
 The hour in whiche my fader me begat!
 So wolde God withoute lenger red,
 T'aquilten hym anoon, that I were ded,
 To leie my lif for his deth to borwe!"
 And whan the kyng sawe his grete sorwe
 And wist he was his sone of Circos born,
 By many signe rehersed heretoform,
 He unto hym anoon forgaf his deth,
 As he myght for want and lak of breth,
 So importable was his passioun.
 And his sone ycalled Thelamoun,
 Whiche hath in presoun so many day be shet,
 To his presence in al haste was fet,
 Whiche, whan he saw his fader in swiche point,
 Upon the deth stondyng in disjoint,
 And knewe also and the trouthe founde
 By whom he had his laste dedly wounde,
 A swerd he hent and mortally ironis
 And wolde have ronne on Thelagonius,
 Of highe dispit avenged for to be.
 But Ulixes of faderly pité
 Made his men hold hym and restreyne;
 And amyd of al his grevous peyne,

Troy Book

- 3275 By his prudence — and that was don anoon —
He made his sones for to be al oon
And gaf in charge unto Thelamoun,
Of enternes and affeccioun
And of hool herte, feyned neveradel,
- 3280 Al his lyve to love his brother wel.
To parte with hym tresour, gold, and good,
As to the nexte born of al his blood.
And tho in soth was no lenger taried
That Ulysses rially was caried
- 3285 Of Achaya to the chefe cité.
And after that lyved daies thre,
Withoute more, and tho gaf up the gost.
I can nat seyn pleynly to what cost
After this lyf that his soule is goon,
- 3290 But in a towmbe of metal and of stoon
The body was closed and yshet;
And after that maked was no let
That Thelamoun with gret solennité
Icrowned was in his fadres see,
- 3295 Swerd and septer delivered to his hand
Of Achaya, a ful worthi lond.
Right abundaunt of tresour and of good.
And Thelagoun with hym ther aboode
A yere complei, wel cherisshed in his sight,
- 3300 And of his brother toke the ordre of knyght;
And for hym list no lenger ther abide,
The kyng for hym wysly gan provide,
That he with gold, gret tresour, and plente
Repeireid is home to his contré;
- 3305 And his moder, of age were sad.
Of his repeire passingly was glad.
As she that sawe be hir sorserie
He skaped was many jupartie,
Many pereil, and many gret distresse.
- 3310 And after that she fil into seknesse
And hir dette yalde unto nature.
Whiche eskape may no creature
In al this world that is here lyvynge.

Book 5

- After whos deth his sone was made Kyng
3315 Of Aulydos, the merveilous contré,
As I have tolde, enclosed with a see,
Amonge rokkes, wher many shippes drowne;
And sixti yere ther he bar his crowne,
This manly man, Thelagonys.
3320 And his brother, Thelamonyus,
Regned also in his regioune
Seventi wynter, as made is mencioune.
And after that thei made a royal ende,
And bothe two to Iupiter thei wende,
3325 To regne there among the sterres bright.
- But now the lanter and the clere light
Is wastid oute of Frigius Daret.
Whilom of Troye wryter and poete.
Guyde have I noon, forthe for to passe:
3330 For evene here in the silfe place
He floched hath the boundis of his stile,
At the sege he present al the while;
And ay in oon with hem dide abide
Dites the Greke on the tother side;
3335 And bothe two as in her writyng
Ne varie nat but in litel thing
Touching mater, as in special,
That is notable or historial.
I do no fors of incidentes smale,
3340 Of whiche in sooth it is but litel tale,
Save this Dites maketh mencioune
Of the noumbre slayen at the toun
Lastinge the sege, affermynge out of drede
Eyghte hundrid thousand and six wer ther dede
3345 On Grekis side, upright in the felde;
And as Dares also there behelde,
On Troye party in the werre kene
Six hundrid thousand seventi and sixtene
Were slayen there — in Guydo ye may se —
3350 With hem that cam to helpe the cité
Fro many coost and many regioune
- Aulis*
surrounded
Jupiter
eastern; bright
Darius
Once
to continue on to a new topic
set the limit of his writing
alway; agreement
Dicrys; other
pay no heed
truth; account
During; certainly
country

Troy Book

- In diffence and reskus of the toun.
And ful ten yere, so as I can caste,
And sixe monthes the myghti sege laste
3355 Or it was gete — Dares wrat hymsilve —
And overmore compleat dayes twelve
Or Grekes hadde ful poccisoun,
By fals engyn of the Greke Synoun,
Like as toforn rehersid was but late.
- I have no more Latyn to translate
After Dites, Dares, nor Guydo;
And me to adden any more thereto
Than myn auctours specefie and seyn,
The occupacioun sothly wer but veyn.
- 3365 Lik a maner of presumpcioun.
And tyme compleat of this translacioun
By just rekenyng and accountis clere
Was a thousand and fourre hundrid yere,
And twenti ner — I knowe it out of drede —
- 3370 After that Crist resseyved oure manhede
Of hir that was Emperesse and Quene
Of hevene and helle and maide clene —
The eyghte yere by computacioun
Suyng after the coronacioun
- 3375 Of hym that is most gracious in werkynge,
Herry the Fytthe, the noble worthi kyng
And protector of Brutis Albyoun,
And called is thorugh his highe renoun,
Thorugh his growes and his chivalrie.
- 3380 Also fer as passeth clowde or skye,
Of Normaundie the myghti conquerour.
For thorugh his knyghthod and diligent labour,
Maugre alle tho that list hym to withseyn,
He hath conquered his herytage ageyn
- 3385 And by his myghti prudent governaunce
Recured eke his trewe title of Fraunce,
That whoso liste loken and unfolde
The pedegrew of cronycles olde
And cerchen bokes ywritte longe aforne,
- 3390 He shal fynde that he is justly born
- estimate
Before victory was achieved
Before
cunning
before; recently
relate
labor
time for finishing
surely
Following
deeds
Despite; wish; resist
Recovered also
pedigree (genealogical tables)
search; written; before

Book 5

- To regne in Fraunce by lyneal discent.
 And onward now he is made regent
 Of thilke lond duryng his fader lyf,
 Of his goodnes to voide werre and stryf.
- 3395 He to rejoisse withoute more delay
 Septer and crowne after the kynges day,
 As it is clerly in conclusioun
 Enrolld up in the convencioune;
- And thanne I hope the tyme fortunat
 Of the olde worlde called aureat
 Resorte shal, by influence of grace,
 That cruel Mars shal no more manace
- With his lokis furious and wood,
 By false aspectus for to shede blood
- 3405 Atwene the folkes of this rewmys tweyne,
 Whiche every wyght oughte to compleyne.
 But as I trust in myn oppinioun,
 This worthi kyng of wisdom and resoun
- And of knyghthod shal so doon his peyne
 3410 To maken oon that longe hath be tweyne.
 I mene thus: that Yngelond and Fraunce
 May be al oon withoute variaunce,
 Oute of hertis old rancour to enchase
- By influence of his myghti grace.
- 3415 That called is of clerkis douteles
 The sovereyn lord and the prince of pes.
 And I hope his grace shal now reyne
 To sette reste atwene this rewmys tweyne:
- For in his power soothly stondeth al,
- 3420 And alliaunce of the blod royal.
 That is knet up by bonde of mariage,
 Of werre shal voide aweie the rage,
 To make pes with brighte bemyshynge.
- And on that is called Kateryne
- 3425 And namyd is right good and faire also
 Shal be mene atwixe bothe two,
 Of grace enprentid in hir wommanhede,
 That to compleyne we shal have no nede.
- And I hope hir gracious arryvalle
- from now on
 that same
 do away with
 have possession of
 treaty
 golden
 Restored
 astral influences
 realms
 endeavor
 disharmony
 banish
 truly
 drive
 one
 intermediary
 strongly marked

Troy Book

- 3430 Into this land shal so moche availle
That joie, honour, and prosperite
Withoutoutrouble of al adversite
Repeire shal and al hertly plesaunce,
Plesaunce, welfare, and falsom abundaunce.
*Return
great
near and far
conflict*
- 3435 Pes and quiete, bothe nyghe and ferre,
Withoutoutrife, debat, or any werre,
Mesches, povert, nede, or indygence,
With ful coessyng of deth and pestilence —
Sothly, al this I hope ye shal sen
Truly
- 3440 Come into land with this noble quene,
That we shal seyn of hert and feyne nought:
Blessed be she that al this hath us brought!
And he that hath thorough myght of his werkynge,
Of his knyghthod concluded al this thing.
*deeds
brought about*
- 3445 And swiche mervailles in armis don and wrought,
And his purpos fully aboute brought
Of highe wisdam set in his inward sight,
Rejoisshyng al that longeth to his right,
And highest sit of worthiness in glorie
*faculty of judgment
Taking possession*
- 3450 With the scepter of conquest and victorie —
I pracie to God only for his beste,
Whan he hath al set in pes and rest
And is ful put in clere pocessioun
Of al that longeth to his subjeccioun.
belongs; power of authority
- 3455 To sende hym home with as gret honour
As evere yit hadde any conquerour,
Longe after in joie and in quyete
For to regnem in his royal sete.
Thus shal I ay — ther is no more to seye —
yet
- 3460 Day and nyght for his expletit ypreye
Of feythful herte and of hool entent,
That whylom gaf me in commaundement
Nat yore ago, in his faderes tyme,
The sege of Troye on my maner to ryme.
*success pray
once gave
long*
- 3465 Moste for his sake, to speke in special.
Although that I be boistous and rual,
He gaf me charge this story to translate,
Rude of konnyng, called John Lydgate.
*untought; unrefined
gave
learning*

Book 5

- Monke of Burie be professioun,
 3470 Usyng an habite of perfeccions,
 Albe my lyf acorde nat thereto.
 I feyne nat; I wote wel it is so —
 It nedeth nat witnesse for to calle;
 Record I take of my brethren alle,
 That wil nat faille at so gret a nede.
 And al that shal this noble story rede
 I beseche of support and of grace
 Ther I offend in any maner place
 Or whersoever that thei fynde errorur,
 3480 Of gentilnesse to shewe this favour:
 Benygnely for to done her peyne
 To correcte rather than disdeyne.
 For wel wot I moche thing is wrong,
 Falsly metrid, bothe of short and long;
 3485 And yif thei shuld han of al disdeyn,
 It is no drede, my labour wer in veyn.
 Late ignoraunce and rudnesse me excuse:
 For yif that ye plasty al refuse,
 For certeyn fautes whiche ye shal fynde,
 3490 I doute nat, my thank is set behynde;
 For in metring though ther be ignoraunce,
 Yet in the story ye may fynde plesaunce
 Touching substiaunce of that myn auctor writy.
 And thoughte so be that any word myssit,
 3495 Amendeth it with chere debonaire;
 For an error to hyndren and appaire
 That is nat seide of purpos nor malys
 It is no worshippe to hym that is wys;
 And no wyght gladly so sone yeveth lak
 3500 (Specialy behynden at the bake)
 As he in sothe that cam no skyl at al.
 He goth ful hool that never hadde fal.
 And I nat fynde, of newe nor of olde,
 For to deme ther is noon so bolde
 3505 As he that is blent with unkonnyng —
 For blind Baiard cast pereil of nothing.
 Til he stumble myddes of the lake —
- Wearing holiness
Although
know
- Call to witness
- Where
- Kindly; endeavor
know
- if
Undoubtedly; would be
Let
if; plainly; reject
- given up (see note)
- be unsuitable
mood kindly
disparage; speak badly of
- honor
person; censure
- truly; knows no craft
safely
- blinded by ignorance
perceived
in the middle; pool

Troy Book

- | | | |
|------|---|---|
| | And noon so redy for to undirtake | criticize |
| | Than he is sooth nor bolder to seie wers | truly |
| 3510 | That kan no skyl on prose nor on vers; | knows; craft |
| | Of alle swiche that can nat be stille, | |
| | Litel forse wher thei seie good or ill. | <i>It matters little</i> |
| | For unto hem my boke is nat direct | |
| | But to swiche as haven in effect | such |
| 3515 | On symple folke ful compassion, | |
| | That goodly can by correccions | |
| | Amende a thing and hindre nevereadel, | <i>disparage not at all</i> |
| | Of custom ay redy to seie wel. | |
| | For he that was gronde of wel-saying | |
| 3520 | In al hys lyf hyndred no makyn, | <i>disparaged no poetic composition</i> |
| | My maister Chaucer, that founde ful many spot; | <i>very many blemishes</i> |
| | Hym liste nat pinche nor gruche at every blot, | <i>carp; complain</i> |
| | Nor meve hymself to parturbe his reste | |
| | (I have herde telle), but seide alweile the best, | <i>always</i> |
| 3525 | Suffring goodly of his gentilnes | |
| | Ful many thing embracid with rudnes. | <i>compositions enclosed by</i> |
| | And yif I shal shortly hym discryve, | <i>if</i> |
| | Was never noon to this day alyve, | |
| | To rekne alle, bothe yonge and olde, | <i>take account of</i> |
| 3530 | That worthi was his ynkhorn for to holde. | |
| | And in this lond yif ther any be | <i>if</i> |
| | In borwe or toun, village or cite | |
| | That konnyng hath his tracis for to swe, | <i>skill; written practices to follow</i> |
| | Wher he go brood or be shet in mwe. | <i>Whether; is free; confined</i> |
| 3535 | To hym I make a direccions | |
| | Of this boke to han inspecioun, | |
| | Besechymg hem with her prudent loke | |
| | To race and skrape thoroughoute al my boke, | <i>erase; scrape off (text)</i> |
| | Voide and adde wher hem semeth nede; | <i>Delete</i> |
| 3540 | And though so be that thei nat se rede | |
| | In al this boke no rethorikes newe, | <i>elegant expressions</i> |
| | Yit I hope thei shal fynde trewe | <i>Nevertheless</i> |
| | The story pleyn, chefly in substaunce. | |
| | And whoso liste to se variaunce | |
| 3545 | Or worldly thing wrought be daies olde, | <i>wishes; inconsistency</i> |
| | In this boke he may ful wel beholde | |

Book 5

- Chauge of Fortune, in hir cours mutable,
 Selde or nat feithful outhir stable —
 Lordes, princes from her roialte
 3550 Sodeinly brought in adversite,
 And kynges eke plouget in povert,
 And for drede darynge in desert;
 Unwar slaughter compassed of envie,
 Mordre execut by conspirasie.
- 3555 Awaite liggyng, falsbede, and tresoun,
 And of kyngdammys sodeyn eversioun;
 Ravysshing of wommen for delyt,
 Rote of the werre and of mortal despit.
 Fals mayntenaunce of avouterye.
- 3560 Many worthi causyng for to dye.
 Synne ay concludynge, whoso taketh hede,
 Vengaunce unwar for his final mede:
 To declare, that in al worldly lust,
 Who loke aright, is but litel trust,
- 3565 As in this boke exampyle ye shal fynde,
 Yif that ye list emprente it in your mynde —
 How al passeth and halt here no sojour,
 Wastyng away as doth a somer flour,
 Riche and pore, of every maner age.
- 3570 For oure lyf here is but a pilgrymage,
 Meynt with labour and with moche wo,
 That yif men wolde taken hede therio
 And toforn prudently adverte,
 Litel joie thei shuld han in her herte
- 3575 To sette her trust in any worldly thing;
 For ther is nouther prince, lord, nor kyng.
 Be exampyle of Troye, like as ye may se,
 That in this lif may have ful surete.
 Therfore, to Hym that starf uppon the Rode,
- 3580 Suffringe deth for oure alder goode,
 Lyfte up youre hertis and thinke on Him among:
 For be ye nevere so myghti nor so strong.
 Withoute Hym al may nat availle;
 For He can yif victorie in bataille
- 3585 And holde a felde, shortly to conclude,
- Seldom
- also overwhelmed by poverty
- barking in wild regions
- Unforeseen; devised
- Lying in ambush
- kingdom; overthrow
- Carrying off
- Cause; hatred
- adultery
- Sin; resulting in
- unforeseen; reward
- desire
- If; wish; imprint
- holds
- mind
- if
- before; consider
- their
- their
- died; Cross
- good of us all
- give

Troy Book

- With a fewe ageyn gret multitude.
And be grace He maketh princes stronge,
And worthi kynges for to regne longe,
And tirauntis sodeynly oppresse
be put down
3590 (Throwe hem doua for al her gret richesse);
And in His hond power He reserveth
Eche man t'quite liche as he disserveth.
To whom I prele with devocioun,
With al myn herte and hool affeccioun
3595 That He list graunt longe contenuaunce,
Prosperitē, and good perseveraunce,
Helthe, welfare, victorie, and honour
Unto that noble myghti conquerour,
Herry the Fyfthe, toforn yspecefied,
before mentioned
3600 So that his name may be magnified
Here in this lyf up to the sterres clere
And after that above the synthe spere,
Whan he is ded, for to han a place.
This pracie I God for to send hym grace,
glorified
3605 At whos biddynge, as I tolde late,
First I began the Sege to translate;
And now I have hooly in his honour
Executed the syn of my labour.
just now
3610 Unto alle that shal this story se,
With humble herte and al humylitē
This litel boke lowly I betake,
It to supporte, and thus an ende I make.
Siege of Troy
end
commit

Envoy

- Most worthi prince, of knyghthod sours and welle,
Whos highe renoun thorugh the world doth shine,
And alle other in manhood dost excelle,
Of merit egal to the worthi nyne,
5 And born also by discent of lyne
As rightful eyr by title to atteyne,
To bere a crowne of worthi rewmys tweyne,

And also fer as Phebus in his spere
From est to west shadeth his bermys bright
10 And Lucyna, with a shrowdid chere,
Goth compas rounde with hir pale light,
Thou art reckned for the beste knyght,
To be registered worthi as of name
15 In the highest place of the hous of fame,

To holde a palme of knyghthod in thin hond
For worthines and for highe victorie,
As thou that art drad on se and lond,
And evermore with laude, honour, and glorie,
For just conquest to be put in memorie,
20 With a crowne made of laurer grene
Upon thin hed, tofore that famus quene —

Whilom ordeyned only for conquerours,
Stable of herte, with longe perseveraunce,
And gaf nat up til thei wer victours,
25 Emprises take for no sodeyn chaunce,
Whos name ay floureth with newe remembraunce
And fadeth nat of yeris yore agoon,
Amonge whiche thou maist be set for oon.

fountainhead

*Nine Worthy
lineal descent*

sphere

considered (see note)

hand

*revered
praise*

*laurel
before*

Long ago

gave

*Undertakings
prospers
long past
you may be reckoned*

Troy Book

- For thorough the world in every region
Reportid is with fame that fletch wyde
That naturellly thi condicoun
On thing begonne is knyghtly to abide
And for the tyme manly sette aside
Reste and ese, what cost theron be spent,
Til thou have cheved the fyn of thin entent.
- Most circumspect and passinge avysee,
Al thi werkes conveied with prudencie,
Saad and demure, like to Josue
Ageyn whos swerd is no resistance,
And hast also heavenly influence,
With Salomon wysly to discerne,
Only be grace thi peple to governe;
- Mercy eke meyst with thi magnificence,
On alle oppressed for to have pitie,
And of rebelles be manly violence
Abate canst the grete cruelte;
And so with David thou hast kyngly pitie
And highe prowes with Sesar Julius,
In his tyme most victorius.
- And manly holdest in thin bondes two,
Who can beholde by clere inspeccoun,
The swerd of knyghthod and the scepter also:
The ton to bring to subjeccoun
Hertes made proude by fals rebelloun,
And with the scepter to rewle at the beste
Thi pore liges, that wolde live at reste.
- Now, thou that haste manhood, vertu, and grace,
Attemperaunce, fredam, and bounte,
Lowly I pracie, with a dredful face,
Disdeyne nat benymgely to se
Upon this boke rudely made by me,
To fyn only to agreen thin highnesse,
And rewle of merci upon my symphilnesse,
- travels swiftly
whatever
realized: purpose
well contained
governed
Serious; sober; Joshua
Against
you have
also mixed; greatness of nature
by
Put down
Caesar
one
vassals
power
terrified expression
kindly; look
For the purpose: please
have pity

Envoy

- 65 And eke in thi knyghtly adverstence
Considre and se, my sovereym lord most dere,
Of thi innat famous sapience
That Crist Jesus received with good chere
The twey mynutes yove of herte entere
By the wydowe, whiche of wille and thought
70 Gaf al his good and kepte hirsilf right sought.
- also; reflection
wisdom
two miles given freely
Gave; possessions
- By whiche ensample, so that it nat offende
Thorugh myn unkonynghe to thin highe noblesse,
Late good wil my litel gift amende,
And of thi mercy and renomed goodnessse
75 Have no disdeyn of my bareyn rudnesse,
And, in makynge though I have no Muse,
Late trewe menyng the surplus al excuse.
- ignorance*
make amends for
renowned
bare [of art and interest]
poetic composition
sincerity what remains
- More than good hert hath no maner wyght
To presente nouther to God nor man,
80 And for my part to the, as it is right,
That gyf I hool as ferforthe as I can,
Ay to persevere fro tyme that I gan,
With wil and thought for thin estate to preie,
Whiche to conserve thus finally I seie:
- person*
give; completely to the extent
began
preserve
- 85 First of al, Almyghti God to queme
With al that may be to His plessaunce,
And to thi crowne and thi diademe
Grace and good cure with long continuaunce,
Of thi liges feithful obeisaunce.
90 And eche vertu that man may specifie,
I praye God graunte unto thi regalye!
- please*
luck
kingship
- Go, litel bok, and put the in the grace
Of hym that is most of excellencie;
And be nat hardy to apperen in no place
95 Withoute support of his magnificencie;
And whosoevere in the fynde offence,
Be nat to bold for no presumpcione:
- yourself*
presumptuous
glory
you

Troy Book

Thisilfe enarme ay in pacience
And the submitte to her correcciooun.

*are always
yourself*

- 100 And for thou art enlumined with no floures
Of rethorik but with white and blak,
Therfore thou most abide alle showres
Of hem that list sette on the a lak;
And whan thou art most likly go to weak,
105 Ageynes hem thin errorr nat diffende
But humbly withdrawe and go abak,
Requerynge hem al that is mys to amende.

adorned

*wish; find fault with you
come to rain
them*

Asking them; amiss

Notes

Prologue

- 8-10 The allusions here are to the humors, of which there are four: phlegm, sanguine (blood), choler, and melancholy. Each humor is marked by specific conditions of temperature and moisture, which contribute to its influence on human behavior. Phlegm is cold and moist and seated in the liver; it has a clammy, inhibiting effect upon behavior that leads to equanimity or sluggishness and dullness. Sanguine is hot and moist and is seated in the heart; its character is usually cheerful, passionate, or aggressive. Choler is hot and dry, and is gathered in the gall; it helps natural heat and the senses, but also leads to anger. Melancholy is cold and dry; situated in the spleen, it makes one reflective and morose, but is a curb to the two hot humors. Although Mars is choleric — hot and dry and filled with anger and rage — his melancholic humor restrains him somewhat.
- 11 *fyrē*. Bergen emends to *fry*; see 2.3748 and 4.3155.
- 19-20 The planets are more at home in some houses (mansions) of the zodiac than others. Lydgate indicates that Mars is most influential when residing in the tenth mansion, Capricorn, but he is weak and troublesome when in Taurus, the second mansion. It was on his visit to Taurus that he made love to Venus and was weakened and exposed by Vulcan to ridicule amongst the gods. See note to line 23.
- 22 *Vulcanus*. MS: *Wicanus*.
- 23 *meschef*. The mischievous bedding of Mars and Venus is told in Ovid's *Art Amatoria* 2.561-92 and became a favorite literary topic throughout the Middle Ages. See Chaucer's elaborate dramatization of the "visit" in his "Complaint of Mars" and "The Complaint of Venus." Gower tells the story in his discussion of the jealousy of lovers, *Confessio Amantis*, 5.635-725. Both draw upon Jean de Meun's *Roman de la Rose*, lines 13847-14186.

Troy Book

- 38 Othea is a goddess of wisdom and instructor to Hector; see Christine de Pisan's *Epistle of Othea*.
- 40, 46 Clio and Calliope. Lydgate invokes the same Muses that Chaucer did in his telling of Book 2 (Clio) and Book 3 (Calliope) of *Troilus and Criseyde*, as if to gain the support of history (Clio) and eloquence (Calliope) in the unfolding of his great Troy story.
- 41 *Pernaso*. MS: *Pernasa*. A mountain near Delphi, sacred to Apollo and the Muses. Pegasus broke open the spring of the muses, whose waters sustain the arts. See note to line 44.
- 42 *Elicon*. Mount Helicon, a favorite haunt of the Muses which rivalled Parnassus for that honor. Lydgate follows Chaucer in making Helicon a well on Parnassus.
- 43 *stremys*. MS: *stemys*.
- 44 *Caballyn*. Lydgate's source is the Prologue to Persius's *Satires*: "Nec fonte labra prolui caballino / nec in bicipiti somniasse Parnaso / memini, ut repente sic poeta prodirem" (lines 1-3). Chaucer uses the same source for his various references to Parnassus (Franklin's Tale, V.720; *Troilus and Criseyde* 3.1810; *The House of Fame*, line 521; *Anelida and Arcite*, line 16). Persius is alluding to the Hippocrene — the well, as Lydgate says in the next line, "[t]hat sprang by touche of the Pegasee." Persius is ironic in treating the tradition of poetic inspiration associated with Helicon and Parnassus. His phrase "labra prolui" is a consciously exaggerated way of saying "drink." "Caballino" is a term taken from popular speech and applied sarcastically to Pegasus (hence "the nag's well"). Lydgate evidently missed the intended irony and took *fons caballinus* as a conventional epithet.
- 51 *Parcas and Furies*. The Parcae are the Roman goddesses of Fate — Clotho, Lachesis, and Atropos — derived from the Greek Moirai. The Furies (Erines) — Tisiphone, Allecto, and Megaera — are chthonian powers who inflict retribution for wrongs and blood-guilt, especially in the family.

Notes – Prologue

- 52 *Cerberus*. The watchdog of Hades, born of Typhon and Echidna, along with the Hydra and Chimaera. Hesiod gives him fifty heads, but most medieval versions designate three heads. Orpheus charmed him with his music, thereby succeeding in passing by him without harm.
- 53 In a number of instances I have followed Bergen, who adds a final -e to regularize the meter of Lydgate's verse. For example, here the MS reads: *bear*, which I print as *bese*. See also the following instances: *Prologue*: *trouthe* (116), *myghte* (130), *dirke* (143), *nere* (159), *grete* (174), *Withoute* (178), *pleyne* (194), *Withoute* (204), *grete* (240), *trouthe* (259), *trouthe* (288), *veyne* (290); *Book 1*: *grete* (66), *rekeles* (82), *hene* (151), *moste* (157), *londe* (726), *ryghte* (785), *scharpe* (798), *Troye* (811), *hadde* (931), *Withoute* (990), *alle* (1058), *myghte* (1059), *helpe* (1077), *grete* (1103), *trusse* (1106), *grete* (1111), *mente* (1121), *schippe* (1149), *grounte* (1157), *myghte* (1189), *oughre* (1844), *yeve* (1847), *grete* (1935), *myghte* (2002), *caste* (2006), *hene* (2011), *hene* (2027), *faire* (2093), *hene* (2107), *shalde* (2122), *hole* (2134), *goode* (2885), *besre* (2971), *oughre* (3230), *hoole* (3244), *nekke* (3279), *raughte* (3306), *moste* (3352), *brighte* (3391), *scharpe* (3401), *doute* (4054), *herde* (4063), *horse* (4086), *felte* (4090), *Nadde* (4106), *rede* (4157), *horse* (4160), *scharpe* (4162), *hene* (4167), *scharpe* (4183), *horse* (4197), *grete* (4256), *myghte* (4290), *scharpe* (4300), *scharpe* (4306), *newe* (4379), *broughte* (4382), *goode* (4401), *firste* (4426); *Book 2*: *wante* (144), *weye* (192), *heighre* (519), *longe* (685), *highte* (736), *alafte* (907), *schulde* (933), *stronge* (949), *myghte* (959), *righre* (1818), *hene* (1826), *newe* (1838), *hene* (2327), *trouthe* (2367), *hire* (2400), *game* (2412), *brighte* (2418), *myghte* (2430), *brighte* (2459), *righre* (2509), *grete* (2591), *moste* (2597), *faste* (2659), *herke* (2711), *righre* (2791), *hene* (2798), *feste* (3440), *feste* (3462), *joye* (3479), *stronge* (3502), *newe* (3531), *hene* (3546), *hene* (3566), *hoote* (3583), *oughre* (3626), *weye* (3633), *hadde* (3639), *hadde* (3642), *brighte* (3664), *hene* (3721), *righre* (3749), *moste* (4702), *myghte* (4739), *hymselfe* (4752), *myghte* (4757), *moste* (4876), *myghte* (4877), *myghte* (6579), *faste* (6586), *consumpt*e (6621), *hadde* (6649), *grete* (6658), *hadde* (6660), *juste* (6694), *monde* (6707), *alle* (6716); *Book 3*: *dirke* (4), *durste* (7), *myghte* (556), *hene* (571), *silfe* (593), *scharpe* (764), *myghte* (775), *myghte* (790), *laste* (792), *horse* (808), *trusse* (827) *scharpe* (831), *grete* (841), *myghte* (877), *hene* (881), *lefte* (986), *highte* (996), *horse* (1022), *worthiness* (1045), *hene* (1053), *wolde* (1061), *firste* (1062), *myghte* (1064), *stronge* (1075), *scharpe* (1091), *trusse* (1896), *hene* (1921), *durste* (1943), *nadde* (1967), *longe* (2043), *wylde* (2136), *faste* (2294), *brighte* (2667), *dirke* (2676), *brighte* (2681), *stronge* (2697), *gayne* (2736), *sente* (3109), *righre*

Troy Book

(3118), *myghte* (3134), *myghte* (3197), *myghre* (3204), *falle* (3207), *Thilke* (3235), *herte* (3737), *goode* (3741), *myghte* (3839), *falle* (3877), *herte* (3919), *holde* (3966), *happe* (4032), *myghre* (4066), *hadde* (4101), *gonne* (4111), *helpe* (4145), *shulde* (4183), *myghte* (4211), *hoole* (4234), *gilt* (4237), *laughe* (4292), *secte* (4356), *falle* (4406), *myghte* (4902), *thoughte* (4918), *neste* (4918), *falle* (4925), *herte* (4967), *routhe* (4989), *assente* (4997), *herte* (5045), *myghre* (5089), *myghte* (5112), *myghre* (5158), *myghre* (5222), *sharpe* (5266), *caste* (5283), *myghte* (5284), *myghte* (5304), *grete* (5312), *thoughte* (5313), *thoughte* (5316), *beste* (5317), *myghre* (5318), *roughte* (5319), *myghre* (5320), *awayte* (5386), *wente* (5416), *brighte* (5486), *salte* (5531), *myghte* (5590), *myghre* (5672), *brenne* (5722); Book 4: *falle* (191), *alle* (267), *thinge* (301), *righte* (323), *routhe* (379), *myghte* (600), *wente* (629), *herte* (648), *thoughte* (651), *knowe* (654), *hadde* (700), *muste* (710), *roughte* (720), *herte* (812), *myghre* (829), *grete* (844), *herte* (853), *Eleyne* (888), *thridde* (890), *righte* (906), *rowe* (983), *stonde* (993), *shulde* (1024), *Eleyne* (1050), *moste* (1086), *brighte* (1089), *myghte* (1181), *fledde* (2036), *hadde* (2063), *faste* (2068), *faste* (2076), *myghte* (2082), *grete* (2111), *myghte* (2112), *myghte* (2124), *roughte* (2164), *falle* (2690), *brighte* (2712), *helpe* (2719), *stronge* (2748), *hoole* (3139), *shulde* (3164), *sharpe* (3192), *grete* (3229), *hoole* (3820), *durste* (3840), *wolde* (3854), *myghte* (3936), *salte* (3939), *myghte* (3958), *stinte* (3971), *myghte* (3972), *maille* (4304), *sharpe* (4332), *myghre* (4413), *grete* (4417), *myghre* (5107), *alle* (5159), *faire* (5225), *hadde* (5587), *grete* (5631), *neste* (5702), *myghte* (5709), *false* (5739), *wolde* (5741), *treste* (5763), *holde* (5783), *stonde* (5784), *grauante* (6067), *grete* (6199), *thoughte* (6307), *lefte* (6354), *myghte* (6402), *shadde* (6408), *durste* (6430), *wiste* (6434), *yonge* (6474), *herte* (6502), *wolde* (6544), *fynde* (6875), *myghte* (6881), *myghre* (6914), *grete* (6917), *hadde* (6922), *oughte* (7048), *grete* (7070), *myghre* (7082); Book 5: *quaynte* (1811), *alle* (1848), *longe* (1851), *ilke* (1854), *grete* (1909), *platte* (1923), *gonne* (1954), *hadde* (1965), *Caste* (1968), *solde* (1978), *myghte* (1996), *herte* (2066), *myghre* (2080), *beste* (2109), *Thilke* (2112), *herte* (2116), *hevynesse* (2117), *shulde* (2120), *alle* (2140), *herte* (2168), *wolde* (2168), *herte* (2184), *herte* (2192), *yonge* (2209), *trouthe* (2216), *hemilife* (2267), *rowe* (2286), *thilke* (2938), *myghte* (2971), *plane* (2984), *silfe* (2996), *moste* (2998), *gryne* (3009), *myghre* (3034), *shulde* (3048), *myghte* (3105), *silfe* (3128), *righte* (3141), *herte* (3154), *longe* (3241), *grete* (3256), *wexe* (3305), *silfe* (3330), *helpe* (3350), *oughte* (3406), *brighte* (3423), *hadde* (3502), *Awaite* (3555); Envoy: *beste* (12).

54–68 In his invocation, Lydgate describes his task as "making" (fashioning verse in a technical sense) rather than original poetic composition and as

Notes – Prologue

rhetorical amplification (see below Pro.324–52). He subsequently (Pro.245–323) seeks to distinguish the truth of chronicle histories from the deceitful, invented fables of the poets, along the lines sketched out by Benolt (lines 45–70 and 110–16) and Guido (4.204 and 276).

- 63–75 An extended modesty trope of the poet apologetically standing to correction. See also Pro.379–84.
- 74 *My lordes bydding*. That is, at the pleasure of Henry V, Lydgate's patron. See Introduction, pp. 7–9.
- 81 *fym*, MS: *fynde*.
- 84 *vertuos besynessee*. See Chaucer's Second Nun's Prologue: "leveful bisynesse" (VIII.5) and "feithful bisynesse" (VIII.24).
- 89 *Vygeciar*. Flavius Vegetius Renatus, whose military manual *Epitoma rei militaris* (written between 383 and 450) remained an authority into the eighteenth century on Roman military practices.
- 95 *eldest sone*. Henry, Prince of Wales, later Henry V; Shakespeare's Prince Hal.
- 104 *Brutes Albyoun*. The phrase echoes "The Complaint of Chaucer To His Purse," a supplication to King Henry IV, where the poet addresses the king as "conquerour of Brutes Albyon" (line 22). In Geoffrey of Monmouth's *History of the Kings of England*, Brutus, a descendant of Aeneas, conquers Albion to establish his rule on the island, hence the name Britain.
- 109 *Gaido*. Guido delle Colonne, whose *Historia destructionis Troiae* is Lydgate's source.
- 115 *in Latyn and in Frenscche*. Bergen questions whether Lydgate knew any French version of Guido first hand (4:211).
- 124 *Fourtene complete*. Lydgate began the poem in 1412, during the reign of Henry IV, and completed it in 1420.

Troy Book

- 126 Lydgate's astronomical reference recalls the calculations mentioned in the *Canterbury Tales* in the introduction to The Man of Law's Tale (II.1-14), The Nun's Priest's Tale (VII.3187-97), and The Parson's Prologue (X.1-9).
- 133 *cold*. MS: *coldyng*.
- 141 *aprist*. MS: *apright*.
- 146 *Saginarie*. The mansion of Sagittarius, the ninth house in the astrological scheme of time. Lydgate names it as if it were an inn where Apollo might spend the night.
- 149 *auctours*. MS: *auhtours*.
- 150 *Of the dede the verrele trewē corn*. MS: *Of the dede of the verrele trewē corn*. In medieval scriptural and literary exegesis, wheat and chaff commonly distinguish verbal ornament from the interior meaning of a text; see Chaucer's The Nun's Priest's Tale: "Taketh the fruyt, and lat the chaf be stille" (VII.3443).
- 168-70 Torti, p. 174, observes that these lines echo *Troilus and Criseyde* 1.365-69, where Troilus recalls seeing Criseyde in the temple.
- 172 *slayen*. MS: *slayn*. In a number of instances I have supplied a medial vowel or ending inflection where the meter and syntax require it. See also *dirked* for *disk* (175); Book 1: *Ageynes* for *Ageyn* (182), *synthen* for *synth* (241), *growen* for *growe* (783), *Ageyneſ* for *Ageyns* (862), *hastily* for *hastly* (959), *brynges* for *bryng* (1097), *daweryng* for *dawnyng* (1155), *femynynytē* for *femynyte* (1860), *Kyndely* for *Kyndly* (1877), *restreyneſ* for *restreyn* (1879), *freelidē* for *freelite* (1923), *scheuen* for *scheu* (2023), *trewely* for *trewly* (2063), *Ageynes* for *Ageyns* (2099), *hooly* for *hool* (2862), *douteles* for *doutles* (2930), *trewely* for *trewly* (2946), *hennes* for *hens* (2976), *slayen* for *slayn* (4113), *Ageyneſ* for *Ageyns* (4150), *douteles* for *doutles* (4203), *pereles* for *perles* (4282), *amonges* for *among* (4413), *radenesse* for *radnesse* (4331); Book 2: *douteles* for *doutles* (554), *dayes* for *day* (572), *citezeyns* for *citezeyns* (782), *pleies* for *pleis* (792), *conquerouris* for *conquerous* (857), *chaunſeplare* for *chaunſeplare* (914), *lasten* for *last* (989), *nounſuretē* for *nounſurte* (1892), *douteles* for *doutles* (2298), *loveres* for *lovers* (2519), *Amonges* for *Among* (3481), *seyen* for *seym* (3564), *Ageyneſ* for *Ageyns* (3578), *wisten* for *wisir* (3720), *douteles* for *doutles* (4709).

Notes – Prologue

pereles for perles (4710), joyeden for joyden (4748), gruccheth for grucche (6529), seyah for sey (6529), whiles for whilst (6606), hennes for hens (6629); Book 3: tnewely for tnewly (2078), kyndely for kyndly (2087), Ageynes for Ageyns (2668), genterye for gentrie (3214), rekeles for rekles (3873), hennes for hens (3923), Ageynes for Ageyns (3953), ageynes for ageyns (4157), Ageynes for Ageyns (5018), sunet for sund (5088), broughten for brought (5234), rekeles for rekles (5383), pereles for perles (5384), namely for namly (5478), slayen for slain (5523); Book 4: namely for namly (289), Ageynes for Ageyns (691), Ageynes for Ageyns (857), Ageynes for Ageyns (863), patter for patte (925), Ageynes for Ageyns (980), casten for cast (1029), Douteles for Doubles (1098), hennes for hens (1133), rekeles for rekles (1139), Ageynes for Ageyns (1145), Ageynes for Ageyns (1158), rekeles for rekles (1174), tnewes for tnews (2029), dawenynge for dawynge (2049), helpeles for helplies (2736), endelunge for enlonge (2778), slayen for slain (3109), disray for disray (3913), stonden for stonde (3943), slayen for slain (4392), slayen for slain (4411), slaper for slayn (4431), douteles for doubles (5174), Ageynes for Ageyns (5236), ageynes for ageyns (5250), sithen for sith (5565), Ageynes for Ageyn (5577), haddest for hast (5665), behyght for hyght (5747), offeringe for offspring (6050), neghebour for neighbour (6140), yborm for born (6143), conspiracion for conspiracoun (6321), myghtestow for myghtstow (6449), Ageynes for Ageyns (6510), gireles for gilles (6767), Ageynes for Ageyns (6781), slayen for slain (6808), Endelong for Endlong (6857), gireles for gilles (6890), nayades for naydes (6987), hennes for hens (7015); Book 5: ymade for made (1812), letuaryes for letuariye (1994), soales for soule (2038), yblent for blent (2082), hevynesse for hevynes (2117), slayen for slain (3342), slayen for slain (3349), douteles for doubles (3415), avouterye for avourrye (3559); Envoy: benyngely for benymgely (60), Ageynes for Ageyns (105).

220 trouth. Bergen reads trouthe.

224 the keye of remembrance. See Chaucer, *The Legend of Good Women* F 26.

227 and. MS: of.

229 Crop and rose. See *Troilus and Criseyde* 2.348 and 5.1245. Pearsall (1970, p. 99) remarks that Lydgate uses this phrase as well as "sours and welle" to indicate the full realization of a virtue, quality, or vice; see 3.4935 and Env.1.

Troy Book

- 230 *Stace*. Publius Papinius Statius (45–96 A.D.), author of the *Thebaid*, which tells the story of Oedipus and his sons. Chaucer's Criseyde reads such a romance of Thebes to pass the time at the beginning of Book 2 of *Troilus and Criseyde*. After *Troy Book*, Lydgate wrote *The Siege of Thebes* under the fiction that he joins the Canterbury pilgrims on their return journey and is asked to tell the first tale.
- 246 *cronyceleris*. Bergen emends to *cronycaleris*.
- 263 *veyn*. Bergen emends to *veyme*.
- 286 *is*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 290 *Reyseth*. MS: *Rysed*.
- 293 *fame blowe*. Lydgate's phrase recalls Chaucer's description of the rock of ice on which the palace of Fame stands (*The House of Fame*, line 1139) and the satirical and skeptical treatment of fame and renown later in *The House of Fame*, lines 1567–1867.
- 298 *many worthi knyght*. Bergen emends the phrase to *many a worthi knyght*.
- 303 *it*. MS: *he*. I follow Bergen's emendation so that the obscure speech rather than Ovid ensnares the readers who see it, *enriketh*. Lydgate describes Ovid's writing in the same way as the fountain of Narcissus in the *Roman de la Rose*; see *Romaunt of the Rose*, line 1642.
- 309 Here and in Chaucer's *The House of Fame* (line 1468) and *Troilus and Criseyde* (1.394), Lollius is presented as an authority on the Trojan War. Modern scholars believe that medieval poets knew Lollius as an author because of an error in the manuscript tradition and subsequent references to Horace, *Epistulae* 1.2.1–2, which make it seem as if Lollius were the greatest of the authors on the Trojan War instead of Maximus Lollius, whom Horace addresses in his poem.
- 316 Lydgate makes the same claim for the essential agreement of the chronicles that is commonly adduced for the unity of the Bible.

Notes – Prologue

- 319 *Cornelias*. Cornelius Nepos (c. 99–c. 24 B.C.) was one of the first writers of biography. His *De viris illustribus* deals with famous people, both Roman and foreign.
- 320 *Sallustius*. Gaius Sallustius (c. 85–35 B.C.). Sallust was a Roman Tribune forced out of office by Caesar, who in retirement became an historian and dealer in moral commonplace. Lydgate alludes, perhaps, to his *Historiae* or possibly to his *Bellum Catilinae* or his *Bellum Jugurthicum*.
- 324–52 Lydgate here gives a list of topics that can be used for rhetorical amplification.
- 324 *al.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 333 *Or.* MS: *Of.*
- 344 *lengest dide*. MS: *dide lengest*.
- 348 *strif*. MS: *stif*.
- 366 *hashe*. Bergen reads *hath*.
- 373 *excellest*. MS: *excellent*.
- 377 *whom*. Lydgate uses this syntactic device again at 2.1038, 3.3829, and 5.1916.

Book 1

- 3 *Pelleus*. Lydgate conflates Pelias, the devious uncle of Jason, with Peleus, King of Phthia, who married the sea nymph Thetis, upon whom he fathered Achilles. Griffin (p. 289) notes that Guido and Benoit conflate Dares's Pelias with Dares's Peleus, who participated in the destruction of Lamedon's Troy.
- 8 *the*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 9 *Myrmidores*. Bergen reads *Myrandones*; see 1.67 and 3.579.

Troy Book

- 10 *Ovyde*. Publius Ovidius Naso (43 B.C.-A.D. 17). Author of more works popular with medieval literati than any other classical writer. His *Amores*, *Heroides*, *Ars Amatoria*, *Remedia Amoris*, *Metamorphoses*, and *Fasti* were frequently drawn upon and alluded to by English writers.
- 31 *roomyng*. Bergen reads *rooming*.
- 38 *Where*. Bergen reads *Wher*.
- 49 *Conforties*. Bergen reads *Comforties*.
- 56 *for to schyne*. MS: *so for to schyne*.
- 68-69 *lyfe . . . Of Seynt Mathewe*. The tradition that Matthew preached in the land of the Myrmidons originates in the apocryphal *Acts of Andrew and Matthias* (second-third century A.D.). According to the story, Matthew is assigned to preach in the city of Myrmidonia, whose inhabitants are cannibals. He is imprisoned, but a miracle brings the other apostles to rescue him. The story was popularized by Gregory of Tours's *Liber de miraculis Beati Andreae Apostoli* (c. 593). Several Old English translations exist. In his *De situ terrae sanctae*, Theodosius (sixth century) writes that Sinope, which was then called "Myrmidona," is the place where Andrew freed Matthew from prison.
- 74 *suppose*. MS: *schaf suppose*.
- 92 *Whiche*. MS: *Wiche*.
- 96 Line misplaced in MS.
- 98 *be*. Bergen normalizes to *by*.
- 104 *wrought*. MS: *wrour*.
- 105-06 *Ierehere*. MS reverses the rhyme.
- 126 *resygnacion*. MS: *resygnacoun*. Bergen reads *resygnacion*.
- 131 *Medee*. Medea, daughter of Aeëtes, king of Colchis (Oetes in Benolt, Guido, and Gower; Cethes in Lydgate). Lydgate removes her healing of Eson from

Notes – Book I

the story that he subsequently tells in order to introduce Jason. In Gower, after Medea has saved Jason she restores old Eson to youth at the expense of her own beauty, whereafter the scoundrel Jason abandons her for Creusa.

- 133 *pociouns*. MS: *porciouns*.
- 134 *wyrchyng*. Bergen emends to *wyrchynges*.
- 135 *quenryse*. Bergen emends to *queinryse*.
- 136 *hir enchauntementyr*. Bergen emends to *enchauntements*.
- 137 *as is*. MS: *as it is*.
- 139 *she is*. MS: *it is*.
- 144 Sentence must be read with Eson or "he" understood as the grammatical subject of was.
- 160–61 Lydgate employs the humility *topos* that Chaucer exploits throughout his work.
- 161 *discreye*. Bergen emends to *discryve*.
- 164 *his*. MS: *the*.
- 197 *for*. MS: *for for*.
- 214 *sought*. Bergen emends to *thoughte*.
- 224 *can*. Bergen emends to *ther can*.
- 225 *secré*. MS: *secrete*.
- 229 *unto*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 234 *he wer*. Bergen emends to *he ne wer*.
- 237 *as*. Bergen emends to *so as*.

Troy Book

- 724 *hir.* Bergen reads *her*.
- 729 Symeonte, Dares, Benolt, and Guido make the river Simois, a tributary of Scamander (chief river of the Trojan plain), into the harbor of Troy.
- 731 Lydgate continues in this passage with a series of subordinate clauses, but the main clause logically begins here; if the conjunction *And* is silently dropped, the rest of the passage follows clearly.
- 737 *or.* Bergen emends to *nor*.
- 741 *on.* Bergen emends to *upon*.
- 763 *deth.* Bergen emends to *mischief*.
- 768 *wer.* Bergen reads *were*.
- 769 *many man and many worthi.* Bergen emends to *many a man and many a worthi*.
- 791 *Ir.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 793 *it is.* Bergen emends to *it was*.
- 801-04 Lydgate's explanation of the causes (and later the consequences) of Troy's fall draws on Boethius's idea of Fortune. Benson contends that Lydgate has three distinct but often confused views of Fortune — a sense of determinism and pessimism derived from Guido, a rejection of transitory, secular things derived from Boethius, and a belief that Fortune is a means for divine punishment for evildoers and material rewards for the good (1980, pp. 120-24); see Lois Ebin (1985), pp. 43-44. Lydgate refers directly to Boethius's view of Fortune at 4.3008-12.
- 802 *passyng.* Bergen emends to *passingly*.
- 811-75 Lydgate uses the medieval commonplace of *translatio imperii*, the idea that Troy is the authorizing origin of later cities and nations.

Notes – Book I

- 855 Lydgate, following Guido (Book 2), has Aeneas founding Naples in Sicily.
- 860 *castr.* Bergen emends to *caste*.
- 868 *went*. Bergen emends to *wente*.
- 870 *ther*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 871 *him*. MS: *hem*.
- 875 *Ysidre*. Isidore of Seville (c. 560–636). His *Etymologiae* was an enormously popular encyclopedia (preserved in over a thousand manuscripts) on diverse topics, particularly those pertaining to natural phenomena, word origins, and classical lore. It is regularly cited as the authority behind ideas in medieval lapidaries, bestiaries, and discussions of all things natural.
- 891 *wher that he is grave*. Bergen emends to *wher as he is grave*.
- 922 *thei*. Bergen emends to *he*, but *ches* can take a plural subject and the sense of the passage is that Jason and Hercules are acting together (see earlier 1.723–40).
- 932 *for*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 944 *Swyche*. Bergen reads *Swiche*.
- 946 *wer seie*. Bergen reads *were seie*.
- 950–53 See the representation of rumor as sound in *The House of Fame*, lines 711–24, and as gossip in *The House of Fame*, lines 1914–76 and 2060–2111, where *rosten* is used as a verb for private conversation made public.
- 958 *Without*. Bergen emends to *Withoute*.
- 982 *this*. Bergen emends to *his*.
- 984 *for yow to schewe*. Bergen emends to *with yow for to schewe*.
- 1001 *perturbance*. Bergen reads *parturbance*.

Troy Book

- 1064 *payed*. Bergen emends to *apayed*.
- 1067 *sorr*. Lydgate's usage of the term, derived from Latin *sors*, *sorris*, moves among the meanings of *chance*, *fare*, and *fortune*; see 2.1802, 3.2725, 3.5315, 4.5291, 5.1836, 5.1887, 5.2183, 5.3040, 5.3247.
- 1069 *honestly*. MS: *honestlyche*.
- 1076-77 The meaning of the sentence is "Everyone of us shall help to carry out what Lamedon has foolishly chosen to begin."
- 1079 *This to seyne*. Bergen emends to *This is to seyne*.
- 1080 *on hym silfe schal*. Bergen emends to *schal on hym silfe*.
- 1088 *this*. Bergen emends to *his*.
- 1093 *unto hym was*. Bergen emends to *was unto hym*.
- 1109 *gret*. Bergen emends to *grete*.
- 1110 *the Kyng*. Bergen emends to *thi king*; see 1.1156, 1172 for similar readings.
- 1112 *And the*. Bergen emends to *And*.
- 1113 *unto*. MS: *to*.
- 1156 *the*. Bergen emends to *thi*.
- 1166 *to*. Bergen emends to *unto*.
- 1170 *that*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 1172 *the*. Bergen emends to *thi*.
- 1178 *be ye*. MS: *ye be*.
- 1183 *swyche*. Bergen reads *swiche*.

Notes - Book I

- 1187 *Is.* MS: *lis.* *for to.* Bergen emends to *to.*
- 1823 ff. The story of Jason and Medea was popular with the generation of English writers prior to Lydgate, who served as his mentors. See Chaucer's *The Legend of Good Women*, lines 1580-1679, based on Ovid's *Heroides* 6 and 12, Ovid's *Metamorphoses* 7, and Guido, who is Lydgate's source; and, especially, see Gower's retelling of the story in *Confessio Amantis* 5.3247-4222, which is based on Benolt, lines 703-3926, rather than Guido. Gower's version is more sympathetic to Medea and her plight than Lydgate's is. Gower's Medea is shy, reflective, and modest; she demonstrates constancy in women rather than inconstancy, as in Lydgate.
- 1826 *yeres.* Bergen reads *yeris.*
- 1834 *Considered.* Must be taken as parallel with *Comaundered* (1.1829).
- 1844 *man.* Bergen emends to *wise man.*
- 1845 *ever.* MS: *every.*
- 1847 *yeve.* MS: *yif.*
- 1850 *and.* MS: *and so.*
- 1870 *That.* Must be taken syntactically as "so that."
- 1876-80 These lines ironically evoke Chaucer's description of Jason in *The Legend of Good Women*, lines 1580-88.
- 1878 *performe.* Bergen reads *parforme.*
- 1882 *wolde God.* Syntax requires the subjunctive to take the noun clause beginning "That" (1887) as the complement; see 1.2038-40.
- 1883 *him.* MS: *hem.*
- 1887 *ensample.* MS: *ensaple.*
- wommen.* MS: *wommei.*

Troy Book

- 1901 *mewe*. See Chaucer's description of Troilus after he falls in love with Criseyde: "he wolde werken pryvely, / First to hidien his desir in mewe" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 1.380-81); see 2.3600.
- 1915-18 Bergen indicates a full stop after "sool" (line 1917), but the complete sense of the sentence requires the main clause provided in line 1918.
- 1925 *his*. Accepting Bergen's addition, *doth*. Bergen reads *dothe*.
- 1935 *worth*. MS: *worthi*.
- 1964-84 The description of Medea's contemplating the figure that Jason creates in her mind recalls Criseyde's musing on Troilus in *Troilus and Criseyde* 2.656-67. In both poets, the object of the lover's desire is presented not as he is but as he is seen.
- 1968 *began*. Bergen emends to *gan*.
- 1974 *emprentek*. MS: *emprenteh*.
- 1977 *sonnelyche*. Bergen emends to *sonnysshe*.
- 1982 *suffisaunce*. Bergen emends to *suffisaunce*. See *The Book of the Duchess*, line 1037: "My suffisaunce, my lust, my lyf."
- 1994 *yolde body, herte, and al*. The phrase has a distinctly Chaucerian ring to it. See *The Book of the Duchess*, lines 116 and 768, where Alcyone and then the Black Knight yield themselves to love "With good wille, body, hert, and al."
- 2018 *no*. MS: *to*.
- 2019 *No*. MS: *Nor*.
- 2029 *schewen*. MS: *schewem*.
- 2033 *scheweth*. MS: *schewey*.
- 2042 *schyning*. MS: *schying*.

Notes – Book I

- 2049 *hevene*. See *Troilus and Criseyde* 3.1251: "Thus in this hevene he gan hym to delite" and Criseyde's earlier response to Troilus's entrance: "It was an heven upon hym for to see" (2.637).
- 2057 *not me*. Bergen emends to *me not*.
- 2074 *thel thinkē*. MS: *the think*.
- 2078 *the*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2079 *though*. MS: *thorugh*.
- 2081 *pretende*. MS: *pretente*.
- 2083 *And*. Taking *flaterie* as grammatically parallel with *florissyng*.
- 2084 *dowbilnes*. MS: *dowmbilnes*.
- 2085 *is*. MS: *it*.
- 2090 *blewe* is lightly died into *grene*. Blue is fidelity; green is inconstancy. See Chaucer's "Against Women Unconstant" with its refrain "In stede of bleuw, thus may ye were al grene," where the poet objects to women's "newfangelnesse" (line 1) and "unstedfastnesse" (line 3), objections which resonate in Lydgate's critique in lines 2091–92.
- 2105 *and parfye*. MS: *and so parfye*.
- 2112 *hem*, MS: *here*.
- 2117 *my*. MS: *the*.
- 2141 *halle*. MS: *the halle*.
- 2813 *the cok, comoun astrologer*. A direct echo of the scene of the *aubade* in Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* 3.1415 after the lovers' consummation.
- 2818 *weren*. MS: *ben*.

Troy Book

- 2820 *wayten.* Bergen emends to *to awayte.*
- 2830-32 The image is a set of three hounds on a leash turned into a pair by the old woman's leaving the lovers alone.
- 2834 *hath.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2844 *rich.* MS: *riol.* See Benolt, lines 1622-23. In Book 4 of Boccaccio's *Filocolo*, Florio and Biancifiore are married before a statue standing for all the gods; some scholars believe that this served in turn as a source for the pledges exchanged in *Troilus and Criseyde* 3.1254-60.
- 2851 *take.* MS: *to take.*
- 2852 *lothe.* MS: *for lothe.*
- 2864 *his.* MS: *his his* (canceled to *his*).
- 2868-80 See Jason's perfidy and duplicity in both the Hypsipyle and Medea episodes in *The Legend of Good Women*, lines 1368-1679, where Hercules is fully involved in the conscious plot to deceive Hypsipyle.
- 2878 *nothing.* Bergen glosses MS *no thing* as "not," but the sense of the passage is that nothing contrived and false was revealed under Jason's false appearance.
- 2895 *schaldest.* MS: *schulde.*
- 2905 *comprehende.* Takes *bounē* as its complement.
- 2919 See *The Legend of Good Women*, lines 2559-61: "Be war, ye wemen, of youre subtyl fo, / Syn yit this day men may ensaumple se; / And trusteth, as in love, no man but me."
- 2923 *oute.* Bergen reads *out.*
- 2924 *hir.* Bergen reads *her.*
- 2936 *maner.* MS: *the maner.*

Notes - Book I

- 2949-50 Echoes portrait of Jason at start of Chaucer's story of Medea: "For to desyren thourgh his apetit / To don with gentil women his delyt, / This is his lust and his felicite" (*The Legend of Good Women*, lines 1586-88).
- 2951 *connerie*. Bergen reads *contrarie*.
- 2953 See Hypsipyle's "usaunce / To fortheren every wight, and don plesaunce / Of verrey bounte and of curteysye" (*The Legend of Good Women*, lines 1476-78).
- 2957 *routhe*. MS: *roughise*.
- 2963 *ful*. Bergen emends to *fuller*.
- 2967-86 Jason's speech here uses the conventions of the *aubade* but turns them not to the poignancy of the lovers' parting so much as to the mechanics of his gaining the Fleece.
- 2968 *pryme*. Prime marks the first division of the day, from 6:00 a.m. to 9:00 a.m. It likewise designates a canonical hour of prayer. Here the sense seems to be "daybreak."
- 3020-21 The text reads: *a riche ring . . . al venym distroye*. Bergen's note (4:101) suggests that the stone is agate. That makes sense in that agate, according to the Peterborough Lapidary, which also cites "Isidore" as its source, indicates that agate can sometimes be green and that it "ben good ayens venym & ayens biting of serpentes & he kepereth a man fro euell thinges" (*English Medieval Lapidaries*, ed. Joan Evans and Mary S. Serjeantson, EETS o.s. 190 [Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1933; rpt. 1960], pp. 64-65). The Sloane Lapidary, in the same volume, notes the agate's virtue "against stinging edders," but does not identify any kind of agate as being green. See note to 1:3344, below.
- 3217 Lydgate breaks the syntax of this sentence by inserting *He* as the subject of *schope*.
- 3218 *forget*. Bergen emends to *forged*; but see 2.2508, 4.6938 as well as 1.4255 (*avenger*) and 3.4179 (*flickenir*).
- 3222 *whar*. MS: *wat*.

Troy Book

- 3229 *syghe*. MS: *to syghe*.
- 3230 *rekeles*. MS: *rekles*.
- 3231 *sche bad*. MS: *sche him bad*.
- 3243 *schuld*. MS: *schul*.
- 3246 *the*. MS: *thi*.
- 3248 *fulli*. MS: *ffulli*.
- 3253 *certeyn*. Bergen emends to *certis*.
- 3255-56 Bergen transposes these lines, following other MSS.
- 3264 *the*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 3289 *kepe*. MS: *ke* (corrected to *kepe*).
- 3305 *wasnid*. MS: *wafnid*. Bergen's emendation.
- 3317 Sense requires "they were" as grammatical subject.
- 3320 *inhast*. Bergen emends to *enhaste*.
- 3333 *floume*. Bergen reads *flawme*.
- 3334 *masid*. MS: *anasiid*.
- 3338 *ther*. MS: *the*.
- 3340 *teckith*. MS: *teched*.
- Fyldoras. There is no reference to Isidore or *bufo* (Latin "toad") in Benoit, lines 1677-1702 and 1929-32; see Guido, Book 3.
- 3341 *And*. MS: *And in*.

Notes – Book I

- 3344 *surmounteth every grene*. It is conceivable that Medea's wonderful, protective stone is emerald, rather than the agate mentioned earlier (not in this selection). According to the Peterborough Lapidary, emerald "ouerpasseth al the grenesse of greshede" (*English Medieval Lapidaries*, ed. Joan Evans and Mary S. Stjernson, EETS o.s. 190 [Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1933; rpt. 1960], p. 85). Lydgate, on the authority of "Isidore," cites India as the provenance of Medea's stone (line 1342); the Sloane Lapidary designates Syria for emerald (*English Medieval Lapidaries*, p. 121). All sources indicate that this greenest of green stones is protection against lechery, which could be a factor in Medea's giving the ring to Jason. MED gives "desire, sexual passion" as a meaning n(2) for *grene*. Lydgate, perhaps, is punning in lines 3343–44, suggesting 1) that the stone must be kept pure and clean and that it surpasses all others in its greenness; and 2) that it must be kept chastely and cleanly, and with its color can overcome illicit passion ("grene"). The newlywed Jason draws upon its power and Medea's pure affection to overcome the dragon. The stone defends him from the "venym," but in doing so is turned into "pecis smale" (line 3356) so that it cannot protect Jason from the poison of Cupid's dart which, in the end, overwhelms him with desire for Creusa and which, in turn, proves a "dedly sorwe" for Medea (line 3712).
- 3346 *anoye*. MS: *noye*.
- 3360 *of malis*. Modifies *tame* rather than *men*.
- 3364 *the ston*. Bergen emends to *this ston*.
- 3369 *riche*. Bergen reads *rich* and emends to *riche*.
- 3383 *resistence*. MS: *of resistance*.
- 3384 *witstonde*. MS: *witsonde*.
- 3389 *many stroke*. Bergen emends to *many a stroke*.
- 3413 *apon*. MS: *on*.
- 3418 *as faste as*. Bergen emends to *is al the hast*.

Troy Book

- 4034 *so*. MS: *for so*.
- 4044 *of*. Bergen emends to *on*; see 3.3216 and 3.3857.
- 4046 *ward*. A military unit of fighting men, here rendered as "division."
- 4058 *ye gese of me no more*. See Chaucer's The Squire's Tale: "ye gese namoore of me" (V.343).
- 4061 *he riseth*. MS: *it ariseth*.
- 4065 *noble*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4084 *standy as a wal*. See 3.4938 and 4.3946. The reference to Neator ironically echoes against Chaucer's description of Hector as "the townes wal and Grekes yerde" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 2.154) and Criseyde's subsequent feeling that Troilus "was to hire a wal / Of stiel, and sheld from every displesaunce" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 3.479-80).
- 4094 *many wounde*. Bergen emends to *many a wounde*.
- 4095 *Ther*. Bergen emends to *Wher*.
- 4105 *discomfird*. Bergen emends to *discomfeted*.
- 4115 *That*. MS: *Than*.
- 4118 *in*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4121 *manly*. MS: *manfully*.
- 4122 *now*. MS: *on*.
- 4143 *he felte in hert*. Bergen emends to *in hert he felte*.
- 4155 *enbollid*. Bergen reads *embollid*.
- 4162 *wher*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

Notes – Book I

- 4170 *Cedar*. The young knight who rescues Lamedon by attacking Nestor appears in both Guido (Book 4) and Benoit (2507 ff.), who agree on the major details of the episode.
- 4176 *He*. Added for grammatical sense.
- 4184 *swyte*. MS: *so swyte*.
- 4185 *dispitous*. Bergen reads *despitous*.
- 4220 *the*. MS: *of his*.
- 4226 *have*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4234 *that*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4253 *a*. Bergen emends to *in*.
- 4254 *in al hast*. Bergen emends to *in al the hast*.
- 4255 *avenget*. Bergen emends to *avenged*.
- 4259 *have with hem*. Bergen emends to *with hem have*.
- 4262 *finaly that day*. MS: *that day finaly*.
- 4268 *he*. MS: *shef*. In the MS reading, the Greeks make woe — that is, cause grief — but the context indicates that it is Lamedon who expresses his grief and mourning.
- 4269 *pitas heri*. Lydgate refers obliquely to Chaucer's phrase "pitee remmeth soone in gentil herie" (*Canterbury Tales* I.1761, IV.1986, V.479). See below 4.2148.
- 4285 *assaille*. Bergen reads *assaille*.
- 4286 *his*. Bergen indicates an emendation but *his* is the MS reading.
- 4289 *cam in*. MS: *in cam*.

Troy Book

- 4292 *severed*. Bergen reads *svered*, emended to *severed*.
- 4301 *nil*. Bergen emends to *so*.
- 4303 *hast*. Bergen reads *husre*.
- 4304 *alyghte*. MS: *he lyghte*.
- 4315 *wer*. MS: *that wer*.
- 4317 *no*. MS: *nat can no rede* is parallel with *wer forskatered*, and both are governed grammatically by *That* (who).
- 4326 *to*. MS: *into*.
- 4335 *the*. Bergen emends to *her*.
- 4340 *Her*. Bergen emends to *Hir*.
- 4366 *a*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4367 *birthe*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4371 *had*. Bergen emends to *hadde*.
- 4374 *vengance*. MS: *vengouace*.
- 4376 *thorugh*. MS: *thoghugh*.
- 4377 *liche*. Bergen emends to *light*.
- 4380 *to*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4381 *the*. Bergen emends to *this*.
- 4386 Bergen's punctuation suggests that the syntax breaks at this point, but it is clear that the parenthetical interjection in lines 4385-86 divides the subordinate clause from the main clause, much as in the opening of Chaucer's General Prologue to the *Canterbury Tales*.

Notes - Book I

- 4388 *pleyng*. Bergen emends to *pleyng*.
- 4398 *fro*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4412 *sufficiunce*. Bergen reads *suffciance*.
- 4420-36 Lines addressed to Henry as Lydgate's patron.
- 4427 *now* with *quakynge hond*. MS: with *quakynge hond now*.

Book 2

- 1 *Fortunas*. MS: *fortunat*. Torti, p. 184n, remarks that the description of Fortune's mutability forecasts the attitude toward women in Guido and Lydgate. Finlayson, p. 150, sees the passage indebted to the description of Fortune in Chaucer's *The Book of the Duchess*.
- 3 *wil*. Bergen reads *will*.
- 134 *thei*. MS: *ye*.
- 141 *thar*. Bergen emends to *the*.
- 142 *Atropos*. Atropos. One of the three daughters of Night, later identified as the three Fates. Atropos is the Fate who cuts the thread of a person's life; compare 2.880, 2.2290, 2.4695.
- 168 Echoes Chaucer's "The Complaint of Venus": "Syth rym in Engliss hath such skarsete" (line 80). Boffey, p. 31, notes that the line reappears in Lydgate's *Fall of Princes* (9.3312).
- 173 Accepting Bergen's emendation of a plausible, if less likely, reading in MS: *To schewe his stile in my transmutacions*. MED cites no instances of *transmutacions* used in a sense appropriate to the passage. Lydgate uses the term in the normal sense at 1.58; compare 4.7062.
- 178 *cam*. Bergen emends to *com*.

Troy Book

- 180 Lydgate follows the convention, defined by Cicero and St. Jerome, of translating meaning by meaning rather than word for word.
- 192–97 See the supposed rejection of rhetorical figures by Chaucer's Franklin (V.716–27). Lydgate repeats the allusion below at 3.551–56 and Env.100–01.
- 198 *in.* Accepting Bergen's addition for meter.
- 200 *anon I wil.* Accepting MS reading over Bergen's *I wil anon*.
- 288 *Hector the seconde.* Lydgate echoes Pandarus (*Troilus and Criseyde* 2.158).
- 481 *callyd.* Norton-Smith emends to *ycallyd* based on Digby 232 and Digby 230 to avoid a Lydgate line.
- 493 *Or.* MS: *Of.*
- 511 As Bergen notes, the phrase "with countenaunces glade" applies to the images and not the workmen; see 2.610.
- 515 *Appollo.* The reference should be to the craftsman Appelles who is mentioned in Walter of Chatillon's *Alexandreis* 7.383–84 (Norton-Smith, p. 133); Bergen suggests that Lydgate borrowed the passage from the Wife of Bath's recollection of her fourth husband's tomb (III.495–500).
- 523 *joignour.* Trisyllabic.
- 528 *Of.* MS: *Or.*
- 533 *wer.* Bergen emends to *were*.
- 534 *aboute.* Bergen emends to *abouten*.
- 542 *that.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 545 *defoulit.* Bergen emends to *defouled*.

Notes - Book 2

- 552 Lydgate echoes the asseveration of Chaucer's Franklin in the *Canterbury Tales*: "I ne kan no termes of astrologye" (V.1266).
- 559 *in.* MS: *on*; see 4.2739.
- 560 *For.* Bergen amends to *Bur.*
- 564 *this.* Bergen emends to *his*.
- 569 *aform.* Bergen emends to *soform*, but see 2.3585 and 2.3703 for similar usage.
- 599 *peerles.* Trisyllabic. Bergen emends to *peereles*.
- 602 *Tymbria.* The second gate of Troy according to Guido (Book 5), the fifth in Benolt (line 3152). It is mentioned again at 3.5611.
- 614 *tour.* MS: *tourn*.
- 616 *on.* MS: *up on*.
- 618 *serpentys.* Bergen reads *serpentis*.
- 628 *And.* MS: *A.*
- 629 *non.* Bergen emends to *noon*. The sense of the clause is that anyone contemplating an attack would be dissuaded by the iron grating that hangs down over the gates.
- 634 *barreys.* MS: *barneys*.
- 639 *paleys.* MS: *hous*.
- 640 *thorughour.* MS: *thorugh*.
- 654 *babewynes.* MS: *bakewynes*.
- 655 *koynynge.* MS: *kaxenynge*. Norton-Smith emends to *copurnyng* from Digby 232 (*kopumynge*) and Digby 230 (*copurnynges*), but the emendation is hypermetric.

Troy Book

- 656 *Vynettis*. Bergen reads *Vynnettis*.
- 668 *the*. Bergen emends to *this*.
- 672 *morwe*. MS: *the morwe*.
- 681-82 Here and elsewhere (e.g., 2.669) Lydgate uses the language applied earlier to the conduct of statecraft to suggest the resemblance between practical wisdom in political affairs and the rational construction of New Troy according to an informing plan. At the end of Book 2, Agamemnon's care in arranging his camp will furnish a small echo of Priam's design. Guido emphasizes the skill of the mechanical arts in Troy, while Lydgate stresses the intellectual power of design. Geoffrey of Vinsauf's *Poetria Nova*, in a passage that Chaucer parodies in *Troilus and Criseyde* (1.1065-69), compared the invention of a poem to the architect's plan for his building.
- 689 *reclinatories*. Bergen speculates that these may be couches with canopies over them. Norton-Smith glosses it as "a covered place provided with a half-seat" and treats it as Lydgate's coinage.
- 695 *cured was*. The grammatical construction is parallel with *raught* (line 698) and *paved* (line 701).
- 710 *hym silfe*. MS: *hem silfe*.
- 720 *square grounde*. Bergen emends to *ygrounde*, but see 2.2561. MED defines *square* (adj. 2a) as "ground or whet at a cutting angle or to a point."
- 722 *Bowers*. MS: *Bowers*.
- 725 *fast*. Bergen emends to *faste*.
- 725 *also*. Bergen indicates MS reading is his emendation.
- 737 *that*. Bergen emends to *this*.
- 769 *enabite*. Bergen emends to *enhabite*.
- 777 *many*. Bergen emends to *any*.

Notes - Book 2

- 784 *so.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 788-926 The account of Priam's steps to "magnyfye" his new city and increase its renown provides a good example of the poet's skill at *amplificatio*. Lydgate describes the civil activites of Priam's reinvention of a healthy society after the fall of Lamedon's Troy. He adds tournaments, jousts, and tilting to the "diuersa genera" of games that Guido mentions vaguely (Book 5), and he significantly expands the discussion of chess. His greatest addition is in the description of theatre. He not only defines genre but gives details of production, such as staging and sets (a "theatre schrowdide in a tent," line 900); masks ("viseris") used for disguise (lines 901-02); the signs and formulaic expressions used to convey joy, heaviness, trust, gladness, and mixtures of emotions, always "from point to point" (line 910), answering to the requirements of the play; the place of music and rhetoric in the plays; and the controlling themes (e.g. the fall-of-prince *topos*, or the Boethian themes of fate and fortune). Priam's "fantasye" provides a glimpse of the idealized social and ideological geography of fifteenth-century urban life. Meek (p. 286n) suggests that Guido misread Benoit's claim that Troy's inhabitants could find all these pleasures in the city (*trovassent*, line 3182).
- 790 *observaunce.* MS: *observaunces*.
- 802 *other.* MS: *ther.*
- 806-23 Persian, Indian, and Arabic texts refer to chess as early as the fifth century, but no unambiguous references appear before the seventh century. The game was popular by the tenth century, and entered the west by way of Spain in the tenth or eleventh century. European literary and documentary references date from around the year 1000. A short poem describing the game (*Versus de scachis*) survives in manuscripts from the 990s. In the eleventh and twelfth centuries the game was popular in both courtly and monastic milieux. Petrus Alfonsi's *Disciplina clericalis* (c. 1100) lists chess as one of the seven knightly accomplishments, and the game is frequently mentioned in chivalric romances. Lydgate champions Guido's claim that chess was first invented in Troy. He incorrectly ascribes a competing claim to Jacques de Vitry. Marquardt points out that Jacobus de Cessolis's *De ludo scacorum* (c. 1280) is the source for claiming that Philometer is the inventor.
- 812 *japarties.* MS: *imparties*.

Troy Book

- 830 *be sodeyn variaunce.* Bergen emends to *with sodeyn variaunce*.
- 833 *plounged.* MS: *plounged*.
- 835 Against Bergen, I punctuate with a full stop here because the line is the kind of summative statement that often ends Lydgate's longer sentences.
- 836-38 The passage needs to be taken in the sense that if one person succeeds in various games of chance, another person necessarily loses.
- Adevaunte.* Bergen suggests the possibility of separating *A* from *devaunt* (the name of a game of chance) and assigning it the value of the preposition *in*. *Hasond* and *passage* are, like *devaunt*, games played with dice.
- 837 *suffereſt.* MS: *suffereſy*.
- 842-59 The generic descriptions of comedy and tragedy are commonplaces. See, for example, Dante's Letter to Can Grande della Scala and the Prologue to Chaucer's The Monk's Tale (VII.1971-81).
- 861 Against Bergen, I punctuate with a full stop here because line 862 begins another independent clause.
- 864-69 In the medieval conception of classical drama, the poet recited his work while the action was mimed below him; see Isidore of Seville, *Etymologiae* 18.44 and 18.49.
- 867 *awncien.* MS: *awcien*.
- 875 *by old date.* Accepting Bergen's emendation for MS: *by date*.
- 876 See note to Prologue line 51.
- 878 *gan.* "The poet" is the understood subject of the sentence; see line 896. Lydgate speaks of a poet reciting but his image is of writing.
- 886 *highe.* Bergen emends to *in highe. distresse.* Bergen emends to *tristesse*.
- 887 *and.* Bergen emends to *or* for parallelism with the following two lines.

Notes - Book 2

- 890 *that.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 902 *Disfigurid her facis.* The phrase is an absolute: the men's faces are disguised.
- 908 *or.* MS: *and.*
- 911 *now light.* Accepting Bergen's emendation for MS: *light.*
- 918 *hay.* MS: *bay.*
- 922 *the.* Bergen emends to *these.*
- 924 *ryght of tragedies olde.* The *of* is Bergen's addition.
- 927-1066 Lydgate's description of Priam's palace, like that of the city earlier (2.489-768), expands and changes the basic details in Guido (Book 5). These lines offer a *tour de force* in Utopian city planning, from the geometry of the layout, where the city itself becomes a kind of theater in the round (lines 941-57), down to the wood used for specific architectural functions; where equitable housing is provided for rich and poor, and where we are privileged to glimpse the decor of interiors of houses as well as religious practices. No poet in English before Lydgate has been so attentive to this kind of detail, as he depicts the aspirations and exuberance of early fifteenth-century expansion.
- 931 *werkes.* MS: *werkmen.*
- 940 *cast.* Sense requires the phrase to be understood as *was cast*, "was laid out by compasses." I have treated lines 939-40 as a subordinate clause modifying *Ilyoun*; Bergen punctuates them as an appositive beginning the next sentence.
- 943 *he most first.* Bergen emends to *first he moste.*
- 944-48 Lydgate follows the common practice of approximating π by using its upper limit ($3 \frac{1}{7}$). The practice derived from the third proposition of Archimedes's *On the Measurement of the Circle*, which the Middle Ages knew in several translations. Plato of Tivoli produced an incomplete translation from the Arabic between 1134 and 1145. Gerard of Cremona completed a better translation, again from the Arabic, in the third quarter of the twelfth

Troy Book

century. William of Moerbeke, Latin archbishop of Corinth, made a translation from the Greek in 1269. William's translation was incorporated into Johannes de Muris's *De arte mensurandi* around 1343.

- 949-50 *withinne the stronge wal . . . pleyndly eke with al.* Bergen emends by transposing these phrases.
- 955 *reyed.* MS: *reysen.*
- 956 *unto.* Bergen emends to *to.*
- 961 *stond rounde.* MS: *stond rounde rounde.* Bergen emends to *stoode rounde.*
- 969 *fenesstral.* Bergen emends to *eche fenesstral.*
- 991 *his.* Bergen emends to *this.*
- 1006 *was set a dormant.* Bergen emends to *was a dormant.*
- 1012 *Right as any.* Bergen emends to *Right ar.*
 opposyt. MS: *apposyt.*
- 1014 *riche.* Bergen reads *rich.*
- 1022 *With.* MS: *Withoutte.*
- 1023 *of.* MS: *of of.*
- 1034 *and of.* Bergen emends to *of* but is willing to accept MS reading as equally good.
- 1037 *excellence.* MS: *excenlence.*
- 1050 *felicitē.* MS: *ffelicite.*
- 1061 *his.* Bergen emends to *this.*

Notes – Book 2

- 1797–1902 Lydgate apostrophizes Priam as an imprudent ruler. He builds on Guido's suggestion (Book 6) that Boethian ideas about fortune and chance lead to Priam's renewing the war, but he relocates these ideas from the external world to the individual. His sentiment is akin to Gower's, who locates all disasters within the choices of individuals. See Ebin (1985), pp. 41–44.
- 1798 *new*. Bergen emends to *newe*.
- 1807 *savour*. MS: *more savour*.
- 1816 *to*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 1831 *chance*. Bergen reads *chaunce*.
- 1847 *Adverting*. MS: *Adverte*.
- 1851 *early*. MS: *only*.
- 1853 *if*. MS: *it*.
- 1857 *rekles*. Bergen emends to *rekeles*.
- 1865 *royal*. MS: *nayal*.
- 1883 *this*. MS: *his*.
- 1892 *which in*. MS: *with*.
- 2184 *to*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2197–2209 Hector argues for distributive rather than rectificatory justice. As Aristotle explains in Book 5 of the *Nicomachean Ethics*, distributive justice remedies discrepancies between persons of unequal worth by a geometrical progression, while rectificatory justice works among equals by an arithmetic progression. Thus an injury done a great person is greater in magnitude than one done a person of lesser social stature. Lydgate is expanding on a theme in Guido (Book 6).
- 2210 *gretly*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

Troy Book

- 2216 *instyr.* MS: *instynt.*
- 2246 *causeth.* MS: *caused.*
- 2264 *lak.* MS: *lat.*
- 2268 *many.* MS: *many other.*
- 2276 *at.* Bergen emends to *in*. The MS reading accords with Chaucer's usage in the *Canterbury Tales* (II.504, II.658, VII.1300) and *Troilus and Criseyde* (4.1106, 4.1532).
- 2292 *and sorow.* Bergen emends to *sorow.*
- 2297 *hold.* MS: *held.*
- 2298 *cowardlyse.* Bergen reads *cowardysse.*
- 2321 *Of.* MS: *To.*
- 2355 *unto.* Bergen emends to *to.*
- 2358 *Unto the whiche.* Bergen emends to *Unto whiche.*
- 2364 *yeve.* MS: *gif.*
- credence.* MS: *credendence* (corrected to *credence*).
- 2365 *nat.* Bergen emends to *not.*
- 2373 *cheritē.* MS: *chene.*
- 2375 *upon.* MS: *on.*
- 2387 *Pitous.* MS: *Pitous.*
- 2393 *Then out I roos.* MS: *Out I roos.* Bergen emends to *Up I roos out.*
- 2424 *severyd.* MS: *severy.*

Notes - Book 2

- 2427 *thinne*. Bergen emends to *thorugh thinne*.
- 2434 *so fer*. MS: *fer*.
- 2435 *that I*. Accepting Bergen's addition to MS: *I*.
- 2440 *upon*. MS: *on*.
- 2448 *he*. Following the MS reading and taking the pronoun to refer to the horse that reaches a pleasant dell; Bergen emends to *I*, so that Paris is the grammatical subject.
- 2450 *yonge*. MS: *soft*.
- 2451 *alight*. MS: *light*.
- 2464 *aslepe*. Bergen emends to *asleped*.
- 2465 *wonder swevene*. Lydgate renders Guido's "mirabilem visionem" in a way that recalls the phrasing Chaucer gives to dreams in his dream visions; see "Me mette so ynly swete a sweven, / So wonderful" (*The Book of the Duchess*, lines 276-77).
- 2469 *first somdel*. Bergen emends to *somdel first*.
- 2482 *ravashed*. Bergen emends to *ravished*.
- 2486-2516 *Fulgence*. The sixth-century mythographer Fabius Planciades Fulgentius, author of commentaries on the allegories supposedly contained in the pagan myths (*Mythologiae*) and in Vergil (*Vergiliiana continetria*). Fulgentius is an important, though sometimes discredited, source for medieval and Renaissance writers, including Boccaccio (see *Genealogie deorum gentilium* 4.24 and 11.7). The mythological interpretations are largely Lydgate's addition. Fulgentius is sometimes confused with Saint Fulgentius, Bishop of Ruspe (d. 532 or 533). Lydgate's iconographical details for Mercury do not appear in the corresponding passages of Benoit and Guido. The details of the rod, the snakes, and the cock are in Fulgentius's *Mythologiae*; but Lydgate purges Fulgentius's association of Mercury with the mendacity of commerce, making him instead into an allegory of the more aristocratic virtues of good

Troy Book

governance and prudence. Vatican Mythographer 2 defines Mercury as "deus prudentie et rationis" (ch. 83) and "deus prudentie" (ch. 124). Lydgate also supplements the iconography of Fulgentius with the pipes of rhetoric and eloquence, and the sword. His likely source here is the story of the slaying of Argos told in Ovid's *Metamorphoses* 1.668-721, in which Mercury puts Argos to sleep with his pipes and then cuts off his head with a sword.

- 2490 *to take the moralitē*. See the admonition at the end of The Nun's Priest's Tale: "Taketh the fruyt, and lat the chaf be stille" (VII.3443).
- 2508 *forger*. Bergen emends to *forged*.
- 2519-20 *Cithera . . . Juno, and Pallas*. The three goddesses (Venus, Juno, and Athena) whose beauty contest, judged by Paris, was one of the favorite stories in literature and art throughout the Middle Ages. The Judgment of Paris is often treated in art as the cause of the Trojan War.
- 2521 *this*. MS: *thus*.
- 2522 *dowes white*. Doves are a standard feature of Venus's iconography. They also figure prominently in the *Song of Songs*, which links them to innocence as well as passion. See *Roman de la Rose*, lines 15755-56 on the doves that accompany Venus. Morgan MS 132 fol. 117v has a drawing of Venus's chariot being drawn by six white doves as she sets out to assail chastity. The image is reprinted in Harry Robbins, trans., *The Romance of the Rose* (New York: E. P. Dutton & Co., 1962), p. 336.
- 2525 *schowly*. Bergen emends to *soothly*.
- 2526 *dowes veray innocence*. The innocence represented by the doves is identified with the turtle dove in Chaucer's *The Parliament of Fowls*, who blushes at the very thought of infidelity, or in the illusions of lecherous old lovers like January in Chaucer's *The Merchant's Tale*, or younger lechers like Absolon, in *The Miller's Tale*, who dramatize the innocence, piety, and purity of their lechery by quoting from the *Song of Songs*. In the *Roman de la Rose*, Guillaume de Lorris allegorizes this component of love as *Simpleice*, the second arrow to wound the lover's heart (lines 1734-45).

Notes – Book 2

- 2531 *fairnes of the roses rede*. The rose is regularly affiliated with female desirability, as in the lover's quest in the *Roman de la Rose*. It, more than any other, is the love flower. Bergen emends *fairnes* to *freshnesse*.
- 2548 *ay with*. MS: *with many*.
- 2549 ff. *Pollas I behelde*. Lydgate is meticulous in giving to Athena all her traditional iconography — the spear, the olive tree, and the owl.
- 2555 *hir*. MS: *hir*.
- 2577 *chaunging*. MS: *chaungith*.
- 2578 *pley*. Bergen reads *play*.
- 2581 *Fulgence*. MS: *Fulgens*.
- 2596 *ther*. MS: *the*.
- 2598 *Fortune the fresche fetheris palle*. Compare Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* 5.1541–47.
- 2602 *oft*. Bergen emends to *ofte*.
- 2619 *attowys*. Bergen emends to *al attowys*, but see 2.4415: "And attowys done oure besynes."
- 2628 *an*. MS: *in*.
- 2642 *Discord*. Bergen observes that Discord is not mentioned by Guido.
- 2658 *deyvious*. Bergen reads *deynious*, which is equally plausible.
- 2670 *for*. Bergen emends to *of*.
- 2687 *onymentis*. Bergen emends to *oynementis*.
- 2692 *for*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

Troy Book

- 2695 *liche as bir Ovide*. Ovid's *Medicamina faciei*; see *Ars amatoria* 3.193–228.
- 2708 *fro*. MS: *therfro*.
- 2738 *unto*. MS: *to*.
- 2744 *stare*. MS: *to stare*.
- 2749 *fully*. MS: *ful*.
- 2760–65 Paris's inspection of the beauty of the goddesses' bodies emphasizes the elements of joining and order that appear in the earlier description of the building of New Troy, albeit now in an erotic vein.
- 2765 *jugen*. MS: *given*.
- 2769 *in*. Bergen emends to *of*.
- 2772 *Stremys* are "the rays sent out from the eye to the object seen" (MED).
- 2789 *without*. Bergen emends to *withoute*.
- 2793 *love and drede*. See Chaucer's description of the feelings that the people have for Walter — "Biloved and drad" — in The Clerk's Tale (IV.69).
- 2797 Bergen ends the sentence here, without a main clause. I punctuate it so that *If ye adverte* (line 2794) is completed by *I rede* (line 2798).
- 2800 *abood*. MS: *abore*.
- 3448 *As*. Bergen emends to *And*.
- 3470 *takeith*. Bergen emends to *took*, but see the combination of the preterite and historical present immediately below at 3.3476–77: "He spendeth ther, liche to his degré, / And quit hym manly in his oblaciouns."
- right*. Bergen emends to *righte*.
- 3477 *oblaciouns*. MS: *oblacioun*.

Notes – Book 2

- 3518-24 The report of Paris recalls the effect of rumor in the Piramus and Thisbe story; see Chaucer's *The Legend of Good Women*, lines 719-20: "The name of everych gan to other spryngage / By women that were neighebores aboute."
- 3527 *pylgrymage*. Bergen reads *pilgrymage*.
- 3531-51 For the possibilities of unlicensed behavior and erotic encounters, see the example of Chaucer's Wife of Bath who uses "pleyes of myracles" (III.558) as one occasion among many for entertainment and the company of "lusty folk." The signals described in the passage are Ovidian.
- 3545 *or*. MS: *of*.
- 3547 *stole*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 3575-3631 Lydgate significantly expands Guido's apostrophe in Book 7.
- 3594 *unto*. MS: *to*.
- 3600 *out of muwe*. See *Troilus and Criseyde* 1.381: "First to hidem his desir in muwe," where Chaucer describes Troilus's effort to hide his love. See also 2.3701-02.
- 3602 *as hare among houndis*. The proverb usually expresses fright rather than carelessness. It is so used by Chaucer in The Shipman's Tale (VII.103-05) and Boece (3m12.12) and by Gower (*Confessio Amantis* Pro.1061). Bergen emends to *the houndis*.
- 3624 *nadde*. MS: *nar*.
- wikke*. MS: *wikked*.
- 3630 *on Troye*. MS: *Troye*.
- 3636 *Made*. "She" is the understood subject.
- 3646 *nist*. Bergen emends to *ninte*.
- 3649 *wende*. Bergen emends to *ne wende*.

Troy Book

- 3654 *be*. MS: *have been*.
- 3659 *considerereth*. I take this verb as syntactically parallel with *thought*; Bergen begins a new sentence and requires "he" as the understood subject.
- 3672 Lydgate's phrasing recalls Chaucer's portrait of Criseyde in Book 5: "Paradis stood formed in hire yēn" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.817).
- 3680 *want*. Bergen emends to *waste*.
- 3701–02 In adapting Guido, Lydgate ascribes to Helen the dissembling that Chaucer makes a feature of Troilus's response to first seeing Criseyde (*Troilus and Criseyde* 1.278–80).
- 3702 *no*. MS: *that no*.
- 3705 *plesance*. Bergen reads *plesaunce*.
- 3718 *eyen*. Bergen emends to *eye*.
- 3748 *fyre*. Bergen emends to *fiȝe*; see Pro.11 and 4.3155.
- 4344 *lightly*. Bergen emends to *slightly*.
- dissymble*. MS: *dissymable*. Lydgate returns to this problematic notion of prudence as dissembling when Priam later rebukes his men for attacking Diomedede (2.7020) when Ulysses and Diomedede come to Troy as ambassadors in the last diplomatic effort before the war begins.
- 4354 *kyndle*. MS: *kyndly*. Bergen emends the line to read *That he of vengeance kyndle may the fer*.
- 4366 *good*. MS: *glad*.
- glad*. MS: *good*.
- the*. MS: *thow*. Accepting Bergen's transposition of *good* and *glad* for sense. Menelaus may be either good or glad in appearance, but he is advised to feign glad behavior in public.

Notes - Book 2

- 4368 *woldest*. MS: *wost*.
- 4369 *grevaunce*. Bergen reads *grevance*.
- 4388 *of oure hevy*. Bergen emends to *ouare hevy*.
- 4402 *undirstronde*. MS: *to undirstronde*.
- 4405 *happe*. MS: *hap*. Bergen emends to *or hap*, which then must be governed by *What that* and be taken as grammatically parallel to *befalle*; the phrase is, however, merely parenthetical: "come what may."
- 4427 *th'effect*. MS: *the theffect*.
- 4697 *Galfride*. Geoffrey of Vinsauf, whose *Poetria Nova* (c. 1210) became a standard school text for rhetoric even into the fifteenth century. Chaucer often cites Geoffrey, and quite playfully in *The Nun's Priest's Tale*, VII.3347, where the teller defers to his formulae as he attempts to explain the hubbub caused by Chauntecleer's ill-fate with the fox.
- 4704 The phrasing echoes Chaucer's mock deference to courtly lovers who compose ("make") as amateur poets: "[I] am ful glad yf I may fynde an ere / Of any goodly word that ye han left" (*The Legend of Good Women* F 76-77).
- 4711 *eithe to knowe*. Bergen emends to *eithe knowe* but notes MS reading.
- 4717 *Tempere*. Bergen reads *Tempre*.
- ouare*. Bergen reads *our*.
- vermyloun*. Bergen proposes to read as four syllables — *vermilion*.
- 4719 *folweth*. MS: *forweth*.
- 4731 *Balard*. The proverbially proud horse; see Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* 1.218 and *The Canon's Yeoman's Tale* (VIII.1413). Lydgate uses the figure again at 5.3506.

Troy Book

- 4732 *wey*. Bergen emends to *weye*.
- 4733 *on hede*. Bergen emends to *of hede*.
- 4736–62 Atwood (pp. 40–41) and Pearsall (1990), p. 41; (1970), pp. 55–58, note that Lydgate's portrait incorporates a number of details from Chaucer's portrait of Criseyde (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.806–26).
- 4739 Bergen wrongly indicates that *be* must be added.
- 4740 *to lowe*. Bergen emends to *lowe*.
- 4747 *were*. MS: *where*.
- 4748 *And*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4752 *ne*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4761 *unstedfastnes*. MS: *unstefastnes*.
- 4861–95 The verbal portrait of Troilus derives from Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* 5.827–40.
- 4863 *to*. MS: *for to*.
- 4864 *of*. Bergen emends to *on*. See *Troilus and Criseyde* 5.827 for description.
- 4865 See Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* 5.830.
- 4887 *Grekis*. Bergen emends to *the Grekis*.
- 4888 *help*. Bergen emends to *shelde*.
- 6539 *is ther*. Bergen emends to *ther is*.
- 6553 *or*. Accepting Bergen's emendation of MS: *and*; see same phrase above at 2.6548.
- 6563 *eke in*. Bergen emends to *in*.

Notes - Book 3

- 6600 namely. MS: *manly*.
- 6635 *broght*. Bergen reads *brought*.
- 6638 *decur*. Following Bergen who restores *decur* (from Latin *decoquo*), with the sense of "to ripen, digest in the mind by thinking over."
- 6640-61 Lydgate, amplifying Guido, introduces a Christian notion of choice into the evolving pattern of deterministic tragic action. Agamemnon concedes that the Greeks could have restored Hesione and so forestalled the events set in motion by Paris's sack of Cythera and his abduction of Helen. At the same time, however, he prepares to send the Trojans demands for recompense that they cannot accept.
- 6677 *to falle*. Bergen emends to *for to falle*.
- 6682 *for*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 8706 *boke*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

Book 3

- 11 *Flegonte*. Ovid (*Metamorphoses* 2.153-54) names four horses of Phoebus: Pyrois, Eous, Aethon, and Phlegon. Fulgentius (*Mythologiae* 1.12) points out that they correspond to the four periods of the day. Phlegon corresponds to sunset. Vatican Mythographer 2 derives his name from Greek for "loving the earth" because at the ninth hour of the day he follows the sunset to rest.
- 12 *oure*. MS: *her*.
- 24 *his manhad*. MS: *hie manhad*.
- 545 *wordis*. MS: *wardis*.
- 551-56 See above at 2.192-97 and later at Env.100-01.
- 569 *more, soothly*. MS: *soothly more*.

Troy Book

- 571 *Nor.* Bergen emends to *No.* *sode*. Bergen emends to *fade*.
- 572 *in.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 583 *his.* MS: *the.* to. MS: *of.* Accepting Bergen's emendations.
- 611 *lokkid in a cheyne.* Lydgate repeats the phrase at 3.3838, where Achilles describes his friendship with Patroclus to Hector as the two heroes prepare to settle the war by single combat between them. A version of the phrase — *lynke hym in a cheyne* (3.4859) — reappears in Lydgate's description of Criseyde's manipulation of Diomede.
- 618 *amonge hem.* Bergen emends to *anoon hym*.
- 745 *myghr.* Bergen emends to *entenr.*
- 746 *lik a doughty knyght.* Bergen emends to *ful impacient.*
- 773 *Oute.* Bergen reads *Out.*
- 796 *lik a wode lyoun.* See Chaucer's description of Palamon in The Knight's Tale: "this Palamon / In his fightyng were a wood leon" (I.1655-56).
- 800 *ful.* Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 834 *hem.* MS: *hym*.
- 836 *constreyned.* Bergen (4.221) takes this as an ablative absolute, but the grammar requires a passive sense for the verb ("he was compelled, forced").
- 840 *among.* Bergen emends to *mougre*, but the MS reading, in the sense of "in the presence of" is equally plausible.
- 843 *alle.* Bergen emends to *of.*
- 845 *avengid on hym.* Bergen emends to *on hym avengid*, but MS reading makes equal metrical sense if *avengid* is taken as two syllables (*aveng'd*), as it must be with either reading.

Notes – Book 3

- 850 *callid*. Bergen emends to *callid*.
- 870 *cam*. I have supplied the verb needed here, which repairs the meter and parallels *cam kyng Merious* (line 876) in the later part of the clause.
- worlhi*. Bergen emends to *mighty* to avoid repetition.
- 880 *for*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 896 *anon*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 976 *the*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 989 *hath*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 994–1004 Lydgate uses anacoluthon here, but the main clause can be restored by dropping *And* (line 1000) and taking *he made* (line 1003) as the subject and verb. The overall sense is that while the three Trojans cut down the Greeks, Troilus is exceptionally deadly.
- 1006 *sawe*. Bergen reads *saw*.
- 1009 *Hent*. The subject (Menestheus) must be supplied.
- 1013 *the*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 1038 *the*. MS: *your*.
- 1055 *enhasteth*. MS: *enhasteth hym*, what. MS: *war*.
- 1087 *stronge*. MS: *so stronge*.
- 1096 *the light*. Bergen emends to *the ferful light*.
- 1097 Accepting the line Bergen supplies for the one missing in the MS.
- 1098 *And*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 1103 *hurtle*. MS: *harkle*.

Troy Book

- 1897 *cast.* Bergen emends to *casle*.
- plainly.* Bergen emends to *plainly*.
- 1898 *in haſte.* Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 1903 *distourbe.* MS: *distourble*.
- 1908 *witk.* MS: *in. in.* Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 1917 *ybonde.* MS: *bonde*.
- 1918 The line is an ablative absolute; the main verb, *Repeiret is* (line 1920), requires "he" as the understood subject.
- 1945 *made also.* Bergen emends to *also made*.
- 1947 *in.* Bergen emends to *into*.
- 1964 *many other.* MS: *other many*.
- 1975–2035 Lydgate attributes Troy's fall to Fate, aided by Fortune; but he also insists that the proximate cause is Hector's lack of prudence. By connecting determinism to human choice, he offers a Christian view of pagan history. The thematic framework is in many respects the one that Boethius works out in the *Consolation of Philosophy* to accommodate divine foreknowledge and free will, but Lydgate complicates the explanation by insisting that other authentic human choices were possible. Tragic action is not the result of a discrepancy between necessity and limited human understanding; it stems from actual choices made from among real alternatives. At 3.2139–57 Lydgate reaffirms the possibility of a different outcome to the story.
- 1977 *weſſuler.* MS: *wilfulnes*.
- 1993 *wer ſet.* Bergen emends to *sere*.
- 2008 *unkyndnes.* Bergen emends to *unkyndenes*.
- 2024 *after.* MS: *astene*.

Notes - Book 3

- 2033-34 Lines transposed in MS.
- 2042 *that he was nyghe*. Bergen emends to *he was ful nyghe*.
- 2060 *of fortune*. Accepting Bergen's emendation for MS: *fortune*.
- 2097 *he of berthe*. MS: *of berth he*.
- 2128 *pleynly*. MS: *plynly*.
- 2137 *hir*. Bergen reads *her*.
- 2155 *lyk*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
is. MS: *is*, followed by Bergen.
- 2245 *and the lamentacion*. Bergen emends to *and lamentacion*.
- 2248 *herte was*. MS: *hertes were*.
- 2264 *mercy, pitē*. MS: *pity mercy*.
- 2278 *servytude*. MS: *servytate*.
- 2296 *troughth*. MS: *troughh*.
- 2308 *eye of his discreccioan*. By tradition, prudence has three eyes to survey past, present, and future. When she is in the Greek camp, Chaucer's Criseyde laments that she lacked one of prudence's three eyes (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.744) — the capacity for foresight. Chaucer's reference may be to the famous image of three-eyed prudence on the chariot of the church in Dante's *Purgatorio* (29.130–32). As Charles Singleton notes, in the *Convivio* Dante equates prudence with wisdom (*The Divine Comedy*, trans. Charles S. Singleton, 6 vols. in 3 [Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1970–75], 2:723). Jerome Taylor points out that Hugh of St. Victor's *De sacramentis* identifies the three "eyes" of man before the fall as those of the flesh, reason, and contemplation (*The Didascalia of Hugh of St. Victor* [New York: Columbia University Press, 1961], p. 177n). These eyes see the world, man, and God respectively.

Troy Book

- 2311 *avalleth*. Bergen emends to *valleneth*.
- 2680 *Or*. MS: *Of*.
- 2684 *anon echon*. Bergen emends to *echon anon*.
- 2687 *Thei*. MS: *The*.
- 2689 *on lyve*. Bergen emends to *alyve*.
- 2719 *Fro*. MS: *For*.
- 2726 *lif*. Accepting Bergen's emendation for MS: *silfe*; see *silfe* used immediately below (line 2728).
- 2741 *maked han*. MS: *maken*.
- 2744 *morwentyng*. MS: *morwynge*.
- 3106–14 Priam's counselors comprise two groups — his sons and the men who will later conspire to betray Troy to the Greeks.
- 3108 *inwardly*. Accepting Bergen's emendation for MS: *inly*.
- 3110 *fame*. MS: *name*.
- 3113 *for*. Accepting Bergen's emendation for parallelism with line 3111.
- 3118 *The*. Bergen emends to *This*.
- 3137 *therewpon*. MS: *hereappot*.
- 3143 *caste*. Bergen reads *cast*.
- 3149 *plainly*. Bergen emends to *now plainly*.
- 3155 *as*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 3163 *endyng*. Bergen emends to *ende*.

Notes - Book 3

- 3168 *for.* Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 3201-07 Aeneas unwittingly forecasts the exchange of Antenor for Thoas and Criseyde, and he ironically represents a situation in which right reason and prudence contribute to the overthrow of Troy.
- 3216 *of.* Bergen emends to *on*. Both forms appear in MS: see 1.4044: "venge him of his soon" and 3.3857: "How Achilles was vengid of his foo" (3.3857) but "To be vengid on youre grete pride" (3.2260). Chaucer's Melibee says "I shal nat venge me of myne enemys" (VII.1427); elsewhere in Melibee (VII.1280), Chaucer has forms of "venge on" and "venge upon."
- 3236 *maked.* "She" is the understood subject of the sentence.
- 3666 *and Thoas.* Bergen emends to *and of Thoas.*
- 3667 *delyvered shulde.* Bergen emends to *shulde delyvered.*
- 3671 *Oow.* MS: *And.*
- 3681 *hym.* Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 3690 *Howe that.* Bergen emends to *Howe.*
- 3712 *sente.* MS: *wente.*
- 3719-51 Lydgate, following Guido, differs from Chaucer's version (*Troilus and Criseyde* 4.135-47) of the exchange. Lydgate and Guido also leave unexplained why Priam's hatred for Calchas (and so his resistance to granting Calchas's wish) is set aside so that the exchange may go forward.
- 3719 *hateful.* MS: *hathful.*
- 3729 *ar.* MS: *a.*
- 3743 *the.* Bergen emends to *an.*
- 3749 *repellid.* Bergen emends to *repeled* to assure sense of "rescinded, revoked" rather than "repelled."

Troy Book

- 3761 *Blaundisshinge*. MS: *Blaundissinge*.
- 3764 *to vesite*. MS: *for to vesite*. Accepting Bergen's emendation to avoid repetition from preceding line, where meter requires the additional syllable.
- 3788 *whan*. MS: *wan*.
- 3794 *take*. MS: *taken*.
- 3810 *wolde*. MS: *wele*.
- 3830 *mysilf*. MS: *my lif*. The love of another as oneself is a fundamental value in the discussion of virtuous friendship in Aristotle and Cicero. Achilles's claim here is that his relation to Patroclus is the intimacy of such friendship rather than erotic desire. In Guido, he says that he did not love Patroclus less than himself (Book 19).
- 3837 *outherly*. Bergen emends to *enterly*. *tweyne* must be read as a single syllable to rhyme with *cheyne*.
- 3838 *lokkid in o cheyme*. Lydgate echoes this phrase (3.5366) in the scene in which Hector tries to strip the armor off a dead Greek king and Achilles fatally wounds him.
- 3842 *dane*. Bergen emends to *dath dane*.
- 3843 *out of*. MS: *in*.
- 3844 *it shal*. Bergen emends to *shal* and suggests *must* should be read as *mustē* to produce a pentameter line.
- 3852 *long*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 3857 *of*. Bergen emends to *on*. See 3.3216 (above).
- 3887 *oather*. MS: *other*.
- 3889 *parsueth*. MS: *parsuert*.

Notes – Book 3

- 3897 *right nor equité*. Hector employs the same formula that Priam uses earlier in arguing that King Thoas should be killed (3.3139).
- 3908 Torti, p. 181, notes that this line is echoed in a later reference to Troilus's love (3.4220).
- 3928 *shul*. MS: *shalen*.
- 3932 *al do*. Bergen emends to *ado*.
- 3981 *it quit in yoare*. MS: *in quiete and in*.
- 3994 *seie*. MS: *seide*.
- 4009 *nar*. MS: *it nar*.
- 4018 *the whiche*. Bergen emends to *whiche*.
- 4029 Casting down the glove is Lydgate's addition. See Bergen 4:156.
- 4035 *dide yir*. Bergen emends to *yir dide*.
- 4053 *the*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 4066–70 Priam's acceptance of the majority opinion recalls the earlier scene in which he accedes to his counselors and does not insist on killing Thoas (3.3219–21).
- 4070 *He*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 4075–4448 Lydgate presents Troilus's story as if it were a *de casibus* tragedy, an example illustrating the general principle of Fortune's mutability as in the *Foil of Princes*, which he translated from Boccaccio's *De casibus virorum illustrium*, rather than the individualized, subjective experience that Chaucer emphasizes.
- 4078 *to be*. Bergen emends to *for to be*.
- 4079 *men*. Bergen emends to *folk*.

Troy Book

- 4085 *that*. Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 4090 *feit*. Bergen emends to *fête*.
- 4090 *a peyne*. Bergen emends to *peyne*.
- 4093–94 Lydgate employs Chaucer's ominous rhyme *Criseyde / he deyde*. Later (3.4199–4200), he uses the rhyme to link Chaucer to the writing of *Troilus and Criseyde*.
- 4101 *which in*. MS: *that within*.
- 4104 *compleyninge*. MS: *compleynigne*.
- 4107 *beynde*. MS: *beside*.
- 4109 Lydgate echoes the line ending Arcite's speech when he sees Emily in The Knight's Tale: "I nam but deed; ther nis namoore to seye" (I.1122).
- 4119–20 The rhyme *Troye / joye* is pervasive in *Troilus and Criseyde*, beginning with the opening stanza.
- 4121 *the teris down distille*. See Chaucer's Troilus as he speaks to Pandarus after the Trojan parliament has decided to trade Criseyde for Antenor: "This Troylus in teris gan distille, / As licour out of a lambyc ful faste" (4.519–20).
- 4122 *trille*. MS: *tille*.
- 4123 *hir blake wede*. In Chaucer, Criseyde is first seen "in hir blake wede" (I.177).
- 4133 *ascendyng*. MS: *ascendyn*.
- 4139 *whi shal we*. MS: *we shal*.
- 4159–85 Lydgate retells the events of Book 4 of Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* but omits several parts, including Troilus's speech on predestination.
- 4177 *dowmeb*. MS: *dowme*.

Notes – Book 3

- 4179 *flikenit*. Bergen emends to *flickered*; see 4.6739, 5.3551.
- 4182 *ther*. MS: *the*.
- 4187 *Disconsolat*. Lydgate's use of the term here both echoes Chaucer and connects the lovers' loss of each other to the fall of the city; see below, 3.5488.
- 4189 *bother*. Bergen emends to *bothe*.
- 4192–95 Lydgate uses one of Chaucer's favorite rhetorical devices, *occupatio* (where you say what you say you are not going to say), as a means to praise him.
- 4197 *Chaucer*. MS: *Chaucer*.
- 4198 *so wel hath*. Bergen emends to *hath so wel*.
- 4202 *For*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4203 *surquedie*. See *Troilus and Criseyde* 1.213.
- 4208 Lydgate rehearses the events in Book 1 of *Troilus and Criseyde*, where Troilus falls in love with Criseyde.
- 4214 *wise*. MS: *while*.
- 4216 *afir*. MS: *first*.
- 4217 Lydgate describes Pandarus's role in the love affair by obliquely echoing Pandarus's own terms: "for the am I biconen, / Bitwixen game and ernest, swich a meene / As maken wommen unto men to comen" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 3.253–55). See below, 4.742.
- 4218 *maked*. MS: *made*.
- 4224–28 Lydgate here echoes the ending of Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* (5.1849–55).
- 4226 *fleshly*. Bergen emends to *fleshy*.

Troy Book

- 4227 *variacione*. MS: *variance*. See Troilus's "double sorwe" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 1.1, l.54).
- 4228 MS: *worlly*. Bergen emends to *worlly*, but MS form is an attested variant.
- 4233 *ever*. MS: *never*.
- 4234 *Chaucer*. MS: *Chauncer*.
- 4248 *as*. MS: *a*.
- 4251 Petrarch was crowned poet laureate by the Roman Senate on 8 April 1341. In 1330 he entered the service of Cardinal Giovanni Colonna and remained under the family's patronage until 1347-48.
- 4254-55 In *The House of Fame* (line 1469), Chaucer names Guido along with Homer, Dares and Dictys, "Lollius," and Geoffrey of Monmouth as writers on the iron pillar that bears up the fame of Troy.
- 4263 *joie*. Bergen reads *joy*.
- 4274 *fals*. Bergen emends to *false*.
- 4294 *is meyst ever*. Bergen emends to *ever is meyr*.
- 4296 *her swetē*. Accepting Bergen's addition of *her*.
- 4315-16 These lines are reversed in other MSS.
- 4323 *It shewed*. MS: *It is shewed*.
- 4327 *oblacions*. MS: *oblacouns*. See 2.3531-51. The repetition of the allusion to the Wife of Bath links Criseyde to Helen; she is a second Helen, as Troilus is a second Hector.
- 4329 *seith*. MS: *seit*.
- selle*. See the Wife of Bath's remark about herself: "The flour is goon; ther
is namoore to telle; / The bren, as I best kan, now moste I selle" (III.477-
78).

Notes - Book 3

- 4343-4448 In *The Legend of Good Women*, Chaucer portrays himself as woman's friend: "Be war, ye women, of youre subtyl fo, / Syn yit this day men may ensaumple se; / And trusteth, as in love, no man but me" (lines 2559-61). Lydgate offers a standard refutation of the misogynistic attack on women, arguing that there are a thousand virtuous women for each perfidious one; Chaucer incorporates the argument in *The Merchant's Tale* (IV.1362-74) and *The Tale of Melibee* (VII.1098-1102), with an accompanying list of Biblical heroines. But Lydgate also accepts the claim that female duplicity is part of women's nature. See Mieszkowski, pp. 117-26, for the contradictions in Lydgate's reproval of Guido. Torti, p. 177, proposes that Lydgate "puts still more subtle and ambiguous emphasis on Criseyde's inconstancy" than Guido. Watson, pp. 97-100, argues that Lydgate associates Chaucer with Criseyde as a way of rejecting *Troilus and Criseyde* and asserting the moral vision of *Troy Book*.
- 4356 *secre*. See the Clerk's reference to the Wife of Bath and "al hire secte" (IV.1171).
- 4359 *hym*. Bergen emends to *he*, which is an acceptable alternative.
- 4370 Jacobus de Voragine's *Legenda aurea* is the most popular late medieval source for the story of St. Ursula and the eleven thousand virgin martyrs of Cologne. According to legend, Ursula was the daughter of a British Christian king promised to a pagan, who managed to delay her marriage for three years, hoping to remain a virgin. During this period, she set out by ship with ten companions, each of them on an accompanying ship with a thousand companions of their own. The women traveled extensively and were eventually martyred by Huns at Cologne after Ursula refused to marry their chieftain. The citizens of Cologne buried them and built a church in their honor. The historical record of Ursula begins with an inscription dated around 400. The number of companions ascribed to Ursula is probably an error, reading an abbreviated text "XI MV" as 11,000 virgins ("undecim millia virgines") instead of eleven virgin martyrs ("undecim martyres virgines").
- 4382 *the synthe spere*. In the Ptolemaic system, the planets and stars revolve around the earth in concentric spheres. The ninth sphere is the Primum Mobile, the First Mover who imparts movement to the other spheres, while God stands at a further remove, encompassing the universe. See below, § 3602.

Troy Book

- 4417 *skippeth over wher ye list nat rede.* See Chaucer's admonition in The Miller's Prologue: "Turne over the leef and chese another tale" (I.3177).
- 4422 *the.* Bergen emends to *for.*
- 4426-27 See the scene of exchange in *Troilus and Criseyde* where Diomede is alert to the distress of Troilus and Criseyde when he takes the bridle of Criseyde's horse (5.85-91).
- 4428 *how that.* Bergen emends to *how.*
- 4435 *was.* MS: *wer.* Lydgate follows Guido's version of Criseyde's immediate acceptance of Diomede as a lover rather than Chaucer's consciously indeterminate account of her shift in affections: "Men seyn — I not — that she yaf hym hire herte" (5.1050).
- 4442 *Kyndes transmutacion.* Chaucer describes Criseyde as "slydynge of corage" (5.825).
- 4446 *unto.* MS: *to.*
- 4820-69 The account here of Diomede's service as a courtly lover contrasts greatly with Chaucer's portrayal of Diomede as a calculating seducer. Criseyde, too, differs by carefully manipulating Diomede, whereas in Chaucer she is increasingly unable to exercise her will.
- 4827 *bothe megre and lene.* Diomede resembles Arcite in The Knight's Tale (I.1361-62) as he suffers *amor heros*, the lover's melancholy; the phrasing in Lydgate, however, echoes the portrait of Avarice outside the garden in the *Roman de la Rose* (line 199); in Chaucer's *Romanour*, "she was lene and megre" (line 218).
- 4829 *al.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4849 *As wommen kan holde a man fal narwe.* See Chaucer's Boethian image (*Boece* 3.m.2.21-31) for Alisoun in The Miller's Tale (I.3224), the peregrine falcon's faithless lover in The Squire's Tale (V.610-20), and Phœbus's wife in The Manciple's Tale (IX.163-74).

Notes - Book 3

- 4853 *betwixe hope and drede.* Echoes Chaucer's description of Troilus (5.630, 5.1207; see also *Troilus and Criseyde* 3.1315).
- 4861 *him.* MS: *hem.*
- 4894 *show.* Bergen emends to *soos* to avoid repetition, but Lydgate here seems to be using iteration both for stylistic elaboration and for contrast with the preceding night and Andromache's dream, whose clarity Hector fatally ignores.
- 4910-16 Lydgate invokes the vocabulary and dream categories of Macrobius's *Commentary on the Dream of Scipio Africanus*, the major literary source for medieval dreamlore, but he follows Chaucer's Prologue to *The House of Fame* (lines 7-11) in expanding Macrobius's five categories to six. See below 3.4969.
- 4935 *stok of worthines.* The image is not in Guido. Lydgate's phrase conflates the opening of Chaucer's moral balade *Gentillesse* ("The firste stok, fader of gentillesse") and Pandarus's description of Hector: "he, that is of worthy-nesse welle" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 2.178).
- 4936 *wont.* MS: *wonnt.*
- 4938 *This Troyan wal, Hector.* The image here is not in Guido but appears later in Hector's epitaph (Book 35); see *Troilus and Criseyde* 2.154 and below 4.3946. In the *Metamorphoses* 13.281, Ovid describes Achilles as "the Greeks' wall."
- 4942 *litel.* Bergen reads *litil.*
- 4950 *this.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 4959 *Seiying.* Bergen emends to *Seyng.*
- 4969-70 I have retained the MS readings for *oracle* and *myracle*, which Bergen reverses. Lydgate uses the Macrobian vocabulary inconsistently. The *oracle* (*oraculum*), for example, is a dream in which a figure of authority appears and then reveals what will occur. Andromache's dream best fits the general category of the prophetic *visio* (Macrobius, *Commentary* 1.3.9).

Troy Book

- 4972 *hem*. MS: *hym*.
- 4981 *and sovereinté*. Bergen emends to *and of sovereinté*.
- 5021 *is*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5022 *Lyke*. Bergen reads *Lyk*.
- 5049 *on*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5056 *to*. Bergen emends to *onto*.
- 5073 *Andronomecha*. MS: *Andronemaca*.
- 5093 *harded*. Bergen emends to *harde*. In Christian theology, the hard heart is a symbol of the lack of charity.
- 5096 *moren and renewe*. MS: *mome and remewe*.
- 5116 *the*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5120 *is*. Bergen emends to *was*.
- 5129 *he*. MS: *hym*.
- 5138 *like a tigre or a lyoun wood*. In The Knight's Tale (I.1655-57), Chaucer compares Arcite and Palamon respectively to the tiger and the lion; see 3.5246, 3.796.
- 5139 *hir*. Bergen emends to *hir*.
- 5150 *had anoon*. MS: *anoon had*.
- 5158 *ne myghre*. Bergen emends to *myghre*.
- 5164 *aboute*. Bergen emends to *apow*.
- 5165 *sese*. MS: *sesse*.

Notes – Book 3

- 5183 *in.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5185 *worthi.* Bergen emends to *myghty.*
- 5196 *ne.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5215 *Achilles.* Bergen emends to *Achille*, though the addition of a syllable before the caesura is a common pattern in Lydgate.
- 5223 *home.* Bergen emends to *homeward.*
- 5225 *Margaritoun.* Bergen emends to *Margariton* to rhyme with *Thelamon.*
- 5226 *that.* MS: *of.*
- 5231 *in baste wer.* MS: *wer in baste.*
- 5247–48 Compare *Troilus and Criseyde* 2.193–94, as wondrous Troilus puts the Greeks to flight: "For nevere yet so thikke a swarm of been / Ne sleigh, as Grekes for hym gonne fleen." See also *Troy Book* 3.5330.
- 5249 *Thai.* Bergen reads *Thei.*
- 5275 *grete.* MS: *grete.* Bergen reads *gret* but emends to *grete.*
- 5277 *compassen.* MS: *compassed.*
- 5279 *mow.* Bergen emends to *may.*
- 5280 *or.* Bergen emends to *nor.*
- 5282 *that.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5283–84 Lydgate undercuts Achilles's heroic stature by showing in him a mixture of epic furor and calculation; as used elsewhere in the poem (1.1945, 3.5284, 4.197, 4.3117, 4.4406, 4.5789, 4.5822, 4.6330, 4.6997, 5.3358), *engone* is a term for deviousness.

Troy Book

- 5289 Guido (Book 21) follows Benoit (lines 16166–68) in including the detail that Polycenes hopes to marry Achilles's sister.
- 5291 The line ironically echoes the description of Chaucer's Squire in the General Prologue to the *Canterbury Tales*: "In hope to stonden in his lady grace" (1.88).
- 5301 *darte*. Bergen emends to *quarel*, a bolt from a crossbow.
- grounde*. Bergen emends to *ygrounde* for meter.
- 5303 *the*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5317 *to*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5324 *yeven*. MS: *g/f*.
- 5332 *he*. MS: *him*.
- 5335 *Enbroudrid*. Bergen emends to *Enbroadid*.
- 5363 *No*. Bergen emends to *Nor*.
- 5364 *nor to*. Bergen emends to *to*.
- 5372 Hector's fatal error in trying to despoil the dead Greek king recalls his earlier effort to despoil Patroclus, and so Achilles's vengeance on him reflects a special irony.
- 5383 *Allas*. MS: *Allas the while*. See 3.5396.
- 5402 *to*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5422 *for*. Accepting Bergen's addition. See 3.4089 and the office of aiding lovers to lament their misfortune which Chaucer's narrator takes on at the beginning of *Troilus and Criseyde* (1.22–56).
- 5431 *ever*. MS: *alle*.

Notes – Book 3

5445 *to*, MS: *for*.

5454 *A dreyfere*. See Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde* 1.13.

5462 *boger*. Bergen emends to *boker*.

5487–88 *desolat . . . disconsolat*. Lydgate apostrophizes Troy in the same language that Chaucer employs in Troilus's lamentation before Criseyde's empty house after she has been delivered to the Greeks: "O paleys desolat, / O hous of houses whilom best ihight, / O paleys empty and disconsolat" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.540–42). Lydgate earlier describes Troilus and Criseyde as "Disconsolat" (3.4187) when they meet after the exchange for Antenor has been decided. He repeats the pairing of "desolat" and "disconsolat" in Achilles's speech urging the Greeks to abandon the war so that he can marry Polynena (4.993–94). The phrasing in both *Troy Book* and *Troilus and Criseyde* echoes the opening of Jeremiah's Lamentations. The connection between the biblical lament and the loss of a worldly love object is made in Chaucer's translation of the *Roman de la Rose* when the dreamer is left "all sool, disconsolat" (*Romant*, line 3168) after Bel Acuel is driven off. Chaucer adds the phrasing from Lamentations; Guillaume de Lorris writes, "je remés tous esbahis, / Honsteus et mas" (lines 2952–53).

5517 *mortal*. MS: *mortally*.

5526 *whom*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

5537 *taken*. MS: *takēn*.

5546 *boris*. Bergen emends to *bolis*, but I preserve the MS reading, which conveys the image of savage rage rather than sacrifice. "Wilde bore" is a fairly common image in Chaucer, notably in The Knight's Tale (1.1658), where it expresses the fury of Palamon and Arcite in their battle against each other.

5556 *make*. MS: *make make*.

5558 *Her pitous sobbynge*. MS: *The woful cries*.

5559 *The woful cries*. MS: *Her pitous sobbynge*.

Troy Book

- 5572 *Thei.* Bergen emends to *To.*
- 5595 *in sight it.* Bergen emends to *it in sight.*
- 5596 *lifly.* MS: *likly.* Accepting Bergen's emendation.
- 5603 *axeynge.* Bergen reads *axyngē.*
- 5612 *the.* Bergen emends to *in.*
- 5613 *spake.* MS: *speke.*
- 5627 *al.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5643 *Attendyng.* MS: *Attending.* MS reading is a confusion of the verb *extenden* (MED).
- 5653 *the.* Bergen emends to *this.*
- 5654 *good.* MS: *gret.*
- 5679 *many.* MS: *many a.*
- 5686 *a sowle that were vegetable.* The soul is traditionally divided into three parts — vegetative, sensitive, and rational — which correspond hierarchically to plants, animals, and men. The division goes back to Plato's analytic separation of the concupiscent, irascible, and rational souls. Scholastic philosophers insist on the unity of the soul. In their systems, the vegetative soul confers the power to live, the animal soul the power to feel, and the rational soul the power to think. Lydgate's reference conveys the idea that Hector's body is kept alive but the other faculties are dead.
- 5689 *sembiably.* MS: *sembiably.*
- 5705 *were.* MS: *was.*
- 5714 *rejoysseden.* Bergen emends to *rejoyssed.*
- 5728 *on heighe.* MS: *a loft.*

Notes – Book 3

- 5729 *Plavius*. MS error for *Plinius*. The name in the corresponding passage in Benolt is *Plines* (line 16541). *Plavius* is a surname for Jupiter, as the sender of rain. The source for the passage on ebony is Pliny's *Natural History* 12.8.17–12.9.20.
- 5733 *lond*. MS: *londer*.
- 5737 *is*. MS: *it is*.

Book 4

- 154 *ir were no nede*. Bergen emends to *that ir were no nede*.
- 159 *How I th'ester*. Grammatically parallel with *that I have governaunce* as direct objects of *muse* and *grucchen*.
- 163 *brocage*. MS: *procage*.
- 196 *dewly may*. Bergen emends to *may dewely*.
- 208 *shald*. Bergen emends to *shalde*.
- 215 *obeied*. MS: *ben obeied*.
- 220 *compleyne*. Bergen emends to *pleyne*.
- 279 *highe*. Bergen emends to *your highe*.
- 287 *a*. Bergen emends to *the*.
- 301 In Lydgate as in Chaucer, *newe* usually carries a pejorative sense and represents a self-indulgent wish for novelty rather than stability and proven worth. In politics as much as in love, the poets censure *newfongilnes*. See note to 1.2090.
- 317 *in every cost*. Bergen emends to *aboute in every cost*, but the couplet remains a metrical problem. One alternative is to emend the next line to *The emperor*.

Troy Book

- 553 *sothly*. MS: *zoth*.
- 556 *unto*. Bergen emends to *to*.
- 556–57 Achilles's attendance at the rites in Apollo's temple, where he falls in love with Polynexa, recalls Troilus's first sight of Criseyde in the temple at the feast of the Palladium (*Troilus and Criseyde* 1.161).
- 561 *wer*. Bergen emends to *was*.
- 564 *gadered*. Bergen reads *gadred*.
- 575 *lowe*. MS: *lawe*.
- 590 *to*. MS: *unto*.
- 592 *Of*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 603 *percyng streynes of hir eyen two*. Achilles falls in love with Polynexa in a way that recalls Troilus's falling in love with Criseyde as Love dwells "[w]ithinne the subtile stremes of hir yen" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 1.305; see also *Troilus and Criseyde* 3.129). Lydgate repeats the image at 4.673.
- 612 *lyke*. Bergen emends to *lykly*.
- 619 *lovis snare*. See Troilus's and Pandarus's descriptions of his predicament (*Troilus and Criseyde* 1.507 and 663), echoed later by Criseyde in the Greek camp (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.748).
- 622 *best to do*. See *Troilus and Criseyde* 1.828 and 2.1485.
- 629 *This to seyn, the sonne wente doun*. Typical Chaucerian phrasing in the *Canterbury Tales* (I.181, I.1839, I.1857), perhaps best exploited for the effect of rhetorical deflation in The Franklin's Tale (V.1017–18).
- 640–43 See Troilus's taking to bed and making a mirror of his mind in which to see the image of Criseyde (*Troilus and Criseyde* 1.358–67). Lydgate injects a perhaps unconscious irony by using Troilus as a model for the figure who

Notes - Book 4

will dispatch him without pity later in the poem and "Despitously" in Chaucer's poem (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.1806).

- 645 *final cause*. In Aristotle's analysis of cause, the final cause is the reason for which an action is undertaken, as distinct from the formal, material, and instrumental causes. Lydgate conspicuously modifies Guido, who portrays Polynxena as the efficient cause of Achilles's love sickness.
- 673 *the streynys of hir eyen tweyne*. See above, 4.603.
- 674 *cove*. Bergen emends to *coven*; see 2.988.
- 686 *availien*. Bergen emends to *availie*. *or*. Bergen emends to *nor*.
- 690 *outrage*. MS: *outrage*.
- 698-701 Once he falls in love with Polynxena, Achilles changes his assessment of Hector's worth.
- 712 *provyde*. MS: *pvyde*.
- 725 *fretynge*. The term used here to describe Achilles's lovesickness is applied elsewhere to anger; see Peleus's anger toward Jason (1.229) and Lamedon's fury in battle (1.4167).
- 730 *or*. Accepting Bergen's emendation for MS: *and*.
- 742 *mene*. See above, 3.4217. Lydgate's allusion to Chaucer's Pandarus plays off his straightforward use of the term earlier (4.709) to signify a course of action.
- 756 *And*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 756-84 Lydgate goes beyond Guido's spare account of the messenger's mission and describes his speech as a logical argument, proceeding through an ordered sequence of premises to a necessary conclusion. The messenger proposes that marrying Polynxena to Achilles will end a war caused in part by the loss of Hesione and Paris's abduction of Helen.

Troy Book

- 761 *Effectuously*. Bergen emends to *Effectually*.
- 773 *thorough*. Bergen emends to *by* and avoids repetition with next line, which seems to be the rhetorical aim.
- 778 *performyd*. Bergen reads *performyd*.
- 782 *him*. MS: *hem*. The emendation reflects the two conditions of the proposal: that the Greeks end the war and Priam (*him*) live in peace thereafter.
- 784 *knyt up in a cheyne*. The same image is used earlier to describe Achilles's relationship with Patroclus (3.611, 3.3835-39).
- 787 *or that*. MS: *that or*.
- 798 *To*. MS: *For*.
- for*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 817 *to*. Bergen emends to *into*.
- 820 *for*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 835 *how*. Bergen emends to *that*.
- 881 *the treté*. Bergen emends to *this treté*.
- 907 *th' effect of this mater*. Chaucerian phrasing (Sir Thopas VII.958 and Troilus and Criseyde 4.890).
- 914 *away*. MS: *away*.
- 918 *cast*. Bergen emends to *caste*.
- 920 *cruellē*. Bergen emends to *cruelly*.
- 933 *take*. MS: *toke*.

Notes – Book 4

- 935 *a verray impossible*. See Aurelius's exclamation at the task Dorigen gives him in The Franklin's Tale: "this were an impossible" (V.1009).
- 936 *ben so*. Bergen emends to *ben ay so*.
- 966 *flouring yir in fame*. Bergen emends to *floureth yir the fame* for grammar, but the MS phrasing is consistent with Lydgate's style.
- 974 *liften*. Bergen emends to *liftē*.
- 987 *Was*. MS: *Az.*
- 993 *desolar*; see 3.5487–88.
- 1017 Bergen (4:223) notes that the phrase refers to Achilles rather than Hector.
- 1019 *yir*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 1035 *intro*. MS: *to*.
- 1049 *gilt*. Bergen emends to *glite*.
- 1051 *dyvor*. Bergen (4:223) notes that Guido does not mention divorce and that Lydgate here moves from canon to Roman law.
- 1052 *knowe*. Bergen emends to *iknowe*.
- 1089–90 The lines echo the beginning of Book 4 of *Troilus and Criseyde*, as Fortune withdraws her favor from Troilus: "From Troilus she gan hire brighte face / Awey to writhe, and tok of hym non heede, / But casse hym clene out of his lady grace" (4.8–10).
- 1095 *home that we*. Bergen emends to *thar we home*.
- 1108 *so*. MS: *in*.
- 1109 *Whiche*. Bergen emends to *While*.
- 1111 *so*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

Troy Book

- 1119-29 Achilles ironically echoes the argument made earlier by Paris (2.2341-47) that a Greek woman should be taken as recompense for Telamon's seizing Hesione after the fall of Lamedon's Troy.
- 1134 Repeats the last line of Chaucer's The Franklin's Tale (V.1624).
- 1142 *perturbid*. Bergen reads *parturbid*.
- 1147 *nold*. Bergen emends to *nolde*.
- 1162 *the felde*. Bergen emends to *feilde*.
- 1164 *yaf*. MS: *yaf in*.
- 1170 *the*. Bergen emends to *his*.
- 1197 *the request*. Bergen emends to *request*.
- 1213 *mendyn*. Bergen emends to *amendyn*. *repeire*. Bergen emends to *repare* to clarify rhyme with *sparre*; see 4.857-58, where *contrarie* rhymes with *apaire*.
- 1221 *parpos*. Bergen emends to *purpose*.
- 2036 *That as the deth thei flesde fro his sigh*. See Chaucer's description of Troilus's martial valor: "the Grekes as the deth him dredde" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 1.483).
- 2058 *rariyng*. Bergen emends to *lettynge*.
- 2059 *threw*. MS: *threwē*.
- 2075 *myghry*. MS: *myghtre*.
- 2085 *han*. Bergen emends to *had*.
- 2088 *the knyghthod*. MS: *his knyghthod*, *the highe*. MS: *his highe*.
- 2095 *ridyng*. Bergen emends to *hym ridyng*, to emphasize that the knights are riding around Agamemnon in an escort.

Notes - Book 4

- 2103 *ther*. MS: *thei*.
- 2110 *hem*. Bergen emends to *hem*. In the MS reading, Agamemnon sees the distress Troilus has inflicted on him and how the Greeks are unable to resist Troilus.
- 2111 *the*. Bergen emends to *his*.
- 2139 Lydgate adds reminiscences of Criseyde's interviews with Troilus in Book 3 of *Troilus and Criseyde*; Guido says that Diomede is lying in bed, not that Briseida sits on the side of it.
- 2144 Lydgate, unlike Chaucer, identifies the point at which Criseyde shifts her love from Troilus to Diomede. The source is Guido, Book 26.
- 2148 *Loo, what pitē is in wommanhede*. Pearsall (1990), p. 48, relates this passage to *Troilus and Criseyde* 5.1048–50. See 4.2172, where Criseyde would rather be thought changeable than lacking pity. Lydgate's references to Criseyde's pity offer an ironic comment on Chaucer's repeated assertion in the *Canterbury Tales*, "pitē renneth soone in gentil herte." See above, 1.4266.
- 2150 *olde*. MS: *newe*.
- 2151 *late shyppe aryde*. See Chaucer's description of Criseyde: "Ne nevere mo ne lakked hire pite; / Tendre-herted, slydynge of corage" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.824–25).
- 2155 *Lombard Strete*. Lombard merchants settled in London in the twelfth century. In 1318 Langbourn Street changed its name to Lombard Street. The name was in common use in the fourteenth century. From the early years of Edward I's reign onwards, Lombards served as bankers to the English crown. Their influence caused frequent resentment. In 1359, Lombards were attacked during riots. In 1376, the Mayor, Aldermen, and commons of London petitioned the King to forbid Lombards to live in the city or act as brokers in retail sales. Lombards were a target during the Rising of 1377.
- 2175 *to*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2660 *And withinne*. Bergen emends to *Withinne*.

Troy Book

- 2679 *worthiest*. Bergen emends to *worthieste*.
- 2681 *I fele myn herte*. Bergen emends to *myn herte I fele*.
- 2697 *of highe*. Accepting Bergen's addition to MS: *highe*.
- 2726 *to lasse and to discres*. Bergen emends to *gan to lasse and discrese* without repairing the meter fully.
- 2732 *ar*. Bergen emends to *ander*.
- 2734 *worthy*. MS: *manly*.
- 2741 *grounde*. Bergen emends to *ygrounde*.
- 2748 *severed*. Bergen emends to *severe*.
- 2750 *man*. Bergen emends to *wight*.
- 2763 *cruel cursed*. Bergen emends to *cursed cruel*.
- 2764 *thought pleynty*. Bergen emends to *thoughte plasty*.
- 2773-79 Achilles's mistreatment of Troilus's body is the same that he shows Hector's corpse in the *Iliad*.
- 2783 *that he*. Bergen emends to *he*.
- 2801 *unto*. MS: *to*.
- 2836 *arace*. MS: *race*.
- 2840 *so foule is*. MS: *is so foule*.
- 2849 *for*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 3105 *with hevy*. Bergen emends to *ful hevy*.
- 3113 *of Troylus*. Bergen emends to *Troylus*.

Notes – Book 4

- 3121 *of right and equyté*. Hecuba's justification for plotting Achilles's death is the same that Priam uses earlier (2.1203, 2.1214, 2.1253) to urge retaliation for Hesione's abduction; Hector uses the phrasing in his interview with Achilles (3.3897), and Priam repeats it in arguing that King Thoas should be put to death after his capture (3.3139).
- 3155 *firē*. Bergen emends to *firy*; see Pro.11 and 2.3748
- 3161 *whan*. MS: *wan*.
- 3171 *temple*. Bergen emends to *the temple*.
- 3190 *the*. Bergen emends to *his*.
- 3191 *therwithal*. MS: *therewith*.
- 3204 *body war*. MS: *bodies wem*.
- 3210–11 See Chaucer's reproof of the pagan world at the end of *Troilus and Criseyde* (5.1849–55).
- 3213 *knot*. See Chaucer's The Squire's Tale: "The knotte why that every tale is toold" (V.401). The term is repeated at 5.2301.
- 3227 *thei*. MS: *the*.
- 3228 *hem*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 3766 *custom*. Bergen emends to *custome*.
- 3772 The Amazons' service to Mars is an ironic echo of the service to Venus conventionally offered by chivalric heroes; see, for example, Palamon's wish to die in Venus's service in The Knight's Tale (I.2243).
- 3835 *the*. MS: *hir*.
- 3843 *to*. Bergen emends to *hir*.
- 3864 *famous*. MS: *grete*.

Troy Book

- 3865 *kyng.* MS: *quene*.
- 3885 *Rounde.* MS: *Ronde*.
- 3888 *And.* Bergen emends to *But*.
- 3896 *myght.* Bergen emends to *myghte*.
- 3905 *that.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 3908 *the.* Bergen emends to *this*.
- 3941 *had.* Bergen emends to *hadde*.
- 3946 as a standy wal. The image used to describe Hector (3.4938) and Troilus as well as Nestor (1.4084) is applied to Diomede. Guido says only that Diomedes offered wondrous resistance to the Amazons (Book 28).
- 4307 *gan.* Bergen emends to *dide*.
- 4318 *maked.* MS: *maketh*.
- 4326 *the Grekis.* Accepting Bergen's emendation for MS: *Grekis*.
- 4340 The dismemberment of Penthesilea looks forward to Pyrrhus's dismemberment of Polynena after the fall of Troy (4.6852-57).
- 4341 *so.* Bergen emends to *to*. See 4.4427
- 4398 *al.* Bergen reads *all*.
- 4414 *burię.* Bergen emends to *burię it*, but the syntax suggests that the Trojans want the body to bury and inter (grave).
- 4429 *that.* Bergen emends to *how*.
- 5121 *thei.* MS: *ye*.
- 5152 *ben.* Bergen emends to *were*.

Notes – Book 4

- 5166 *thar*. MS: *thar ye*.
- 5193 *the*. Bergen emends to *this*.
- 5198 *foreyns*. MS: *forereyms*.
- 5220 Lydgate here tropes the repeated phrase *crop and rote*, meaning "the whole."
- 5221 *of*. MS: *of a*.
- 5236 *to holde champartie*. In OF *champart* is the Lord's share in the crop of a tenant's land (MED). "To hold champartie" means "to hold one's own" or "to contend successfully."
- 5245 *though*. MS: *yough*.
- 5256 *thar*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5259 *with*. Bergen emends to *by*.
- 5262 *also*. MS: *also of*.
- 5274 *Wherfore*. Bergen emends to *Therefore*.
- 5280 *in newe*. Antenor's use of the term contrasts with earlier associations with love and desire; see 1.1901 and 2.3600.
- 5286 *al*. Bergen reads *all*.
- 5294 *pes*. Bergen emends to *a pes*. *with*. Bergen emends to *for*.
- 5553 *goddes*. MS: *goodes*.
- 5575 The clause requires the verb *was* to be understood.
- 5579 *it in*. Bergen emends to *in*.
- 5588 *ywrought*. MS: *wrought*.

Troy Book

- 5590 *in the Rose*. Lydgate refers anachronistically to the story of Pygmalion in the *Roman de la Rose*, lines 20817-21214.
- 5596 *sent*. MS: *it sent*.
- 5634 *immortal*. Bergen reads *im mortal*.
- 5636 *that*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 5638 *of*. MS: *in*.
- 5639 *and*. Bergen emends to *of* and glosses "from all assault and danger; dangerous attack."
- 5670 Bergen (4:224) suggests a colon after *dwellie* to indicate that the priest will be spoken to privately. Antenor seems, however, to be telling Ulysses to stay calm.
- 5671 *oather*. MS: *outhe*.
- 5695 *and*. Bergen emends to *so*.
- 5732 *as*. Bergen emends to *that*.
- 5742 *And*. MS: *And so*.
- 5752 *in*. MS: *and*.
- 5756 *pleinty*. Bergen emends to *plarily*.
- 5767 *ensclaundrid*. Bergen emends to *esclaundrid*.
- 5768 *shal shape*. Bergen emends to *shape shal*.
- 5775 *with*. Bergen emends to *of*.
- 5783 *partener*. MS: *parcener*.
- 5788 *that*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

Notes – Book 4

- 5791 *aweye*. Bergen reads *awieie*.
- 5795 *his*. MS: *to his*.
- 5818 *no*. Bergen emends to *is*. There is nothing in Isidore, Pliny, or Trevisa to suggest that gold can penetrate steel and marble; Lydgate seems to suggest that these substances resist gold but the priest does not. See 3.2063 and 4.1529.
- 5820 *shal his purpos*. MS: *his purpos shal*.
- 5829–30 The verb *were* must be understood with *dismayed* and *outrayed*.
- 6023 *Bysshop Calchas*. Lydgate's syntax is convoluted here, but the phrase stands in apposition to *hym* in the main clause at 4.6038: *Reconde of hym*.
- 6028 *To*. MS: *Te*.
- 6045 *How*. MS: *How the*.
- 6047 *shal yow*. Bergen emends to *shal*.
- 6102 *of the*. Bergen emends to *of*.
- 6135 *be*. Bergen emends to *was*.
- 6163 *Duringe*. MS: *Dwrigē*.
- 6185 *the*. Bergen emends to *this*.
- 6202 *into*. MS: *unto*.
- 6212 *whiche*. MS: *the whiche*.
- 6277 *Tenedoun*. Tenedos is an island off the coast of Troy that the Greeks captured (see summary of Book 2.4896–6576) and used as a mustering point. In their ruse it remains a secure place from which to rally their troops in short order.

Troy Book

- 6285 *he.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6290 *to.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6294 *On.* MS: *An.*
horsebak. MS: *horsbak.*
- 6295 *Troye.* Bergen reads *Troy.*
- 6314 *toke.* Bergen emends to *ne toke.*
- 6331 *Now.* MS: *And now.*
- 6338 *Wherof.* MS: *Wherfore.*
- 6345 *her.* MS: *the.*
- 6347 *bareyn and bare ymaked.* Bergen emends to *bare and bareyne maked.*
- 6356–60 The Greeks' despoiling of the Trojan temples recalls Paris's desecration of
 the temple at Cythera (2.3809–27).
- 6365 *in.* Bergen emends to *and.*
- 6366 *And.* MS: *And of.*
the. Bergen emends to *that.*
- 6376 *Mi penne shuld of verray roathe rive.* See the narrator's phrase in *Troilus and
Crisyde*: "Thise woful vers, that wepen as I write" (1.7).
- 6388 *on the.* Bergen emends to *the.*
- 6389 *fals.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6400 *naught.* Bergen emends to *naught away.*
- 6402 *party.* MS: *part.*

Notes – Book 4

- 6403 *nor*. Bergen emends to *or*.
- 6418 *aside*. Bergen emends to *beside*. In Guido (Book 30) Pyrrhus slays Priam in the sight of Aeneas and Antenor. MS reading gives the sense that the traitors both allow the murder to occur and witness it.
- 6425 *her*. Bergen emends to *the*.
- 6427 *with*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6428 *with his*. Bergen emends to *his*.
- 6458 *traitour*. MS: *treitor*.
- 6460 *him*. MS: *hem*.
- 6488 *the*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6500 *be so*. Bergen emends to *so be*.
- 6550 *now*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6739 *conselir*. Bergen emends to *conseled*.
- 6747 *now that I*. MS: *that I now*.
- 6748 *this*. MS: *the*.
- 6772 The understood subject "I" must be supplied for this clause.
- 6779 *wrath*. MS: *wroth*.
- 6794 *bewepe hir virginite*. Lydgate appears to echo Jephthah's daughter, another innocent destroyed by men's misguidance (Judges 11.37)
- 6795 *pitous*. Bergen emends to *this pitous*.
- 6805 *unto*. MS: *to*.

Troy Book

- 6818 *me.* Bergen emends to *here*.
- 6831 *the.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6853 *Dismembrid.* Pyrrhus's vengeance recalls the death of Penthesilea (above, 4.6340–41). In Ovid (*Metamorphoses* 13.445–48), the ghost of Achilles demands that Polyxena be sacrificed on his tomb. *swend.* Bergen reads *swende*.
- 6866 *ful.* Accepting Bergen's addition. *ybe.* MS: *be*.
- 6880 *wisly.* Bergen emends to *wistly* but glosses the line under *wysly*.
- 6888 *the.* Bergen emends to *this*.
- 6899 *a.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6914 *ther men.* Bergen emends to *men ther*.
- 6929 *take.* MS: *roke*.
- 6931 *to.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 6938 *forger.* Bergen emends to *forged*.
- 6940 *confusione.* MS: *conclusions*.
- 6944 *the.* MS: *to do*.
- 6948 *unto.* MS: *to*.
- 6948 Lydgate's repudiation of the pagan gods, like Chaucer's rejection of "payens cōsed olde rites" (*Troilus and Criseyde* 5.1849), also implies a repudiation of the poetic narratives associated with the gods. See also Lydgate's remarks at 4.7029–31.
- 6951 *Mars, Pallas.* MS: *Pallas Mars*.
- 6956 *Nouther.* MS: *Nor*.

Notes – Book 4

- 6969–70 Lines transposed in MS.
- 6975 *Genys the prest*. Genius was originally a deity assigned to individuals, but his most important role is as a god connected with the process of birth and regeneration. In this capacity, he appears as a figure in the *Cosmographia* of Bernardus Silvestris and the *De planetis natura* of Alan of Lille. Jean de Meun incorporates and amplifies Alan's portrayal in the *Roman de la Rose*. Genius is the Lover's confessor in John Gower's *Confessio Amantis*.
- 6984–85 See Chaucer's The Wife of Bath's Tale (III.873–75)
- 6986 *fawny*. MS: *faunder*. Bergen emends to *fauni*. The form *fawny* appears elsewhere in the MS (2.5652, 2.7702 — not in selections for this text) and in Chaucer (*Troilus and Criseyde* 4.1544).
- 6991 *the*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 7018 *example*. Bergen emends to *example*, but the MS form is attested elsewhere in Lydgate's works in the sense of instructive narrative (*exemplum*).
- 7027 *have*. Bergen reads *han*.
- 7033 *May now ought*. Bergen emends to *What may now*.
- 7035 *alias*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 7036 The lament for fallen cities is a common topic in classical, biblical, and Near Eastern literatures; one prominent example is the medieval poem *Pergamum flere volo*.
- 7057 *gret*. Bergen emends to *grete*; see 4.2732.
- 7058 *Jeremye*. The Book of Lamentations, a sequence of five poems on the fall of Jerusalem to the Babylonians in 587 B.C., was commonly ascribed to the prophet Jeremiah.
- 7062 *transmygracion*. MS: *transmutacion*. Bergen's emendation fits the historical context. Chaucer uses *transmutacion* in something close to Lydgate's sense in *The House of Fame* when he speaks of "dyvers transmutacions / Of estats,

Troy Book

and eke of regions" (lines 1969–70). OED cites a rare late-sixteenth-century usage of the term that means the transmigration of souls from one body to another.

7066 *Babilow*, MS: *Ballow*.

7068 *he that was departed with a sawe*. According to apocryphal tradition, the prophet Isaiah was sawed in two during the reign of Manasseh. St. Paul makes reference in Hebrews 11.37, as does the ninth-century commentator Christianus Stabulensis in his *Expositio in Evangelium Matthaei* (chs. 4 and 35).

7095 *sympelnesse*. Bergen emends to *symplesse*; see Env.63.

7096 *blottid*, MS: *blotnid be*.

7106 *that*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

7108 *fifthe*, MS: *fifte*.

Book 5

5 *lady of the eyr*. Juno is the wife and sister of Jupiter and queen of the pagan gods; she is traditionally associated with the moon. She is identified with the air by Augustine, *De civitate Dei* 7.16 and 10.21 (compare *Sermo* 197) and by Vatican Mythographer 2 (chs. 6 and 9).

11 *any*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

15 *And*. The conjunction is needed for rhythm and sense.

16 *Fortune*. Lydgate's description of Fortune, which he adds independently to the story, explains the downfall of the Greek victors as a Boethian tragedy.

26 *and*, MS: *and of*.

1788 *and smothe*, MS: *now smothe*.

Notes - Book 5

- 1809 *plainly.* Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 1826 *Kyng Idamee.* King Idomeneus comes with King Merion from Crete, leading eighty ships. After Agamemnon's murder, he shelters and raises Orestes, and later arranges his marriage with Hermione.
- 1847 *Mirna.* In *Odyssey* 9, Odysseus comes to a land in Thrace; Guido (Book 33) calls it Mirna.
- 1862 *Clanstafages.* Lydgate's rendering of Guido's "Calastofagos." Griffin (p. 283) notes that Benoit and Guido have made Dictys's *Lotophagors* (Lotus eaters) into a port.
- 1875 *pensif.* Bergen emends to *so pensif*.
- 1882 In Guido the brother kings of Sicily are called Strigona and Ciclopa. Lydgate preserves the names of their sons but adds the detail that Polyphemus is a giant (5.1908), apparently to harmonize Guido's version with Ovid. In the *Metamorphoses*, Polyphemus uses a pine as a walking stick (13.782) and says that he is as large as Jupiter (13.842). Guido mentions Alphenor's love for Polyphemus's unnamed sister, but Lydgate embroiders the episode with the conventions of courtly love.
- 1895 *theri.* MS: *ther*.
- 1919 *narwe.* MS: *nawe*.
- 1920 *upow.* MS: *on*.
- 1921 *alwy.* Bergen emends to *ay* to avoid repetition.
- 1938 *myghtr.* Bergen emends to *myghte*.
- 1945 *sey.* MS: *me*.
- 1958-75 *like as wrir Ovide.* Telemus foretells the blinding of Polyphemus in *Metamorphoses* 13.770-75 and Achaemenides tells the story in *Metamorphoses* 14.167-222.

Troy Book

- 1987 wondirfully. Bergen emends to *wonderly*.
- 2000 *abood*. MS: *bood*.
- 2004–06 Mention of Telegonus here prepares for Ulysses's death at the end of the poem. Guido (Book 33) does not mention Telegonus's name.
- 2007 *reherse*. Bergen emends to *wei reherse*.
- 2009 *secré*. MS: *sacré*.
- 2012 *myght*. Bergen emends to *myghte*, but the MS form gives an acceptable Lydgate line.
- 2048 *Goddes myght*. See the repeated phrase in Chaucer, "Goddes pryvtee."
- 2071 *he*. MS: *thei*.
- 2082 *man*. Bergen emends to *a man*.
- 2102 *by southe and nar by est*. In Guido (Book 33), Ulysses says only that he has circled the world and now come to this land.
- 2110 *it doth to me*. Bergen emends to *to me it doth*.
- 2120 *also*. MS: *as*.
- 2132 *meynd*. MS: *money*.
- 2140 *desirous*. The verb "was" is understood here.
- 2146 *as*. MS: *a. an*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2152 *yit grene*. MS: *grene yit*.
- 2156 example of *wommanhede*. Penelope's wifely virtue is a conventional part of the defense of women that is included within the tradition of medieval misogyny. See Dorigen's lament in Chaucer's *The Franklin's Tale* (V.1443) and the Balade in the *The Legend of Good Women* F 252 and G 206. Gower

Notes – Book 5

tells of Penelope's fidelity in *Confessio Amantis* 4.147–233, and makes several subsequent allusions to her steadfastness and wifely truth — 4.1822; 6.1461; 8.2621.

- 2160 *auctours*. The term encompasses both authors and the texts they write, the latter conceived as creations participating independently in a tradition.
- 2165 *ay*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2174 *importable*. Bergen reads *importable*.
- 2185 *dremes*. Bergen emends to *a dreme*.
- 2192 *be*. MS: *he be*.
- 2195 *se*. Bergen emends to *yse*.
- 2198 *ben*. MS: *bem*.
- 2232 *thei*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2236 *ow*. Bergen emends to *of*.
- 2240 *had*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2250 *lond*. MS: *hond*.
- 2261 *on the*. Bergen emends to *the*.
- 2275–2314 Lydgate's extravagant sentence is organized as an extended consecutive thought: "Yif . . . Yif . . . It were to long tariyng for my boke . . . [and] Men wolde deme me. . . ."
- 2286 *ilyche*. Bergen reads *iliche*.
- 2295 *mediacioun*. MS: *meditacioun*.
- 2299–2300 The final narrative of *Troy Book* shows how the survivors of the Trojan War establish alliances in the generation that follows them. See below for the

Troy Book

reconciliations of Achilleidos and Lamedonte and of Telemachus and Telegonus. In this passage, the wedding of Nausia and Telemonus foreshadows the wedding of Henry and Katherine (5.3420-23), which likewise joins two realms and ends strife.

- 2301 *knoote*. The term refers as well to the main point of a story or argument; see Chaucer's use in *The Squire's Tale* (V.401, 407) and *Romanus*, line 4698, and Lydgate's earlier use at 4.3213.
- 2314 *unrwyne*. Bergen emends to *to unrwyne*.
- 2937 On the fate of Ulysses compare Gower's Tale of Ulysses and Telegonus (*Confessio Amantis* 6.1391-1778). Gower bases his tale on Benoit, lines 28571-28666 and 29629-30092. Benoit includes some details not found in Guido.
- 2939 *glad*. Bergen emends to *glade*.
- 2947 *Lyk*. Bergen reads *Lik*.
- 2964 *fairie*. MS: *faire*.
- 2977-78 These lines are misplaced with lines 2979-80 in MS.
But. MS: *And*.
- 2978 *she*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 2979 *And*. MS: *But, the more he gan to purswe*. Bergen emends to *the more that he gan purswe*.
- 2985-3000 Lydgate's Ulysses uses an aureate, courtly diction that is not in Guido.
- 2994 *my*. Bergen reads *myn*.
- 3021 *of*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 3022 *Ful offysshes berye*. Gold or some other metal is hammered into images, and then they are sown onto the banner (Guido, Book 35). Benoit (lines

Notes - Book 5

30021–24) seems to be the source for details in the passage. See 5.3208–09, where Telegonus glosses this image by describing his birth.

3026 *parte*. MS: *parten*.

3032 *he sodeynly*, MS: *sodeynly he*.

3033 *fantasie*. In scholastic psychology, fantasy refers to a faculty of imagination that allows apprehension or recollection of sense data and images. See 2.2817 and 3.4806.

3052 *on*. MS: *oon*.

3058–64 Lydgate describes the mechanism of Ulysses's downfall by means of Boethian tragedy. Ulysses misperceives the situation before him and acts in a seemingly rational way that ironically carries him further toward catastrophe.

3060 *Bur wenyng he*. "He" is the subject of the sentence, and "wenyng" takes "to have be prudent" as its complement.

3066 *the speris*. Accepting Bergen's addition to MS: *speris*.

3093 *noon*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

3102 *for*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

3140 *Monday*. Latin *dies luna* ("day of the moon"), hence a symbol of mutability.

3142 The porter's abuse of Telegonus recalls the remote origin of the Trojan War, when Jason feels that Lamedon treats him discourteously.

3155 *roof*. Bergen emends to *braſt*.

3158 *lepen into flood*. Bergen emends to *lepe into the flood*.

3175 *Hent*. MS: *Rent*. Emendation is consistent with Lydgate's usage immediately above at 5.3169.

3178 *That*. Accepting Bergen's addition.

Troy Book

- 3178 *he*. MS: *that he nedis*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 3197 *it with*. Bergen emends to *with*.
- darte*. Bergen reads *dart*.
- 3205 *Ulxer*. MS: *hym*.
- 3242 *aswowne*. MS: *aswone*.
- 3248 *I*. "Cursid" is understood.
- 3252 *begar*. MS: *gar*.
- 3257 *Circes*. MS: *Cures*.
- 3261 *importable*. Bergen reads *importable*.
- 3267 *founde*. Bergen emends to *hath founde*, but *founde* is in the preterite, parallel with *saw*, *knewe*, and *hent*.
- 3306 *his*. Bergen records this as an emendation, but the reading occurs in the MS.
- 3319 *Thelagonyas*. Bergen emends to *this Thelagoyas*.
- 3323-25 Lydgate follows Guido (Book 35) in having Telemachus reign seventy years and Telegonus sixty; in Benoit (line 30268), Telemachus reigns eighty years. There is no reference in Guido or Benoit to Telemachus and Telegonus's going to Jupiter. Lydgate's addition recalls Castor and Pollux, the ideal figures of brothers united in death.
- 3360 *Laryn*. Bergen emends to *of laryn*.
- 3367 *just*. Bergen emends to *juste*.
- 3368-69 Bergen (4:2n) suggests that Lydgate's poem was completed late in 1420.
- 3370 *mankede*. MS: *maidenhede*.

Notes - Book 5

- 3372 *maide*. Bergen emends to *a maide*.
- 3373 *The eyghte pere*. Henry V was crowned 9 April 1412.
- 3380 *passeth*. MS: *passed*.
- 3383 *to withseyt*. MS: *withseym*.
- 3392 *he is made regent*. In July 1414, Henry sent an embassy to Paris to demand the cession of Normandy, Touraine, Maine, Anjou and Aquitaine. In 1415, he rejected efforts by a French embassy to stave off the English invasion. In these actions, he renewed the English claim to the French throne, initiated by Edward III who argued his claim by descent from his mother, Isabella of France. Henry's military campaign in Normandy began in August 1415 with the siege of Harfleur. Most of the Normandy campaign was carried out in 1417-19, and it led to the Treaty of Troyes in 1420, which made Henry regent of France and heir to the French throne after the death of Charles VI. These are the terms of the *convenction* (5.3398). As part of the treaty, Henry married Charles's daughter Katherine of Valois on 2 June 1420. The father referred to at 5.3393 is Charles.
- 3400 *the olde worlde called aureat*. The literary commonplace of a Golden Age of original harmony originates with Hesiod's *Works and Days*, lines 109-20; for the Middle Ages, Ovid's *Metamorphoses* 1.89-112 and the *Roman de la Rose*, lines 8357-8458 are important expressions of the idea.
- 3411 ff. See note to 5.3392. Lydgate writes in the future tense about the union of England and France, though he may be expressing a hope rather than referring to an impending event following Henry's marriage. Lydgate's call for peace is doubtless genuine, but it is also a commonplace in the literature of princely advice. How far he advocates a specific policy, as distinct from offering good advice, is not certain. But his role as a *de facto* royal propagandist limits the extent to which he can put forth personal views. Henry, as Pearsall (1994, p. 386) remarks in the case of Thomas Hoccleve, Lydgate's nearest competitor as a court poet, was more interested in being seen to take advice than in actually following it.

Troy Book

- 3424 *Kateryne*. In the *Legenda aurea*, Jacobus de Voragine etymologizes Saint Catherine's name as "total ruin," meaning her humility destroyed the edifice of pride, and as a "small chain," which signifies the good works by which she climbed to heaven.
- 3466 *boistous and rual*. See the Franklin's description of himself as "a burel man" (V.716).
- 3481 *her*. MS: *his*.
- 3482 *correcte*. The common literary pose of the medieval poet is to be "under correcciooun"; see Chaucer's use of the convention at the end of *Troilus and Criseyde* 5.1858. See also note to Pro.63-75 where Lydgate first introduces the idea.
- 3490 *set behynde*. MED records two relevant senses of the term: "given up" and "downgraded, treated as unimportant."
- 3493 *that*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 3499 *lak*. Bergen emends to *a lak*.
- 3506 *Baland*. See above, 2.4731.
- 3520 Chaucer's poem to his scribe, Adam, belies Lydgate's claim that Chaucer cheerfully ignored blemishes in the texts of his works.
- 3549-62 Lydgate's list recalls the roster of felonies that Arcite sees depicted on the walls of the temple of Mars in The Knight's Tale (I.1995-2040).
- 3551 *plounget*. Bergen emends to *pleunget*.
- 3570 The metaphor of life's pilgrimage is a medieval commonplace. Guillaume de Deguileville's *Le pelerinaige de vie humaine* is one of the most important late medieval allegories. Dante's *Divine Comedy* incorporates the metaphor as the basis of its narrative.
- 3579 *to Hym that starf appon the Rode*. Lydgate's phrasing invokes the ending of *Troilus and Criseyde*: "that sothfast Crist, that starf on rode" (5.1860).

Notes – Envoy

- 3586 *With a fewe ageyn gret multitude.* Henry's victory at Agincourt in 1415 was against a vastly larger French force.
- 3602 *after that.* Bergen emends to *afterward.* *synthe spere.* See above, 3.4382. Here Lydgate simply means heaven.
- 3604 *God.* MS: *good.*

Envoy

Lydgate shifts from couplets into the English stanza, sometimes referred to as rhyme royal, used by Chaucer in *Troilus and Criseyde*.

- 1 *sours.* MS: *flour.*
- 4 *the worthi nyne.* The Nine Worthy are chivalric heroes representing gentiles (Hector, Julius Caesar, Alexander the Great), Jews (Joshua, David, Judas Maccabeus), and Christians (Arthur, Charlemagne, Godfrey of Bouillon).
- 12 *rekned.* This is the verb governing the sentence that extends over the first four stanzas of the Envoy. Bergen emends to *y-rekned*.
- 14 *the hous of fame.* From other echoes in *Fall of Princes* (8.2735–36 and 9.3468), it appears that Lydgate's reference is to the roster of historical writers and poets in Chaucer's *The House of Fame*.
- 18 *evermore.* MS: *overmore.* MS reading makes syntactic sense, but *evermore* accords better with *in memorie.*
- 21 The following stanza is not separated by a space in the MS.
- 36–49 Lydgate's list combines biblical and classical kings who are mentioned for their qualities of character. Joshua is the follower and successor of Moses, and he enjoys divine favor as a military leader (Isidore of Seville, *De ortu et obitu patrum*, ch. 26). Solomon is known for his wisdom and justice (Isidore, *De ortu*, ch. 34). David is a figure of patience and humility (Isidore, *De ortu*, ch. 33 and Augustine, *De civitate Dei* 17.20). Caesar symbolizes both

Troy Book

ambition and greatness of spirit (Augustine, *De civitate Dei* 5.12 and Vincent of Beauvais, *De moralibus principiis institutione*, ch. 16).

- 37 *coveteid*. The verb "to be" is understood.
- 43 *meyur*. Probably to be construed with the verb "to be": "Your mercy is mingled with your magnificence."
- magnificence*. As Aristotle explains in the *Nicomachean Ethics* (4.2), magnificence is a moral virtue akin to generosity but differing from generosity by being on a larger scale and directed toward public display.
- 52 *scepter*. MS: *swende*.
- 63 *sympilnesse*. Bergen emends to *symplesse*.
- 64 *eke*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 67 *received*. MS: *received*.
- 68 *twey mynyates*. Mark 12:41–44 and Luke 21:1–4 record Jesus's example of the widow who contributes all she has to the temple's treasury.
- 73 *gift*. MS: *git*.
- 77 *al*. Accepting Bergen's addition.
- 92 *Go, liel bok*. See *Troilus and Criseyde* 5.1786–92, the stanza that marks the beginning of Chaucer's Envoy.
- 99 The following stanza is not separated by a space in the MS.
- 100–01 Set earlier echoes of Chaucer's Franklin at 2.192–97 and 3.551–56.

Glossary

abo(o)de	delay	fere	companion; fear
abreide	speak	feris	companions
advert	notice	ferre	far
albe	although	foom	foes
alder	of us all	fre	generous, liberal
asterte	escape	fredam	generosity, liberality
auter	altar	fyn	end, goal
availle	be of use	hem	them; themselves
aviseness	consideration	hest(e)	seized, took
await	ambush	her	her, their, hair; hear
ay	always	hight(e)	was called
be by, be		hole	whole
brenne	burn	hye	hasten
cast	foresee	ifere	together
ceriously	in due order, point by point	issed	issued, went
char	chariot	kerve	cut, carve
cher(e)	countenance, mood	kynde	nature
clene	clean, pure, purely	list	lest; it pleases
condescende	agree	lorn	lost
confusoun	destruction	lyche	like
contune	continue	Martis Mars	
cors	corpse	maugre	despite
dede	deed; dead; did	meynt(e)	mixed
dool	sorrow	moo	more
durste	dared	morwe	morning, tomorrow
eke	also		
entere	entire, complete		
everychone	everyone		

Glossary

of of; off	thilke that, that same
or before	trew trace
utterly utterly, completely	tweyne two
pes peace	un(n)e the scarcely, hardly
platis plate armor	wawe wave
platly plainly, openly	wende go
pres mob, crowd, warriors	wene doubt
prevely secretly	wenying thinking, expecting
quike alive	wer(r)e were; protect; war; doubt
rathe quickly, readily	wher whether; where
rede, reed advice; read	wo(o)d mad
renomed renowned	wist knew
rood rode; Cross	woye way
rote root	wyght person
routhe pity	yeve give
sege siege	yif(fe) if
sikerness certainty	yave given
sithen since	
slawen slain	
sleighti crafty, tricky	
smet smote	
soth(e) truth	
stotil subtle	
spere sphere	
stede steed, horse	
stele steel, armor	
sterve die	
stoundemel from time to time	
strond(e) shore	
sue, swe follow, pursue	
swevene dream	
swich(e) such	
sythes times	